

# **WYSIWYG Web Builder 15**

## Table of contents

<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS.....</b>	<b>II</b>
<b>WYSIWYG WEB BUILDER .....</b>	<b>6</b>
INTRODUCTION.....	6
GETTING STARTED, A QUICK INTRODUCTION .....	7
<i>How is WYSIWYG Web Builder different from a HTML editor? .....</i>	<i>7</i>
<i>Start Web Builder .....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Adding text to the page .....</i>	<i>13</i>
<i>Adding an image to a web page .....</i>	<i>14</i>
<i>Rotate an image.....</i>	<i>15</i>
<i>Apply effects to an image .....</i>	<i>15</i>
<i>Linking your pages together (Creating hyperlinks) .....</i>	<i>16</i>
<i>Saving your web site .....</i>	<i>16</i>
<i>Preview a page.....</i>	<i>17</i>
<i>Publishing your web pages.....</i>	<i>18</i>
<i>What's next? .....</i>	<i>20</i>
WYSIWYG WEB BUILDER OPTIONS .....	21
File.....	21
Home.....	24
View .....	26
Page .....	27
Table .....	51
Arrange .....	54
Tools.....	58
WYSIWYG Web Builder Objects.....	79
Style.....	80
Bookmark.....	82
Bulleted List.....	83
Horizontal Line .....	84
Heading.....	84
Text .....	91
Form.....	96
Advanced Button.....	103
CAPTCHA.....	104
Checkbox.....	106
Combobox .....	107
Editbox .....	109
File Upload .....	111

<i>Flipswitch</i> .....	112
<i>Image Button</i> .....	113
<i>Push Button</i> .....	114
<i>Radio button</i> .....	115
<i>TextArea</i> .....	116
<i>ActiveX</i> .....	117
<i>File Publisher</i> .....	118
<i>Flash</i> .....	119
<i>WWB Video Player</i> .....	121
<i>HTML</i> .....	122
<i>Java</i> .....	124
<i>Inline Frame</i> .....	125
<i>Layer</i> .....	126
<i>Rollover Layer</i> .....	129
<i>Layout Grid</i> .....	130
<i>Flex Container</i> .....	133
<i>Flex Grid</i> .....	135
<i>Embedded Page</i> .....	138
<i>Content Place Holder</i> .....	140
<i>Master Frames</i> .....	140
<i>Embedded OLE Object</i> .....	142
<i>Notes</i> .....	143
<i>Page Footer</i> .....	144
<i>Page Header</i> .....	145
<i>Wrapping Text</i> .....	146
<i>QuickTime</i> .....	148
<i>Real Player</i> .....	149
<i>Media Player</i> .....	151
<i>YouTube</i> .....	152
<i>Breadcrumb</i> .....	153
<i>Go Menu</i> .....	155
<i>Layer Menu</i> .....	156
<i>Mega Menu</i> .....	157
<i>Menu Bar</i> .....	159
<i>Navigation bar</i> .....	160
<i>Overlay Menu</i> .....	162
<i>Pagination</i> .....	163
<i>Panel Menu</i> .....	164

<i>Responsive Menu</i> .....	166
<i>SiteTree</i> .....	167
<i>Tab Menu</i> .....	168
<i>Text Menu</i> .....	169
<i>Banner</i> .....	170
<i>ClipArt</i> .....	172
<i>Curve</i> .....	173
<i>Curved Text</i> .....	174
<i>Line</i> .....	175
<i>Polygon</i> .....	177
<i>Scribble</i> .....	178
<i>Shape</i> .....	179
<i>Blog</i> .....	182
<i>Carousel</i> .....	183
<i>Unsplash</i> .....	187
<i>Ready to use Java Scripts</i> .....	191
<i>Rollover Text</i> .....	193
<i>RSS Feed</i> .....	194
<i>News Feed Ticker</i> .....	196
<i>Slide Show</i> .....	198
<i>Site Search</i> .....	199
<i>Structured Data</i> .....	201
<i>Timer</i> .....	202
<i>PayPal eCommerce Tools</i> .....	203
<i>PHP Login Tools</i> .....	208
<i>Content Management System</i> .....	222
<i>CMS Database</i> .....	223
<i>CMS Admin</i> .....	225
<i>CMS Label</i> .....	233
<i>CMS Menu</i> .....	234
<i>CMS Search</i> .....	235
<i>CMS View</i> .....	236
<i>Accordion</i> .....	238
<i>Auto Complete</i> .....	239
<i>Themeable Button</i> .....	240
<i>Cards</i> .....	241
<i>Card Container</i> .....	242
<i>DatePicker</i> .....	243

<i>Dialog</i> .....	244
<i>ListView</i> .....	246
<i>Tabs</i> .....	248
<i>Toast</i> .....	249
<i>Progressbar</i> .....	250
<i>Slider</i> .....	251
<i>Spinner</i> .....	253
<i>Wizard</i> .....	254
<i>Tooltips</i> .....	255
<i>jQuery Mobile</i> .....	256
<i>jQuery Mobile Collapsible</i> .....	258
<i>jQuery Mobile Flip Switch</i> .....	258
<i>jQuery Mobile Slider</i> .....	258
<i>jQuery Mobile Layout Grid</i> .....	259
<i>jQuery Mobile Tabs</i> .....	259
<i>jQuery Mobile Footer</i> .....	260
<i>jQuery Mobile Header</i> .....	261
<i>jQuery Mobile Listview</i> .....	262
<i>jQuery Mobile Nested Menu</i> .....	263
<i>jQuery Mobile Popup Menu</i> .....	263
<i>jQuery Mobile Panel</i> .....	264
<i>jQuery Mobile Responsive Table</i> .....	265
PUBLISH YOUR WEBSITE .....	267
LINKS.....	271
SITE MANAGER .....	276
OBJECT MANAGER.....	280
PROPERTIES INSPECTOR.....	282
STYLE MANAGER .....	283
GRADIENT STYLE MANAGER.....	283
EVENTS.....	284
CSS3 ANIMATIONS AND TRANSITIONS.....	286
MOBILE WEB DESIGN.....	289
RESPONSIVE WEB DESIGN .....	290
FORM VALIDATION.....	292
FORM CONDITIONS AND CALCULATIONS.....	295
FLEXBOX PROPERTIES .....	297
CUSTOMIZING WYSIWYG WEB BUILDER .....	298
CREATING NEWSLETTERS.....	300
<b>INDEX</b> .....	<b>301</b>

## WYSIWYG Web Builder

### *Introduction*

WYSIWYG Web Builder is an all-in-one software solution to create complete web sites. What-You-See-Is-What-You-Get (WYSIWYG) means that all elements of the page will be displayed on the exact same position (fixed layout) as in the designer unlike fluid (dynamic) layouts (generated by traditional HTML editors) where the position of objects depends on the position and size of the objects surrounding it. WYSIWYG Web Builder generates HTML (Hypertext Markup Language) or XHTML tags while you point and click on available functions; you can create a web page without learning HTML. Just drag and drop objects to the page position them 'anywhere' you want and when you're finished publish it to your web server (using the build in Publish tool). WYSIWYG Web Builder gives you full control over the content and layout of your web pages. A Web Builder project file can hold multiple web pages, so you can easily manage all your pages from within one file.

#### Key Features:

- Drag & drop of HTML objects: Text, Lines, Images, Marquees, Tables and much more!
- HTML, XHTML or HTML5 output.
- Responsive Web Design (breakpoints) based on CSS3 Media Queries.
- Mobile Web Design tools with built-in jQuery Mobile support.
- Supports many CSS3 features: box-shadow, opacity, rounded corners etc.
- Site Management. Easily add, edit, clone and structure your web pages.
- Form wizard; create forms in less than 4 steps plus many Ready-to-use Forms!
- Built-in form processing script with form validation tools and CAPTCHA.
- Shape objects (Rectangle, Ellipse, Arrows, Signs, Stars, Talk Bubbles and more) with many fill effects such as solid, gradients patterns and glass.
- Support for YouTube, JAVA, Flash, HTML5 Audio/Video, Flash Video (FLV), and other Plug-Ins.
- Rollover images and Slide Show images (with many transition animations).
- Rollover Text, displays a text banner over image on mouse over with animations.
- Photo gallery object with photo frames and built-in light box slideshow support.
- Ready-to-use Java scripts.
- Navigation bar, Text Menu, Mega Menu, Tab Menu, Slide Menu, SiteTree and Menu bar.
- Template support. More than 100 free templates available.
- Publish your web site to any hosting.
- Master objects and Master Frames. This allows you to re-use objects from other pages.
- Layer Object for advanced layout possibilities: Modal, Sticky, Panel Fixed etc.
- Free angle rotation for shapes and images
- CSS3 animations and transitions.
- Properties Inspector window for quick object manipulation.
- Image tools: Contrast, Brightness, Flip, Rotate, Resample, Hue/saturation, Stencils and Crop.
- Image effects: Grayscale, Negative, Sepia, Blur, Soften, Sharpen, Noise, Emboss and more!
- Drawing tools: Line, Line + Arrows, Scribble, Polygon, Curve and Closed Curve.
- Implement Events for Images, Shapes and form controls!
- PHP Login Tools/Page Protection.
- Content Management System functionality with plug-in support.
- PayPal eCommerce Tools.
- Popup window support for links
- Built-in jQuery support: Accordion, Tabs, Dialog, Date picker, Auto complete, animations etc!!!
- Site Search
- Carousel functionality
- News feed ticker object to integrate RSS feeds, Twitter, Flickr, Facebook etc.
- and much more...

## ***Getting started, a quick introduction***

WYSIWYG Web Builder is a Web site building tool that helps you design and build full-featured Web sites without having to learn HTML. When you preview or publish a page, Web Builder automatically generates the HTML code your Web browser needs to display pages. This chapter helps you get started in a few simple steps. You can find more details about each item elsewhere in this document.

### **How is WYSIWYG Web Builder different from a HTML editor?**

The idea behind this application is to hide HTML from the user. WYSIWYG Web Builder is not an HTML editor, but an HTML generator. You don't even have to know there is HTML involved. Just drag & drop images, text and other objects on your page and your page is ready to be published! You can think of it as a Desktop Publishing tool for websites.

Web Builder does not edit the HTML directly, but it uses its own file format (.wbs) to store the information of the website. You can even store your complete website into one single file! By not using HTML internally, Web Builder can do much more than just generate standard HTML objects: it supports shapes, drawings, navigation bars, RSS feeds, blogs, photo galleries, ready to use JavaScript's and much more advanced objects.

**Tip:** To export your pages to HTML you should use the built-in publish tool!

If you like you can insert existing HTML to your page using the HTML tools (Page HTML and the HTML object). You can also insert custom attributes or other code to almost any object.

FrontPage, Dreamweaver etc. use a document (word processor) method for layout, where you cannot pick up objects and drag it where you want it to go on the web page. In WYSIWYG Web Builder you can drag and drop the objects anywhere you want, giving you full control over the layout. In absolute layout mode You can even put objects on top (or below) other objects!

WYSIWYG Web Builder supports multiple ways to create responsive web sites.

- **Fixed / Absolute Layouts (Adaptive Web Design)**  
By default layouts are fixed using absolute positions. This means that you can place objects anywhere you like, so you have complete control over the layout. The downside of this layout mode is that it will be harder to make the page responsive because the layout will only look perfect on the screen size it was designed for. And because there is no 'structure' in the layout (objects can be placed anywhere in random order), there is no way for the browser to automatically re-position and/or scale the content based on the view port. So, to make sure the page content looks good on different viewports (screen sizes), you will have to implement breakpoints (different layout variations) of the same page. This design technique is also known as "Adaptive Web Design".
- **Flexible / Floating Layouts (Re-flow)**  
You can implement flexible layouts by using Layout Grids and/or Flexbox. This make it possible to create Bootstrap-like layouts. When using layout grids, the layout is controlled by the grids. Objects will automatically resize based on the available space in the viewport and the grid column size. The downside of using layout grids is that you have less control over the layout. All objects will be positioned and resized automatically. So, you are forced into a structured layout.

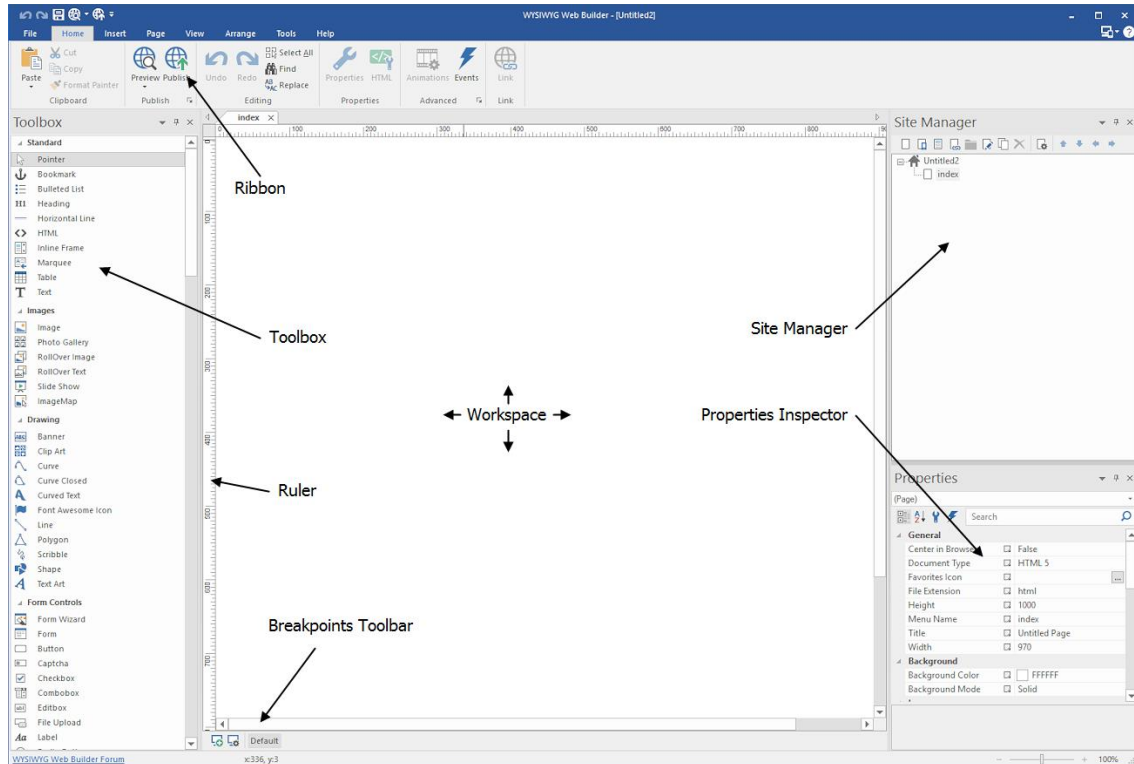
Related tutorial: [http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/layout\\_modes.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/layout_modes.html)

**Tip:** For step by step instructions to the basic features of WYSIWYG Web Builder please visit the online tutorials: [http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/getting\\_started.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/getting_started.html)

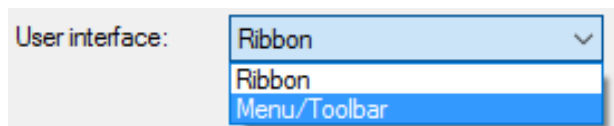
## Start Web Builder

Click the WYSIWYG Web Builder icon to launch the application.

After launching WYSIWYG Web Builder, the main screen will look something like this:



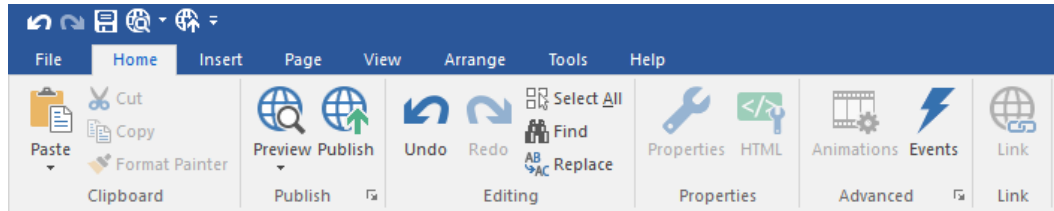
By default, the Ribbon interface will be active, but if you prefer you can also switch to classic menu/toolbars in Tools->Options->User Interface.



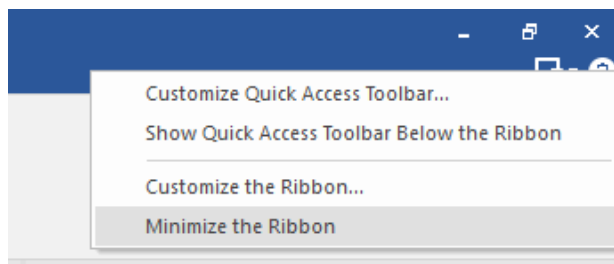


## Ribbon

The Ribbon gives you quick access to all available tools. The Ribbon contains tabs to expose different sets of control elements, eliminating the need for many different icon-based tool bars. Some of these tabs are contextual and appear only when a certain type of object is selected, providing specific tools for items such as tables, text or images.

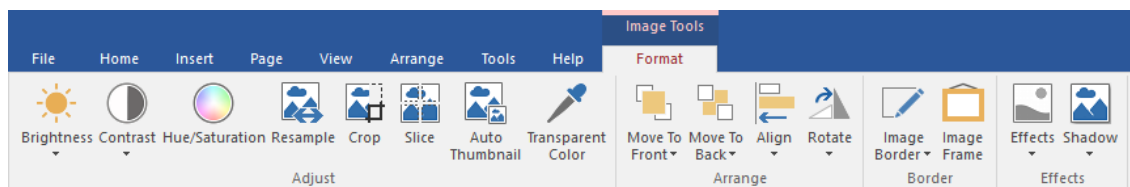


You can minimize the Ribbon by right clicking the Ribbon. When the Ribbon is minimized you will still be able to access all tabs of the Ribbon, but the tools will hide to free up some screen space.



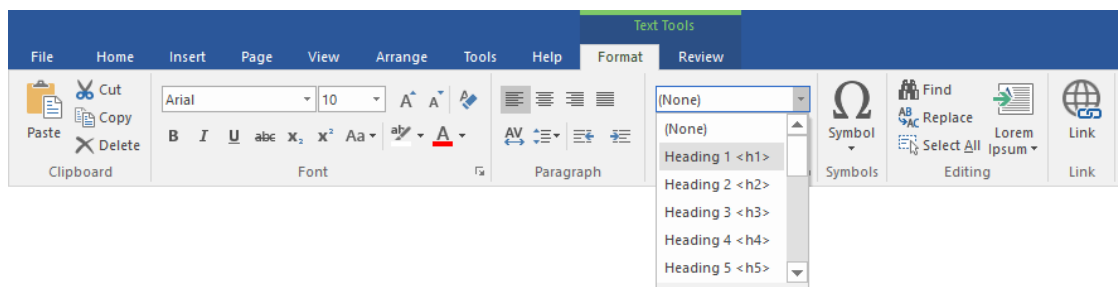
## Contextual Tabs

Contextual Tabs only appear when needed. For example, if you select an image object then the Image Tools will be displayed. The tools will automatically hide if you deselect the object.



## Text Formatting Tools

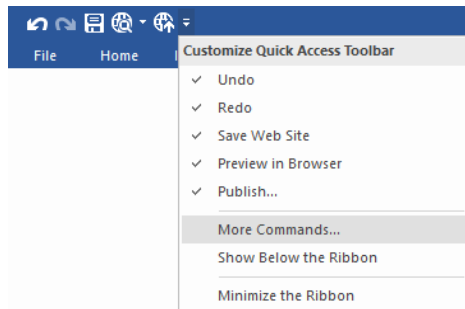
The text formatting tools are only active when you are in text edit mode.



To insert text simply drag the text icon on the workspace. A new object with the text "Double click to edit" will be displayed on the page. To switch to text edit mode double click this text and the formatting tools will become active. For some of the tools you need to highlight the text before they can be used (just like in a regular text editor).

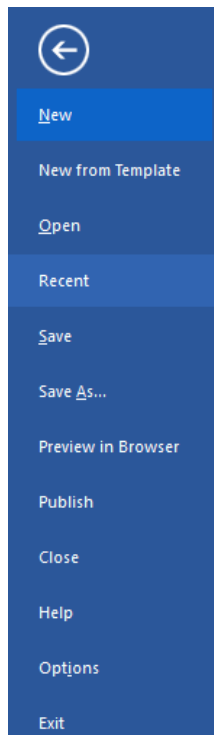
### Quick Access toolbar

You can put commands you use most often on the Quick Access Toolbar above the ribbon. Just like the Ribbon, this toolbar is fully customizable.



### File Menu

The File Menu contains all file related commands like Open, Save, Close and Publish.



### Toolbox

The toolbox can be used to add new objects to your web pages. To insert a new object, select one of the available items and draw a box to indicate the position of the object. The new object will now be inserted to the page. Another way to add objects to your page is by simply dragging them out of the toolbox onto the workspace.

### Tabs

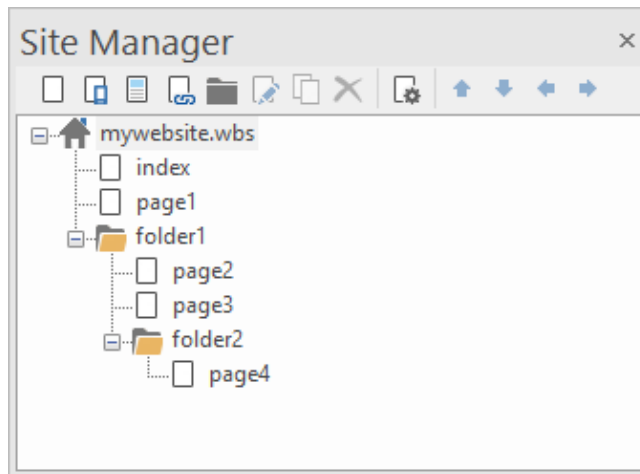
When you have opened multiple pages, you can use the tabs to switch between the pages. To close the active page, press the small 'x' in the upper right corner of the tabs strip.

### Workspace

The center of the screen is the workspace, where you can drag and drop objects from the toolbox. This represents your web page.

## Site Manager

The Site Manager can be used to manage the structure of your web site.



The Site Manager has its own toolbar to add, edit, clone or remove pages. There is also a button to open the properties of the selected page.

In the picture above, you see an example of a web site structure. The filename of this example web site is called 'mywebsite.wbs', this name is always displayed at the root of web site tree. The root can have one or more pages and each page can have sub pages. Web sites always have a **home page**, which is often called **index**, so for this reason Web builder automatically adds this page to each new project. The names of the items (pages) in the site tree are the actual file names of the target HTML files, so if you named a page 'index' it will publish as index.html. Do not add the file extension in the site manager!

**Tip:** Make sure all pages of a website are part of the same project, this way Web Builder will 'know' that the pages belong together and generate optimal HTML for your website.

Every time you insert a new page to your website it will be added to the Site Manager. To edit previously created pages, you can double click the page name to open it in the editor.

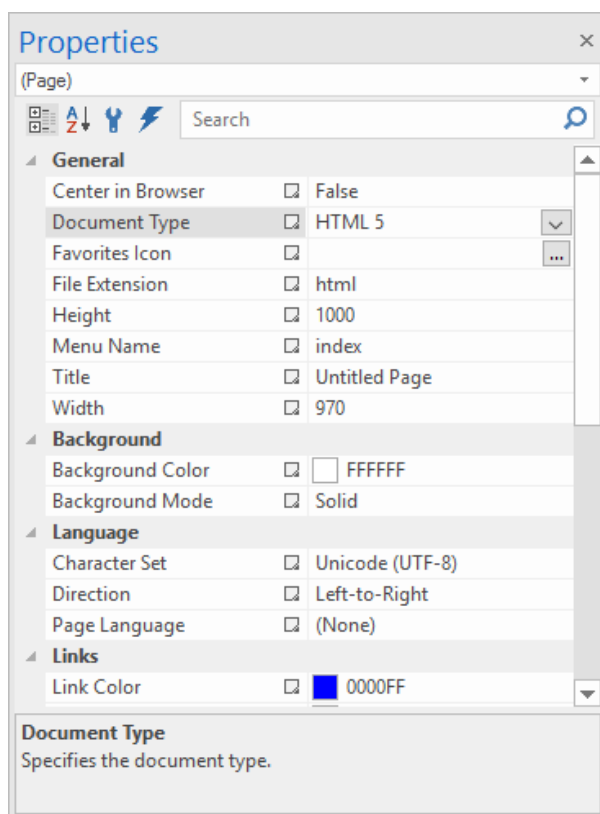
### Important Note:

If you reopen the project then only the first page will be opened (to reduce the loading time of the project and limit the allocated memory). To open other pages of the project you must use the Site Manager. If you do not see also your pages then you may have added them as a child of another page. Click the '+' sign in front of the page (or folder) to expand the tree.

You will find more information about the Site Manager later in this document.

## Properties Inspector

Use the Properties Inspector window to view and change the properties of selected objects. You can also use the Properties Inspector window to modify page properties. The changes will be visible immediately. The Properties Inspector window displays different types of editing fields, depending on the needs of a particular property. These edit fields include edit boxes, drop-down lists, and links to custom editor dialog boxes. It is also possible to manually modify the size and position of the selected object by changing the Position and Size properties.



### The ID property

The ID property of an object should be unique within the page. Normally Web Builder will give your object unique names automatically. However, if you use one of more master objects, then IDs may be duplicated, since the software cannot distinguish a master from a normal page.

The Properties Inspector also give you access to more advanced attributes like the ID of an object. This can be useful if you use master pages and want to give the items of the page a unique ID. We recommend giving objects on a master page names with a prefix like MasterPage\_Text1. This will make sure that if the master page is used in another page, the ID of the objects is unique.

### Class

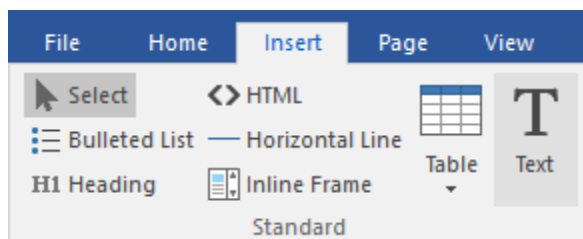
Specifies the class name for the object. The value can be a style (created in the Style Manager) or a custom class. Some objects have a 'Predefined Style' option in the Style properties. This is basically the same property (Style = HTML class).

However, for objects that do not support the predefined style, this property does not change the appearance in the workspace. In that case It just adds class="value" to the object's container.

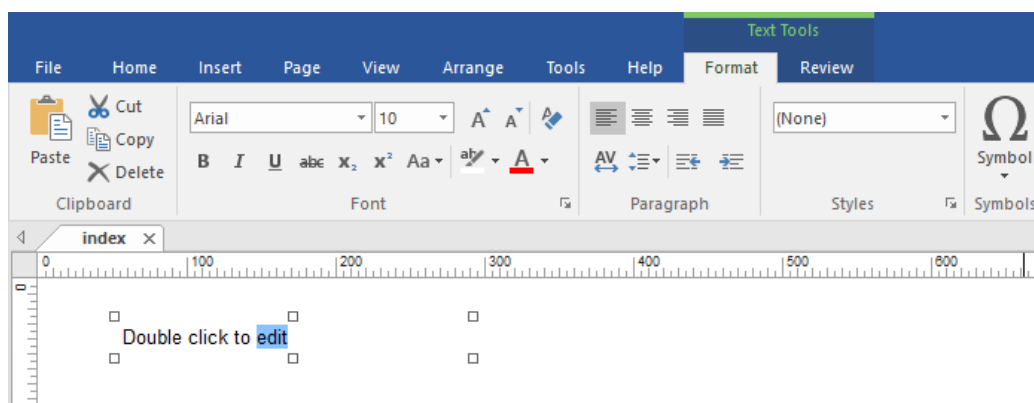
This may be useful for advanced users who want more control over the object's style or behavior.

## Adding text to the page

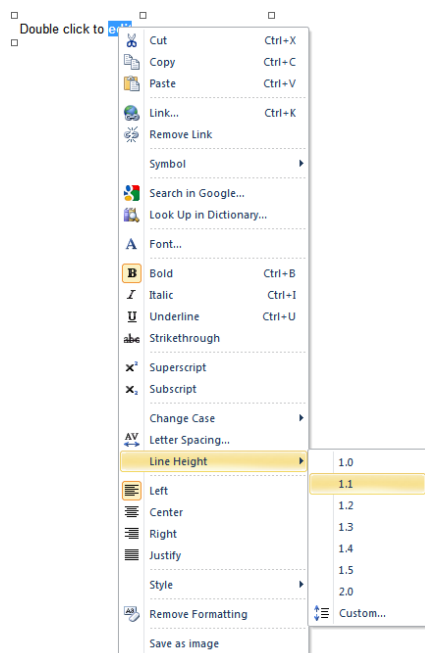
One of the first steps in creating a web page is often adding text.



Select Insert->Text from the menu and draw a box to indicate the position of the text. Then double click the box to start editing the text. Type some text and (press Enter to go to the next line). The box automatically changes its size to fit the text.



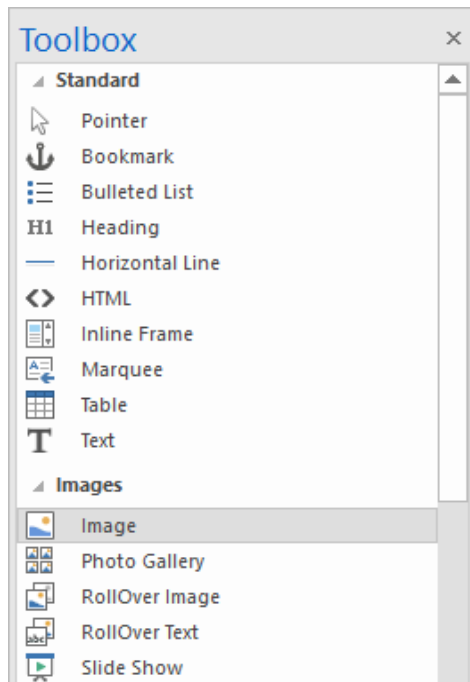
Next, you can change the text attributes by highlighting the text you want to modify with the mouse and then choose the new attributes in the Format Tab. You can change font type, size, bold, italic, underline, text color, highlight color and many other attributes. Note that the formatting tools are also available in the context menu of the text editor.



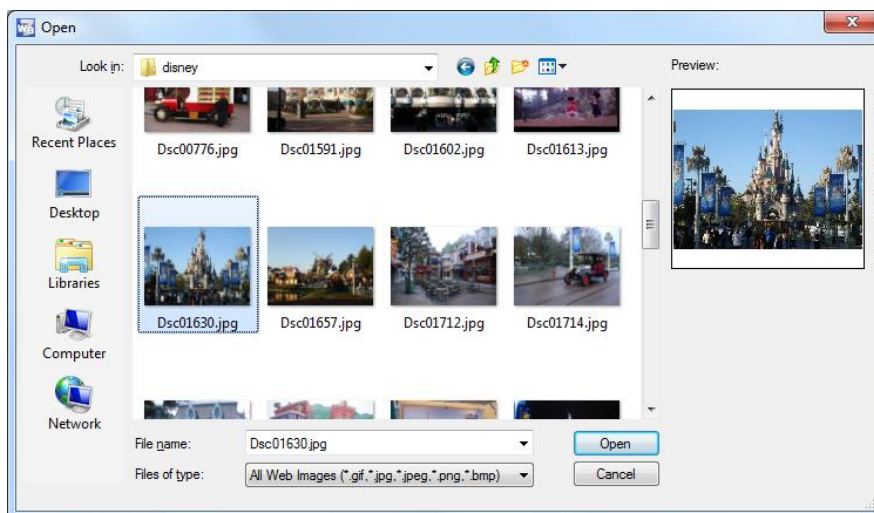
Click anywhere in the page to stop editing.

## Adding an image to a web page

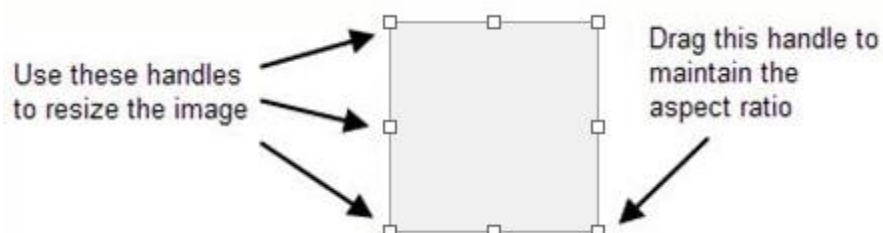
Select Insert->Image from the menu and draw a box to indicate the position of the image or select **Image** in the toolbox. The size of the box doesn't matter; Web Builder automatically adjusts the box to fit the image after you place it.



The Image File Open dialog appears so you can locate the image you want to place in the image box. Select the image you want to add and click Open to add it to the page.



To resize the image, drag the borders (handles) of the image object.



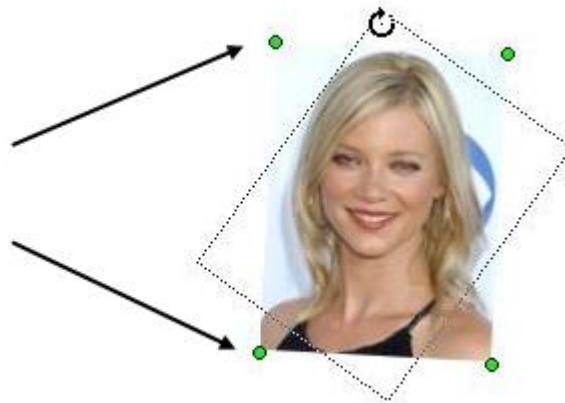
## Rotate an image

You can rotate image and shape objects.

To rotate an object:

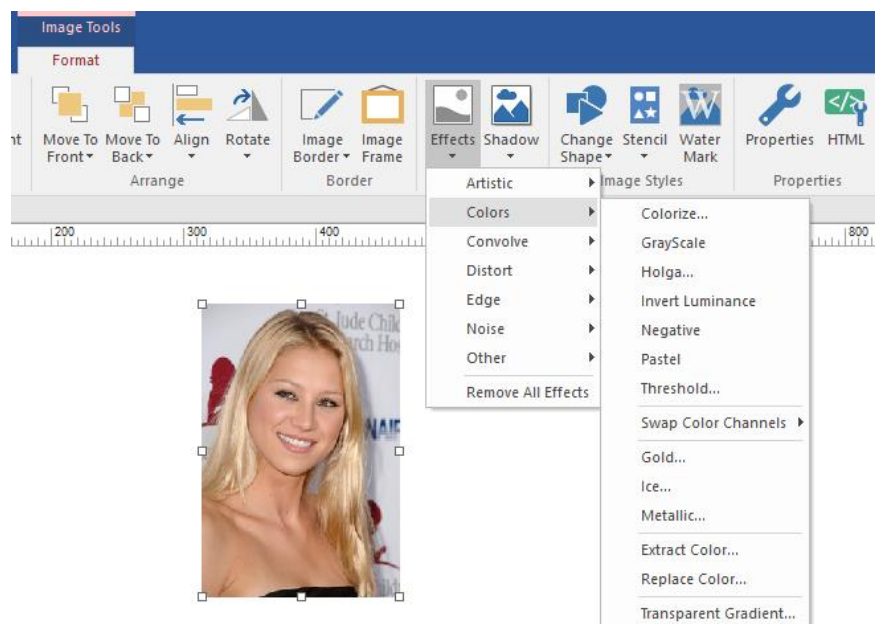
1. Select the Rotate tool on the Ribbon or right click and select Rotate.
2. Click to select the object, hover over one of its handles until you see the rotate pointer.
3. Hold the mouse button down and drag in the direction in which you want to rotate the object, then release. Use the Shift key for 15° rotation intervals.

When in rotate mode, use one of these handles to rotate the image



## Apply effects to an image

In WYSIWYG Web Builder you can apply effects to images without having to open a separate image editor! A few of the available effects are: Contrast, Brightness, Blur, Grayscale, Emboss, Negative, Sepia, Sharpen, Soften, Stencils and much more!

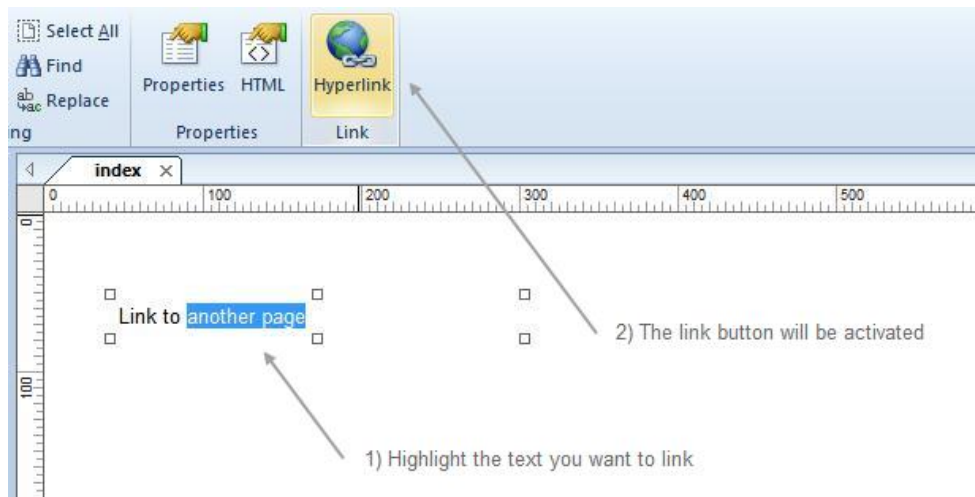


## Linking your pages together (Creating hyperlinks)

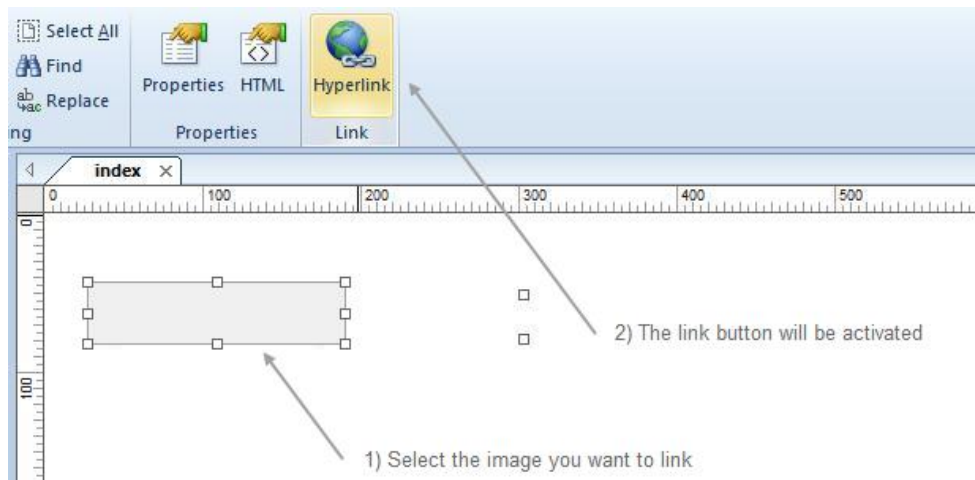
Hyperlinks are text or images that can be clicked to bring the user to another web file such as a web page, images or any other file. They are the essence of the World Wide Web as they link pages within sites and web sites to other web sites. To create a hyperlink in Web Builder, follow the instructions below.

### Linking text

Highlight the text you want to link and select Insert->Link from the menu bar, click the link button on the toolbar or press CTRL+K on your keyboard. This will display the Insert Hyperlink window.



### Linking an image, shape or rollover image.



Please read the chapter 'Links' of this document for more details about linking.

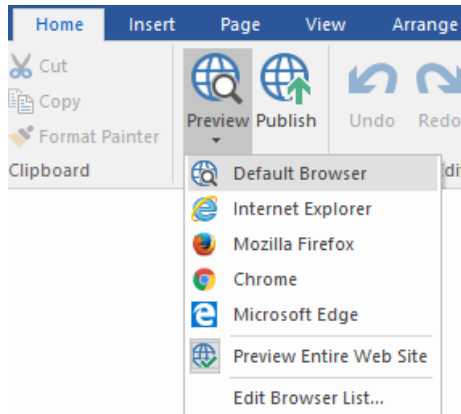
## Saving your web site

To save your web site, select Menu->File->Save Web Site from the menu and enter a name for the project. Web Builder uses the extension .wbs (Web Builder Site) to save the project files, **to save your page as HTML you'll have to Publish your pages.**

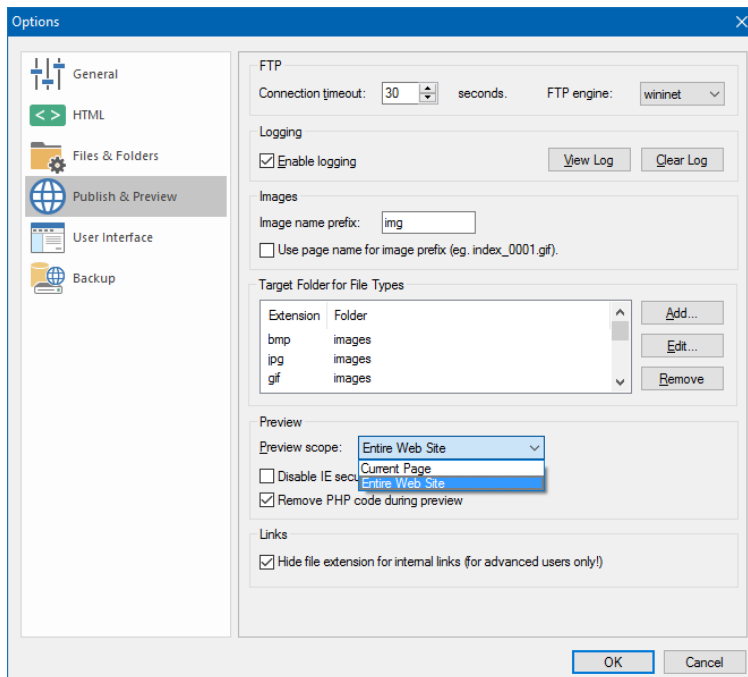


## Preview a page

Select Home->Preview in Browser->Default Browser (F5) to preview the current page in your default browser. It is also possible to change the browser that is used for previewing. Go to Home->Preview in Browser->Edit Browser List to add/edit the list of browsers that can be used to preview the pages you are working on.



Depending on the preview scope (Tools->Options->Miscellaneous), you can preview either a single page or the entire web site. Holding down the SHIFT key while previewing will 'invert' the current preview scope.



**Important note:** Internal links do not work in Preview, unless you have set the Preview Scope to Entire Web Site! If you only preview a single page, your browser will not be able to find all the other (internal) pages unless you also generate them!

**Another note:** You cannot preview pages that use PHP in your local browser. PHP pages can only be viewed through a web server with PHP support.

## Publishing your web pages

The final phase of creating a web site is publishing your pages. To place your pages on the Web, you need a Web server. Commonly called hosts, Web servers allow you to transfer and store files, including HTML documents, images and multimedia files. Unless you own your own Web Server, you need to find a server to host your pages. Some examples of web hosts are:

<http://www.godaddy.com/>

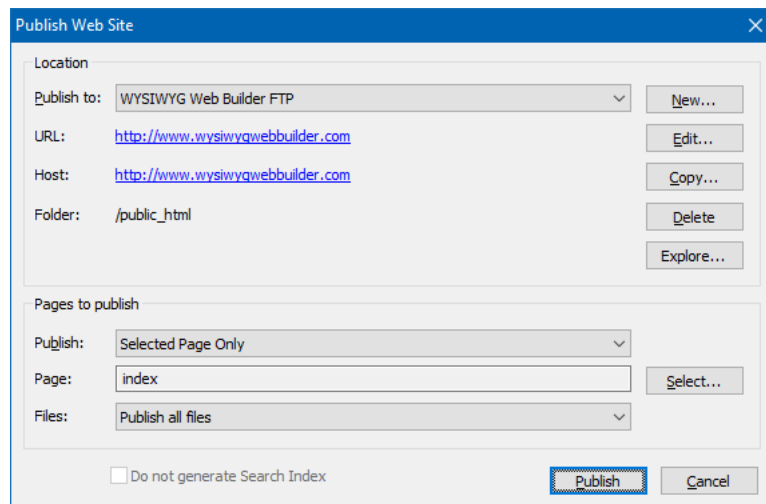
<http://www.1and1.com/>

but of course, there are many more!

Make sure you choose a web host that supports FTP; this makes it much easier to publish your pages from Web Builder.

### Publish to a remote FTP server.

Once you have registered to a web host, you will receive a server address, username and password. Enter this information into Web Builder by selecting: File->Publish. Click Add and select Type '**FTP Server**'. Sometimes you also need to specify a remote folder. Common remote folders locations are: /www, /public\_html, /html, but unfortunately this value can be different for each webhost, so consult your webhost's documentation for more details! If you have a firewall/router, select 'Use passive mode for transfers'. Click OK to save. Now you can publish each page simply by selecting Publish.



### **Publish to a Secure FTP server**

The following protocols are supported:

- FTP with TLS/SSL (Port 990 - Implicit)
- FTP with TLS/SSL (AUTH TLS - Explicit)
- SFTP using SSH2 (Secure Shell)

The available settings are the same as for standard FTP. Note however that usually web hosts use different ports for secure servers.

The default port numbers are:

- Port 990 for FTP with TLS/SSL (Port 990 - Implicit)
- Port 21 for FTP with TLS/SSL (AUTH TLS - Explicit)
- Port 22 for SFTP using SSH2 (Secure Shell)

### *Clear control channel*

Reverts the FTP control channel from SSL/TLS to an unencrypted channel. This may be required when using FTPS with AUTH TLS where the FTP client is behind a DSL or cable-modem router that performs NAT (network address translation).

If the control channel is encrypted, the router is unable to translate the IP address sent in the PORT command for data transfers. By clearing the control channel, the data transfers will remain encrypted, but the FTP commands are passed unencrypted.

### *Log Level*

Specifies the log level. This controls how much details are logged during publishing.

- Warning  
Only warnings and errors will be logged.
- Info  
Only basic information will be logged, like which files are transferred.
- All  
Detailed logging. This includes the transfer protocol commands.

Note that logging has impact on the performance. If more information is logged then it will take more time to process and the transfer will be slower.

### **Publish to a local folder**

If your web host doesn't support FTP or you want to use your favorite FTP client to transfer the files to the server, you can use the option 'Publish to a local folder'. Click Add to add a new location to the list. Enter a name for the location and select '**Local Folder**' as type. Enter the folder where you want to publish the active document. Click OK to save the data and then click Publish to save the files to the specified folder. Now you can take these files from the local folder and publish them using your preferred FTP utility.

### *Pages to Publish*

Select which page or pages you want to publish.

- **Entire Web Site**, publishes all pages of the web site (except the pages which have enabled 'Don't Publish this Page' in Page Properties)
- **Select Page Only**, publishes the select page, click Select to specify the page to be published.
- **Select Page and Sub Pages**, publishes the select page and all of its sub pages (if any).
- **Publish pages using the selected master page**. This will publish all files using the selected master page. This can be useful if you have made some changes to a master page and quickly want to re-publish all pages that are using that master page.

### *What to do in case of publishing errors?*

- Make sure your ftp address (host) is correct.
- Is your username and password ok?
- Make sure the remote folder is correct (very important!)
- If the files don't show up on your website you've probably specified the wrong remote folder.
- **Does your firewall block the FTP connection of Web Builder?**
- Enable 'Use passive mode for transfers'
- Increase the connection timeout to 120 seconds (Tools->Options->Publish)
- If the transfer takes a long time then you've probably used (very) large images.  
<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forum/viewtopic.php?t=1918>
- If your website doesn't look to be updated, select 'Refresh' in your browser multiple times!
- For a list of all possible error codes and their descriptions go here:<http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;EN-US;193625>

### *Why aren't my images displayed on the published page?*

- Did you upload the images to the web server?
- By default, Web Builder places all images in a sub folder called images; you can change this through Tools->Options->Publish->Image Sub Folder. If you leave this field empty, the images will be published in the same folder as the published page.
- Some web hosts do not support sub folders, so make sure you have permissions to create folder on the server. If not, then you must tell Web Builder to publish the images in the same folder as the HTML.
- Make sure the **image names are valid**; most web servers are case-sensitive and/or do not support special characters in the filenames of images.
- Do your image filenames contain whitespaces or other special characters? Image names with spaces can cause problems in some browsers and/or web servers, use underscores or dashes to connect words instead of spaces.

## **What's next?**

This manual has a description of pretty much all of Web Builder's features. Scroll down to learn all the exciting features of WYSIWYG Web Builder!

**Tip:** For Frequently Asked Questions or other support please visit:  
<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/support.html>

## **WYSIWYG Web Builder Options**

### **File**

#### **New Web Site**

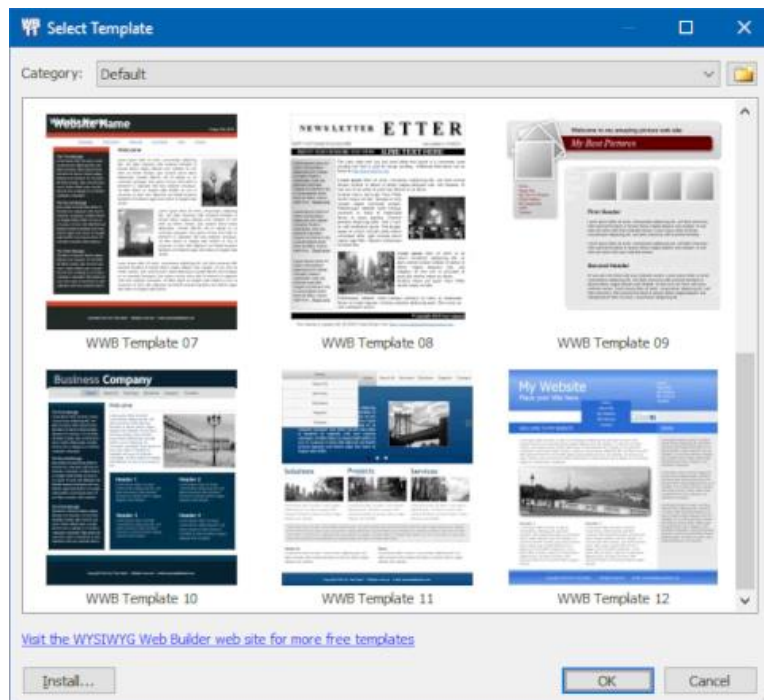
Creates a new empty web site project.

All pages of a web site will be saved in one file.

#### **New Web Site from Template**

Creates a new web site based on a template. Templates can later be used by you (or someone else) to use a basis for a new page or web site. When you save a web page to a template it will include all images and other objects in the template file, so there is no need to copy these files separately. This can be useful if you want to transfer your work to another computer. WYSIWYG Web Builder Templates have the .wtp extension and are saved in the sub folder **\My Document\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\templates**. To add a new category to the template selection window, so you can organize your templates, simply create a new folder and put the template files in this folder. The name of the folder will then be displayed in the Category dropdown list. You can also download templates created by other Web Builder users from the Pablo Software Solutions web site:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/templates.html>



#### **Open Web Site**

Opens an existing web site project.

#### **Close**

Close the active page. Closing the last open page will also close the web site project!

#### **Close Web Site**

Close the active web site project.

**Save Web Site**

Save the active web site project.

**Important note:**

WYSIWYG Web Builder does not edit the HTML directly, but it uses its own file format (.wbs) to store the information of the website. In order to save your pages as HTML you need to publish or export your pages. Web Builder stores the information of all your pages in one project file.

**Save Web Site As**

Save the active web site project with a new name.

**Save Web Site as Template**

Save the active web site project to a template.

See 'New Web Site from Template' for more details about templates.

**Save As HTML Document/ Export HTML**

This option triggers the Publish window. If you really want to export the active HTML page only, then hold down the SHIFT key on your keyboard. To generate more than one file at a time, please use the Publish option.

**Export to Quick 'n Easy Web Builder.**

Save a copy of the project in Quick 'n Easy Web Builder 4.x format.

Quick 'n Easy Web Builder (<http://www.quickandeasywebbuilder.com/>) is a web design tool for Mac and Linux inspired by WYSIWYG Web Builder. The projects created with QnEWB and WWB are not compatible. However, this option makes it possible to export the project in a format that can be opened by Quick 'n Easy Web Builder.

Note that Quick 'n Easy Web Builder is a different product, you will need a separate license.

**Know limitations:**

Quick 'n Easy Web Builder was created with different development tools on different platforms (Mac/Linux), so not all features work the same internally. For example, the text object uses a complete different text editor component.

This means that not all features can be exported to QWB format.

The following objects will not be exported:

- Bulleted list
- Clip Art
- CMS tools
- Curved Text
- ListView (jQuery UI)
- Marquee
- Text Art
- ToolTip (jQuery UI)
- Extensions

Note about text:

- Styles in text. The styles in the style manager will be exported but you will need to reapply the styles to the text.

For a feature comparison overview of WYSIWYG Web Builder and Quick 'n Easy Web Builder please go to: <http://www.quickandeasywebbuilder.com/forum/viewtopic.php?f=30&t=40257>

***Project backup in zip***

This will create a full backup of the project, images and other files in zip format.

Note that the images and other files will only be included if they are stored in the project folder. There for, the option "Let WYSIWYG Web Builder manage images and other files used by a project" should be enabled.

***Preview in Browser***

Preview the active web page in your default Browser.

Depending on the preview scope (Tools->Options->Misc), you can preview either a single page or the entire web site. It is also possible to change the browser that is used for previewing. Go to File->Preview in Browser->Edit Browser List to add/edit the list of browsers that can be used to preview the pages you are working on.

**Tip:** You can also use the menu item 'Preview entire web site' to toggle between single page and entire website preview.

**Note:** You cannot preview PHP pages directly in your browser. PHP can only be viewed via a web server with PHP support!

***Publish***

Publish the active page, a group of pages or the entire web site. You can choose to publish to a local folder or a remote FTP server. Check out the chapter 'Publish' of this document for more details.

***Exit***

Quits the application.

## Home

### **Paste**

Insert Clipboard contents.

In text editing mode hold down the SHIFT key while using this command to paste without formatting. This can be useful when you are pasting text from MS Word which may include invalid control characters.

### **Paste in Place**

Paste in Place is a method of pasting something in the workspace in the exact position that it was in when you copied it.

### **Format painter**

Use the Format Painter to quickly copy formatting (color, font, border) from one object to another. Note that it does not work for individual text, only the container object.

First select the object from which you want to copy the format. Then click the 'Format painter' button in the Ribbon and select another object.

To apply the same formatting to multiple objects, you can double-click the 'Format painter' button and then select other objects.

To cancel the format-painter tool select the button again or click on an empty area in the workspace.

Currently the following properties will be copied:

- alignment
- background color
- background image
- background texture
- background mode
- border color
- border radius
- border style
- border width
- box shadow
- font size
- font style
- gradient color
- gradient style
- margin
- opacity
- padding
- pattern style
- text color

### **Cut**

Cut the selection and put it on the Clipboard.

### **Copy**

Copy the selection and put it on the Clipboard.

### **Delete**

Erase the selection.

### **Select All**

Select the entire document (all objects).



### **Undo**

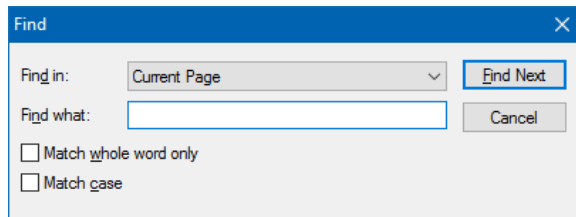
Undo the last action. You can undo up to 255 actions.

### **Redo**

Redo the previously undone action.

### **Find**

You can search for words or characters in the active page or your entire website. On the Edit menu, click Find. In Find in, select Current Page or Entire Web Site. In Find what, type the characters or words you want to find, and then click Find Next. To find additional instances of the same text, continue to click Find Next.



**Note:** If you select Find in 'Entire Web Site' then all your pages will be opened. This may use a lot of your system's memory and slow down the overall performance of your computer!

### **Replace**

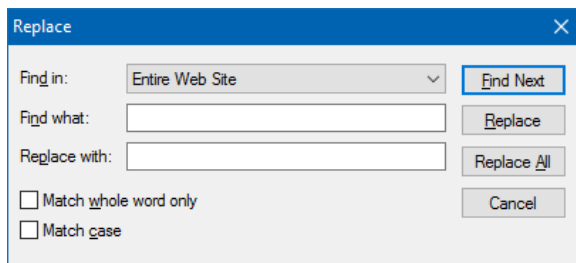
You can search for and replace words or characters with text that you specify.

On the Edit menu, click Replace. In Find in, select Current Page or Entire Web Site

In Find what, type the characters or words you want to find.

In Replace with, type the text you want to replace it with.

Click Find Next, and then click Replace. To replace all instances of the text, click Replace All.



### **Properties**

Edit properties of the selected object.

See the chapter 'WYSIWYG Web Builder Object' for more details about object properties.

### **HTML**

View generated HTML of the selected object or insert your own HTML code!

**Please note that this option is for advanced users only. Inserting invalid HTML code may cause unexpected results.**

### **Don't Publish Assets (context menu only)**

If this option is enabled then Web Builder will not publish the assets (images, scripts, movies) for this object. For example, a media player will not publish the associated media file(s).

This can be useful if a file already exists on the server, so it does not need to be published again.

**Note that it will still generate the HTML code for the object!**

### **Restore Original Size (context menu only)**

Can be used to restore an image or flash object to its original size.

## View

**Full Screen mode:** Normally, when you edit a webpage in WYSIWYG Web Builder, some of the screen is taken up with toolbars, a menu bar, a status bar, and other windows. To temporarily hide all of this extraneous information to solely work on your page, click "View" and select "Full Screen Mode". Everything will disappear except your currently edited page. To go back, press the F11 key or click the Full Screen toolbar button.

**Refresh:** The 'Refresh' option to reloads all images of the current page. This can be useful if you have edited images outside of Web Builder.

**Object Manager:** Show or hide the Object Manager window.

**Properties Inspector:** Show or hide the Properties Inspector window.

**Site Manager:** Show or hide the Site Manager window.

**Toolbox:** Show or hide the toolbox.

**Grid:** Show or hide grid.

**Snap to grid:** Enable or disable snap to grid. Use the Snap to Grid feature to align objects exactly. Web Builder creates a "magnetic" attraction between the selected object and the grid.

**Snap to ruler guides:** Enable or disable snap to ruler guides.

**Rulers:** Show or hide rulers.

**Ruler Guides:** Show or hide ruler guides. You can add ruler guides by clicking Ruler Guides->Add Horizontal/Vertical user guide or simply drag a new guide from the ruler bar.

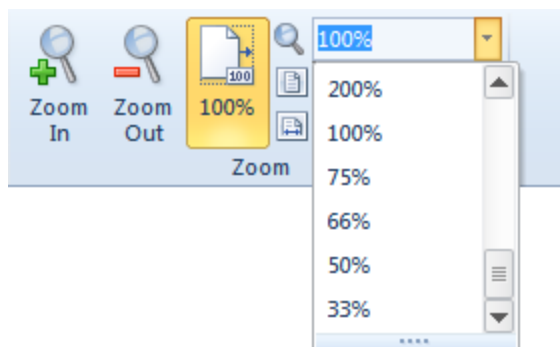
**Object Outlines:** Show or hide object borders.

### Zoom

You can zoom in to see parts of your web page close-up, or zoom out to see more of the page. You can either select one of the predefined zoom percentages or enter a custom value in the zoom toolbar.

#### Notes:

The quality of the zoomed page strongly depends on the zoom level. You will get the best quality for 100%, 200%, 300%, 400% etc. But a zoom level of 150% will introduce rounding errors. You cannot edit text when a page is zoomed in or zoomed out.



## Page

### ***New Page***

Adds a new page to your web site. The new page is automatically opened so you can start editing it right away. The new page (with a unique page name) will be added to the Site Manager tree.

### ***New Mobile Page***

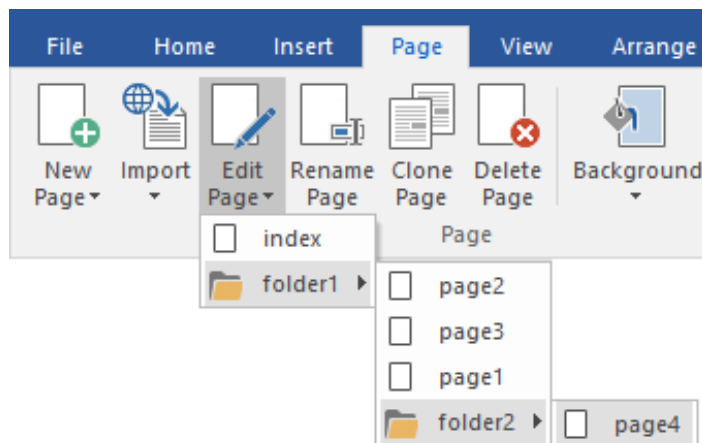
Adds a new mobile page to your web site. Mobile pages have a different toolset, optimized for mobile devices. For more information about mobile web design please read the following article: [Mobile Web Design](#).

### ***New Page from Template***

Create a new page based on a template. Pick any page from a template and insert it into the current project. The new page (with a unique page name) will be added to the Site Manager tree.

### ***Edit Page***

This will display a list of all the pages in your website. To open/edit the page, simply select the page name.



### ***Clone Page***

To make an exact copy of the active page, select **Clone Page** from the menu. A new item (with a unique name) will be added to the Site Manager.

#### **Note:**

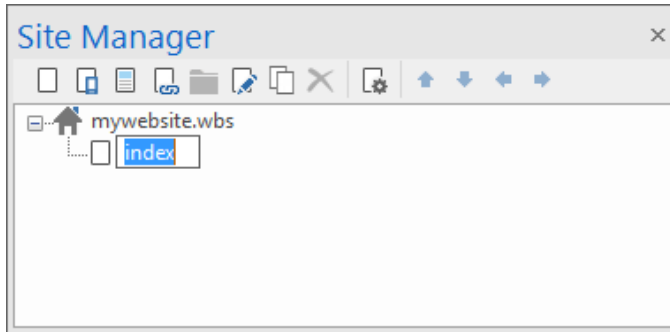
'Clone Page' will duplicate the page and all objects on that page. To reduce the number of duplicated objects within your website you should consider using master pages.

### ***Delete Page***

Delete the active page from your web site. You cannot remove the last page in your web site.

### **Rename Page**

Rename the active page. Note that the Site Manager must be visible to be able to rename your page. The name of the page will be highlighted in the Site manager, where you can change its name.



**Note:** When you have linked to the page you are renaming (from any page within the web site), Web Builder automatically updates all the links for you so you don't have to redo all the internal links.

### **Notes about page names**

While building your web site, Web Builder saves the project file with the .wbs extension. This is a project file used by Web Builder to simplify the building process. One project file can contain multiple web pages. Once your pages are ready you must export or publish them as HTML.

The name of the output HTML file is taken from the name you have specified in the Site Manager.

So, if you named the page index then the output file will be called index.html. If the page needs another extension like .php, you can configure this in the Page Properties.

Here are some guidelines how to name your web pages:

1. Do not add .html or .htm extension to the page name. Web Builder will automatically add the .html extension (or .php, .asp) when it publishes (or exports) the HTML code.
2. Always name your homepage: "index", this is the most common name for a homepage.
3. Always use lowercase filenames, most web servers are case sensitive and might fail to find your page if you have called it "Index" or "INDEX"
4. Use alpha numeric characters only. Do not use space or other special characters in the name, keep them simple like:  
"page1" or "my\_products"
5. Use underscores or dashes to connect words.

**Import HTML Page**

Although Web Builder is NOT an HTML editor, you can import existing HTML pages.

Select **Page->Import->Import HTML Page** from the menu to display the Import HTML page window.

You can either select an HTML page from your local drive or specify a URL of an online website.

Click **OK** to start importing the page. Web Builder will automatically copy all images to your local drive.

Important notes about importing HTML:

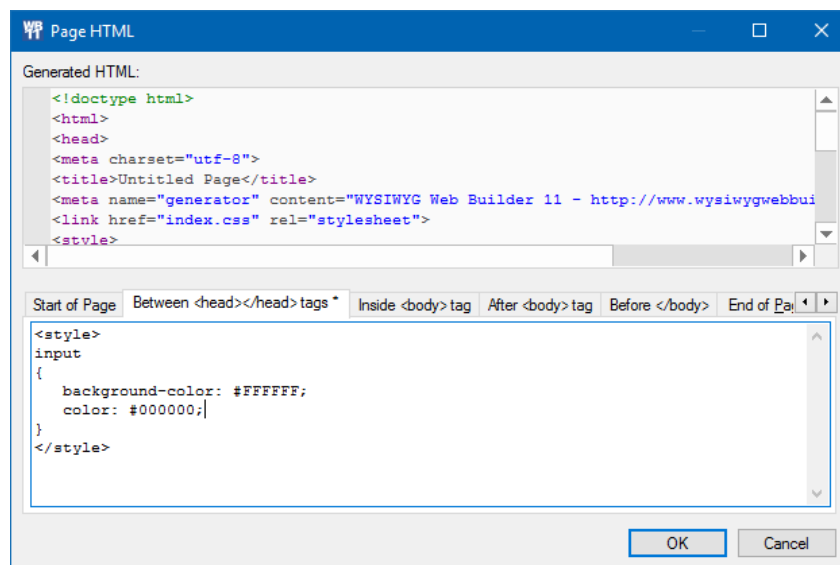
- WYSIWYG Web Builder is not an HTML editor, but an HTML generator! Web Builder imports the HTML by rendering the contents of an existing page and then attempts to convert the layout to Web Builder's internal object format.
- The import feature currently only imports text, images, form elements and body attributes (link colors, background images, meta tags). Tables, scripts, style sheets and multimedia components are not imported. But in most cases this is good enough to get you started.
- Web Builder does not parse style sheets, so in some cases the text may look different than the original page.
- Web Builder currently doesn't support framesets. If you want to import a web page that is using frames you'll have to import all individual pages separately.
- It is very difficult to support all different types of HTML. Even the popular browsers will interpret HTML differently, so don't expect miracles. If a page fails to be imported it probably contains code that Web Builder doesn't understand and you still have to start from scratch.
- Importing web pages created with WYSIWYG Web Builder will give the best results!

**Import page from another project**

This option makes it possible to import page from another WYSIWYG Web Builder project.

**Page HTML**

In this window, the HTML generated by Web Builder is displayed. To insert your own code, select the appropriate Tab. Select if the code should be inserted at the Start of Page, Between Head tag, Inside Body tag, After body tag, Before body tag, End of body or End of page. The custom code will be displayed in the color blue.



**Warning:** When you insert code in the Page HTML window, make sure you do not include the <HTML>, <HEAD> or <BODY> tags! WYSIWYG Web Builder already generates these tags.

- **Start of Page**

The HTML will be inserted before all other code on the page.

```
<-- your html -->
<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/loose.dtd">
<html>
<head>
...
```

- **Between <head></head> tags**

The HTML will be inserted between the <head></head> tags.

```
<head>
...
<-- your html -->
</head>
```

- **Inside <body> tag**

The HTML will be inserted inside the <body> tags.

```
<body attribute=value>
```

- **After <body> tag**

The HTML will be inserted after the <body> tags.

```
<body>
<-- your html -->

...
</body>
```

- **Before </body>**

```
<body>
...

<-- your html -->
</body>
```

- **End of page**

```
<body>
...
</body>
<-- your html -->
```

- **Inside <html> tag**

```
<html your html>
```

### ***Page Properties***

Set or edit the properties of the active page.

The property window of a page is subdivided into these categories:

- General
- Style
- Meta Tags
- Miscellaneous
- Events

### ***Multi-Page Properties***

The Multi-Page Properties tool can be used to modify selected properties for multiple (selectable) pages at once. For example, to quickly change the master page for a group of pages. But also, background properties, meta tags, page extension etc.

Only the modified value(s) will be applied to all selected pages, other values will not be affected.

### ***Site Properties***

Change the page properties of all pages within the current web site project. These values will also be used as the defaults for new pages. You can also launch the property categories individually (General, Formatting, Meta Tags, Internet Explorer and Misc). This can be useful if you only want to update the Formatting properties, without also affecting the meta tags and other categories for all pages.

#### **Note:**

Some properties like page size, title and extension are unique for each page, so these cannot be changed for all pages at the same time. To prevent you from accidental changing them and overwriting the properties of all pages, these properties have been disabled.

### ***Site HTML***

Insert (Page) HTML code that will be included on all pages.

To include HTML code only for specific pages, use Page HTML.

To include HTML code on multiple pages, but not on all pages you can use Master Frames.

### User defined variables

This option can be useful to get global variables for the project, for example to quickly update the copyright or other value that regularly changes.

The variables will be replaced during publishing by the specified value. You can use this variable anywhere in the page, text or property values.

Example:

Name: \$COPYRIGHT\$

Value: Pablo Software Solutions

This will replace any instance of '\$COPYRIGHT\$' in the project by 'Pablo Software Solutions'.

The following built-in variables are available (for advanced users):

#### \$PARALLAX\_SPEED\$

Specifies the speed at which the parallax effect runs. 0.0 means the image will appear fixed in place, and 1.0 the image will flow at the same speed as the page content. The default is 0.3.

#### \$GOOGLEFONTS\_PREFIX\$

This makes it possible to overwrite the 'http:' prefix used for Google web fonts. You can replace it with 'https:' or leave the value empty. Default is 'http:'

#### \$VIMEO\_PREFIX\$

This makes it possible to overwrite the 'http:' prefix used for the Vimeo URL. You can replace it with 'https:' or leave the value empty. Default is 'http:'

#### \$LAZYLOAD\_THRESHOLD\$

Specifies the default threshold of the Lazy Load script. By default images are loaded when they appear on the screen. If you want images to load earlier use threshold parameter. Setting threshold to 200 causes image to load 200 pixels before it appears on viewport.

#### \$LAZYLOAD\_EFFECT\$"

Configure the animation for lazy load: blind, bounce, drop, fade, fold, pulsate, puff, scale, shake, slide  
Note: lazy load is available for images, photo gallery, rollover image, rollover text

#### \$LAZYLOAD\_DURATION\$

Specifies the duration of the animation.

#### \$PROJECT\_CSS\$

Normally, the name of the global style sheet is based on the project name (e.g. projectname.css). This system variable makes it possible to specify a different name. For example: globalstyles

The following variable are set automatically:

#### \$PAGE\_NAME\$

will be replaced by name of the page (without file extension).

#### \$PAGE\_TITLE\$

will be replaced by the page title as specified in the page properties.

#### \$PAGE\_FILENAME\$

will be replaced by the filename of the page (with file extension).



**\$FORMERROR\_EMAIL\$**

Customize form error message. The default text is: The specified email address is invalid!

**\$FORMERROR\_FILESIZE\$**

Customize form error message. The default text is: The size of \$key (file: \$upload\_SrcName[\$i]) is bigger than the allowed \" . \$max\_filesize/1024 . \" Kbytes!

**\$FORMERROR\_URL\$**

Customize form error message. The default text is: URLs are not allowed!

**\$SKROLLR\_FORCEHEIGHT\$**

This option applies to scroll transitions: CSS3 Animations and Transitions

Makes sure the document is high enough that all key frames fit inside. For example, you specified an offset of 1000, but the content only makes the document 500px high. skrollr will ensure that you can scroll down the whole 1000px

Default is: 'false'

**\$SKROLLR\_MOBILECHECK\$**

This option applies to scroll transitions: CSS3 Animations and Transitions

This option can be used to enable checks for mobile devices. Default is: false. which means that scrolling transitions are enabled on mobile devices.

Important note: Some (older) mobile browsers do not provide 'real' scrolling events, but only trigger a start and finish event so any scrolling effect only takes place when the user has stopped moving the page so the animation would happen all at once at the end.

**\$SKROLLR\_SMOOTHSCROLLING\$**

This option applies to scroll transitions: CSS3 Animations and Transitions

Smooth scrolling smoothens animations. When you scroll down 50 pixels, the animations will transition instead of jumping to the new position. Default is: 'false'

## *Page Properties - General*

### **Title**

Enter the title of the web page. This title will be displayed in the title bar of the browser's window and search engine results.

### **Menu Name**

This name will be used for the item names in navigation bars and menu bars which have enabled the option 'Synchronize with Site Manager'. By default, the page name (as specified in the Site Manager) and the button name are the same, but this field allows you to use an alternative name for the item.

### **Page Width**

Specifies the workspace width of the page.

#### **Notes:**

1. This value is not used by the browser, it's only an internal value used by Web Builder to indicate the available workspace and to control the scrollbars when your screen size is not large enough to display the content of the page.
2. The Center in browser option uses this value to calculate the absolute center of your page, so if you've designed your page for a resolution of 800x600, make sure this value is set to 800 or else your page will not be centered!

### **Page Height**

Specifies the workspace height of the page.

#### **Note:**

This value is not used by the browser, it's only an internal value used by Web Builder to indicate the available workspace and to control the scrollbars when your screen size is not large enough to display the content of the page.

### **Target screen size**

This option helps you determine the optimal page size for a specific screen resolution. It controls the page width/height properties. For example, if you select '800x600', then the page width/height will be set to 770x600.

**Why?** Because you will have to leave some space for the vertical scrollbar, so you can't use the full 800 pixels for the page content.

### **File extension**

Normally your web page will be published using the .html extension. In some cases it might be necessary to specify another extension like .php or .asp in case your page uses PHP or ASP.

#### **Notes:**

If you set the file extension to something other than .html, then your browser may not be able to preview the page. In order to preview PHP or ASP page, you must publish the page to a web server which can handle these page types!

After changing the file extension you will need to re-publish all pages link to it, otherwise the links will still refer to the old page name.

### Document Type

The doctype declaration is an instruction for the web browser about what version of the markup language the page is written in.

Currently WYSIWYG Web Builder supports 2 document types:

#### **HTML 4.01 Transitional (default)**

The generated output will be HTML and compliant to the HTML 4.01 specification of W3C (just like in previous versions of WYSIWYG Web Builder).

#### **XHTML 1.0 Transitional**

The generated output will be XML and compliant to the XHTML 1.0 specification of W3C.

#### **HTML5**

The generated output will be HTML and compliant to the HTML 5 specification of W3C. For some features (like HTML5 events, CSS3 styles. this option needs to be selected)

Select document type 'None' if you don't want to include the doctype declaration in the page output. The generated output will be HTML 4.01 Transitional in that case.

### Center page in browser window

Enabling this option will center the published page in the browser window. Most professional web sites are designed so they will look good on different screen sizes. Because Web Builder uses absolute positioning for all elements, they cannot be stretched over the full width and height of a page, because that would 'scramble' the contents of the page and this wouldn't look good;)

Here are a few tips for the designing your pages so they are displayed in the center of the browser:

- Set the Page properties to 800x600.
- Enable the Guide Borders and set them to the same size.
- Make sure all page contents stays between the guide borders.
- Enable 'Center to browser' in Page Properties.

For more details see also: <http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forum/viewtopic.php?t=153>

### **Center page horizontally and vertically (DEPRECATED)**

This option allows you to center the web page both horizontally and vertically in the browser window.

### **Align to left, but include page width/height (recommended for eBay)**

This option may be useful for designers who want to use their pages for eBay listings. The width and height attributes for the page will added to the page style.

### **Set Page width and height to 100%**

This option is for use in combination with the 'Full screen' floating layer mode.

Related tutorial:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/fullscreen.html>

### **Don't Publish this page**

Enable this option if you don't want this page to be published if your select Publish Entire Web Site.

Possible reason for this can be:

1. This page is currently not part of the website or still under construction
2. The page is only used as part of your other pages eg. Master Page.
3. The page is not changed so there's no need to publish it again.

### **Don't synchronize this page in Navigation Objects**

When this option is enabled the page will not appear in navigation objects which automatically synchronize with the Site Manager.

**Don't Include this Page in the Search Index.**

When this option is enabled the page will not be included in the search index.

**Don't Include this Page in the Site Map.**

When this option is enabled the page will not be included in the site map.

**Character Set**

The character set tells the browser how to interpret and display the characters on your webpage. Depending on the language of the text on the page it might be necessary to force the browser to another character set. The most common used character sets are: ISO-8859-1 (ANSI) and UTF-8 (UNICODE).

**Note:**

This setting will not change anything to the way Web Builder displays your pages. It will only be used by browsers.

**Page Language**

Specifies the language (Content-Language) of the page. Search engines may use this tag to categorize pages by language.

**Note:**

This setting will not change anything to the way Web Builder displays your pages. This value will only be used by search engines.

**Direction**

Specifies the text direction for the content in the page. This can be either property set to 'left-to-right' or 'right-to-left'.

**Make Default**

Saves the current values as defaults for new pages.

**Note:**

You can also update the page properties for all pages at once using Menu->Page->Site Properties!

## *Properties - Icons*

### **Favorites Icon**

You can use favorites icons (also known as shortcut icons or favicon) to display your logo or some other small graphic on the Favorites menu, address or page tabs of your browser. They are a great way to add brand recognition to your Web site.

A shortcut icon must be square in size, and at least 16 x 16 pixels. Consider creating both a 16 x 16-pixel icon as well as a 32 x 32-pixel icon since on high-DPI displays, the browser may stretch the icon to fit the available space.

To create the icon, use an icon editor, such as Axialis IconWorkshop, IcoFX or Microangelo Toolset and save the icon in the .ico file format.

Optionally, you can specify dedicated image for 32 and 64 pixels in PNG format.

### **Apple Touch Icon**

Similar to the Favorites Icon, the Apple Touch Icon is a file used for a web page icon on the Apple iPhone, iPod Touch, and iPad.

When the user bookmarks the web page or adds the page to their home screen, this icon is used. Apple Touch Icons are also supported by most Android devices.

Unfortunately, different devices require different image sizes. So, that is why we have now added the ability to configure multiple sizes.

Common sizes:

152x152 (iPad)

167x167 (iPad Retina)

180x180 (iPhone Retina)

## *Properties - SEO*

### **Search Engine Optimization**

Search engine optimization (SEO) is the process of improving the volume or quality of traffic to a web site or a web page from search engines.

The theory is that the earlier (or higher) a site appears in the search results list, the more visitors it will receive from the search engine.

These values may help improve your SEO, however modern search engines use more advanced techniques to index your website.

More details: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Search\\_engine\\_optimization](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Search_engine_optimization)

### **Robots**

The Robots Meta Tag is used to tell search engines whether to index and/or crawl a page or not.

### **Revisit after**

The Revisit Meta Tag is used to tell search engines when to come back next.

### **Expires after**

The Expires Meta Tag is used to tell search engines when the page and content is no longer valid.

### **Canonical URL**

If you have different pages with similar content (for example, a page with both a mobile and a desktop version), Google sees these as duplicate versions of the same page. Google will choose one URL as the canonical version and crawl that, and all other URLs will be considered duplicate URLs and crawled less often.

More information: <https://support.google.com/webmasters/answer/139066?hl=en>

### **hreflang**

The hreflang attribute tells Google which language you are using on a specific page, so the search engine can serve that result to users searching in that language. The links will also be added to the site map.

More information: <https://support.google.com/webmasters/answer/189077?hl=en>

## Properties - Style

### Background mode

Specifies the background mode.

- **Transparent**  
The background of the page will be transparent. Note that normally this means that page will be white, because you cannot look through the browser window...
- **Solid**  
Use a solid background color.
- **Image**  
Use an image as background.

### Repeat

Sets the tiling attributes for the background image. Possible options are:

- repeat in both directions
- repeat in horizontal / vertical direction
- do not repeat
- space, the background-image is repeated as much as possible without clipping.
- round, the background-image is repeated and squished or stretched to fill the space (no gaps).

### Horizontal Align

Sets the horizontal position for the background image.

### Vertical Align

Sets the vertical position for the background image.

### Background image size (this is the drop down option at the right of 'repeat')

Specifies the size of the background image.

#### empty (default)

The background-image has the default size and scrolls with the content.

#### fixed

A fixed background is a background image that will stay in one place while the rest of your text and images scroll over the top of it.

#### cover

Scale the background image to be as large as possible so that the background area is completely covered by the background image. Some parts of the background image may not be in view within the background positioning area.

#### contain

Scale the image to the largest size such that both its width and its height can fit inside the content area.

#### parallax

The image scrolls slower than the content in the foreground, creating the illusion of 3D depth.

For advanced users:

The default speed is 0.3. You can change this by adding a Site Variable with the name \$PARALLAX\_SPEED\$

The speed at which the parallax effect runs. 0.0 means the image will appear fixed in place, and 1.0 the image will flow at the same speed as the page content.

#### percentages

For example: '100% 100%' will stretch the images to 100% of the object's width/height. Other values like '50% 50%' are also possible.

#### pixels

For example: '320px 250px' will display the image in the specified size.

- **Gradient**  
Use a (two-color) gradient as background.  
The gradient can either be horizontal or vertical. By default, a background image will be generated for the gradient effect. However, you can also use CSS3 gradients by enabling the option 'Use CSS3 gradients instead of images' in Tools->Options->HTML.
- **Multi-color gradient**  
Use a (multi-color) gradient as background. WYSIWYG Web Builder includes many predefined multi-color gradient styles but you can easily create your own style with the Gradient Manager.
- **Pattern**  
Use a pattern as background. A new image will automatically be generated for the pattern.
- **Texture**  
Use a texture as background. A new image will automatically be generated for the texture.

#### Background-clip

The 'background-clip' property is an advanced option and it is available in Property Inspector and the Style Manager. It specifies the painting area of the background. This may be useful in combination with transparent borders. 'border-box' clips the background to the border box. When using a transparent border, the background will be visible behind the border. 'padding-box' clips the background to the padding box (excluding the border). The background behind the border will be transparent.

#### Link Color

This specifies the default, unvisited hyperlinks color.

#### Visited Link Color

This specifies the color of a followed link.

#### Active Link Color

This specifies the color of an active link.

#### Hover Link Color

This specifies the color of all hover links of the active page.

#### Underline mode

Specifies whether links will always be underlined or only when the mouse is over the link.

**Note:** You can also control the colors of hyperlinks by using Hyperlink Style Sheets. For more information, see the description in the chapter 'Links'.

#### Default Font, Size and Color

Specifies the default font, font size and text color that will be used for text you enter in the page.

#### Theme

Specifies the (ThemeRoller based) theme for the page. This theme will be applied to all theme enabled objects like jQuery UI widgets. Besides jQuery UI widgets you can also enable theming for the menubar, navigation bar, tab menu, slidemenu, horizontal line. This way you can give you page a uniform look and feel. Themes can be created and edited with the Theme Manager.



## Page Properties - Meta Tags

### Author

The author meta tag is used to indicate who the author of the web page is.

### Keywords

The keyword meta tag can be important when it comes to some search engines.

When these auto robot search engines index your site, some will look for a keyword meta tag to use as index words.

When someone uses their search engine and searches on a word that is in your keyword meta tag list, your site will be included in the output search results.

#### Tip:

The keywords are typically separated by a comma (,)

### Description

The description meta tag can be important when it comes to some search engines.

There are many search engines that will index your site automatically.

Some of these search engines allow for a short description to be placed in their web page.

If the search engines are looking in your web page for a description meta tag, it will use this description in the search index.

### Categories

Specifies to which Categories the page belongs to. This meta tag is used by the SiteTree object to categorize pages. Example: downloads, products, fun, business, personal etc.

Tip: You can assign multiple categories to a page. The categories should be separated by a comma (,)

### Generator

Typically, the name of the application used to create the page.

### User defined

Here you can insert your own custom meta tags. These will be inserted before all other meta tags right after the <head> tag.

Example:

```
<meta http-equiv="Cache-control" content="no-cache">
<meta name="expires" content="tue, 01 Jun 2010 19:45:00 GMT">
```

## Open Graph Meta Tags

These settings make it easy to add Open Graph meta tags to a page to enable it to become a "rich" social object. For instance, Facebook uses this information to work out how to preview shared content in a user's Facebook profile.

The following properties are supported: og:url, og:title, og:description, og:image and og:type

<https://developers.facebook.com/docs/sharing/webmasters#markup>

### **Twitter Cards**

With Twitter Cards, you can attach rich photos, videos and media experiences to Tweets, helping to drive traffic to your website. If you add Twitter Card meta tags to your webpage, users who Tweet links to your content will have a “Card” added to the Tweet that’s visible to their followers.

This is very similar to sharing a link on Facebook which automatically displays a preview with title, summary, and thumbnail of your page content when using Open Graph Meta Tags.

More information:

<https://developer.twitter.com/en/docs/tweets/optimize-with-cards/overview/abouts-cards>

The following Cards types are supported:

- **Summary**  
The Summary Card can be used for many kinds of web content, from blog posts and news articles, to products and restaurants. It is designed to give the reader a preview of the content before clicking through to your website.
- **Summary with large image**  
The Summary Card with Large Image features a large, full-width prominent image alongside a tweet. It is designed to give the reader a rich photo experience, and clicking on the image brings the user to your website.
- **Player**  
Video clips and audio streams have a special place on the Twitter platform thanks to the Player Card. By using the Player option (and following the Twitter Developer Policy), you can deliver your rich media to users across the globe.

## *Properties - Miscellaneous*

### **Master Page**

In this section you can specify the master page or master frame of the page.

- **Master Frame**  
Specifies the page used for the Master Frame. The idea behind a master frame is that the page will have a common 'frame' and the content of this page will be put inside the Content Place Holder of specified Master Frame when the page is being previewed or published. The footer and (right) sidebar of the master frame will automatically be moved based on the size of the content. Or in other words: the content place holder will expand. Online tutorial: [http://wysiwygwebbuilder.com/master\\_frame.html](http://wysiwygwebbuilder.com/master_frame.html)
- **Master Page**  
In addition to a Master Frame you can now also use another page as master page. This does not require a content place holder. Basically, the master page will be used as 'background' of the content page and you place all other objects on top of this. Online tutorial: [http://wysiwygwebbuilder.com/master\\_page.html](http://wysiwygwebbuilder.com/master_page.html)

To remove a previous selected name, click the 'Remove' button.

### **Redirect**

The Redirect property redirects the user to another page after a specific delay.

- **Do no redirect**  
Disables the redirect feature.
- **Web Site**  
Redirect the user to an external page.
- **Internal page**  
Redirect the user to a (internal) page of your website.

### **Redirect URL**

Specifies the URL where the user will be redirected to.

### **Redirect Delay**

Specifies the redirect delay. 0 (zero) means no delay.

### **Lightbox**

Specifies the lightbox script that will be used for internal features like 'Open link in Lightbox' or the lightbox functionality in YouTube, Vimeo and HTML5 video. Additional lightboxes can be downloaded here: [http://wysiwygwebbuilder.com/free\\_extras.html](http://wysiwygwebbuilder.com/free_extras.html)

### **Preloader**

A preloader (also known as loading screen) is what you see on some sites before the main content of the web page is loaded. WYSIWYG Web Builder can display a (semitransparent) overlay with animated gif when the website loading is in progress. It will disappear right after the page loads. A collection of standard preloader images is included, but you can also add your own animations by adding a custom gif image to the 'preloader' folder.

This folder is normally located in Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\preloader\

The background property specifies the color of the overlay background (not the background color of the GIF!). The background color supports alpha transparency.

Online tutorial:

<https://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/preloader.html>

## *Properties - Advanced*

### **Overflow**

These properties specify whether content is clipped when it overflows the browser window.

'Overflow-x' determines clipping at the left and right edges, 'Overflow-y' at the top and bottom edges.

- **none**  
The overflow attribute will not be added to the page HTML. In this case scroll behavior may be different for each browser type.
- **visible**  
This value indicates that content is not clipped, i.e., it may be rendered outside the browser window.
- **hidden**  
This value indicates that the content is clipped and that no scrolling mechanism should be provided to view the content outside the browser window.
- **scroll**  
This value indicates that the content is clipped and that if the browser displays scrollbars. This avoids any problem with scrollbars appearing and disappearing in a dynamic environment where pages have different sizes.
- **auto**  
The behavior of the 'auto' value is browser-dependent, but should cause a scrolling mechanism to be provided for overflowing boxes.

### **Layout Mode**

- **CSS layout**  
The recommended layout mode. This mode will use CSS (absolute positions) to create the best possible layout. All objects will be individually positioned, so you can overlap objects and place them anywhere you like. It also results in very clean HTML code.
- **Table Layout (not recommended!)**  
This mode uses (invisible) tables to position objects on the page. It does not allow objects to be overlapped! This technique was used by web designers before CSS was supported by all browsers. Note that today all browsers do support CSS and table-based layouts are considered old fashioned technology. However, table layouts can be useful for News Letters because email clients usually do not support CSS. See 'Creating Newletters' later in this document for more details.

### **Use z-index for object order**

By default, all objects use the 'z-index' attribute to set the position in the z-order of the page. If for some reason, you do not want this, then you can disable this option. Do not change this value unless you know what you are doing!

### **PHP Version**

Specifies the PHP version for the current page. Currently this option only affects database functionality.

If set to PHP4 then all scripts will use MySQL database functions. For old servers!

If set to PHP5-PHP7 then MySQLi database functions will be used. This is the recommended setting.

### **Compatibility**

This option enables Internet Explorer to emulate previously versions of this browser. This can be useful in case you experience display problems in IE that did not exist in previous versions of the browser.

More information: [http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc288325\(VS.85\).aspx#SetMode](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc288325(VS.85).aspx#SetMode)

**Disable CSS media query**

When this option is enabled, then breakpoints/media queries will not be published. This may be useful for testing purposes.

**Disable HTML/CSS/JavaScript formatting**

This option disables beautify and minify options for the current page. This may be useful for testing purposes or when you have added code to the page which does not support formatting.

**Disable custom code**

When this option is enabled, then custom code will not be included in the published page. This makes it possible to test the page without custom code. For example, in case something does not work, so you do not have to remove all code.

**Disable scroll events on small screens**

This option adds the ability to disable scroll events on small screens (e.g. phones).

**Disable scroll transitions on small screens**

This option adds the ability to disable scroll transitions on small screens (e.g. phones). 'Minimum width' specifies the width at which the scroll events/ transitions will be disabled.

**Exclude browsers**

This option adds the ability to disable scroll events and transitions on specific browsers.

Multiple browsers are separated by a pipe character. For example:

Android|iPhone|iPad|iPod|BlackBerry

Technical details: Exclude browsers uses the following JavaScript function to detect browsers:

```
(/Android|iPhone|iPad|iPod|BlackBerry/i).test(navigator.userAgent || navigator.vendor);
```

### ***Properties - Events***

For more information about events please go read the chapter **Events**.

### ***Properties – jQuery Mobile***

The following page properties are only for mobile web pages.

#### **Theme**

Specifies the jQuery Mobile theme for the current page and all objects on that page. Themes can be edited with the Mobile Theme Manager.

#### **Swatch**

Each theme can have up to 26 variations (swatches).

In the Swatch property you can select one of those variations.

#### **Use AJAX**

jQuery Mobile will automatically handle link clicks and form submissions through Ajax, when possible. If false, URL hash listening will be disabled as well, and URLs will load as ordinary HTTP requests.

#### **Transition**

Specifies the page transition. Page transitions only work if AJAX is enabled.

## Insert

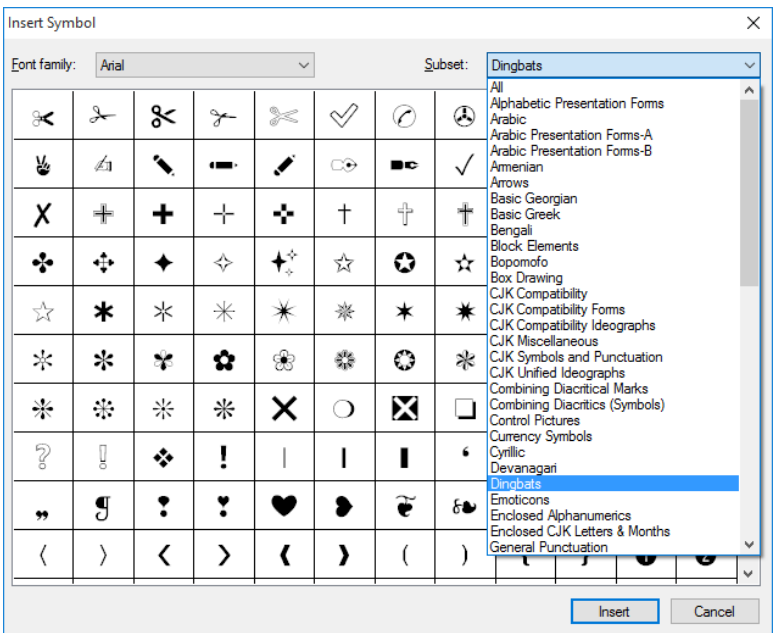
Most of the menu items are also available through the Toolbox. More details about the available objects can be found in **WYSIWYG Web Builder objects** later in this document. A few additional choices are available in the Insert Tab:

### Select

The Select object is used to select objects. To select multiple objects, drag a selection box around them, or hold down the Shift key while you click them one at a time.

### Symbol

Insert a symbol (special character) into a text object. This option is only enabled when you are in text edit mode.



### Link

Opens a link dialog for the selected object or text.  
Check out chapter 'Links' for more details.

## Format

Most formatting tools apply to text only. WYSIWYG Web Builder allows you to make all the same attribute changes you can make in (for example) MS Word. To edit the formatting of text you must first double click the text object to go into edit mode, then **highlight** the text you want to modify with the mouse and select formatting option.

### **Font Type**

Font type is the font family of text, such as Comic Sans, Times New Roman, and Courier New. To change the font type, select the font you want from the Font Type List Box on the toolbar.

### **Font Style**

The style of the text can either be bold, italics, or underline. To change the font style, select one or more of the Style Icons on the toolbar.

### **Font Color**

The color of the text can also be changed. To change the font color, select the Text Color Icon on the toolbar. The Color Dialog Box appears. Choose the color you want and click OK.

### **Background Color**

To change the background color of the selected text, click the Background Color Icon on the toolbar. The Color Dialog Box appears. Choose the color you want and click OK.

### **Change Case->Sentence case**

Capitalizes the first letter of each sentence of the selected text.

### **Change Case->Lowercase**

Sets all selected text to lowercase.

### **Change Case->Uppercase**

Sets all selected text to uppercase.

### **Change Case->Capitalize Each Word**

Capitalizes the first letter of each word of the selected text.

### **Change Case->Toggle case**

Toggles the case of each letter of the selected text.

### **Decrease indent**

Decrease the left margin (indent) of the current text line.

### **Increase indent**

Increase the left margin (indent) of the current text line.

### **Letter spacing**

Sets the amount of additional space between letters in the text.

### **Line height**

Sets the distance between lines in the object.

### **Font Size**

To change the font size, select one of available HTML font sizes.



### ***Text Alignment***

You can change the alignment of the selected text object by using one of the alignment buttons: Left, Center, Right or Justify.

### ***Remove formatting***

Sometimes it can be useful to remove all formatting from a piece of text at once. Highlight the text and select Remove Formatting to reset all styles to its default values. Formatting removed from the text include bold, italic, underline, subscript, superscript, strikethrough, text color and background color.

### ***Remove link***

Removes the link that was assigned to the selected text.

### ***Search in Google***

When you are editing text, this command will search the selected word on Google. Your computer must be connected to the Internet.

### ***Look Up in Dictionary***

When you are editing text, this command will look up the selected word on the website:

<http://dictionary.reference.com/>

Your computer must be connected to the Internet.

## ***Styles***

In the Style Manager you can manage the styles of a project. By using styles, you can modify the style of the entire website all in one place.

### ***General Styles***

In the General Style page HTML/CSS styles can be defined, such as text header styles (H1, H2, H3 ...) or form element styles. See also: Style Manager.

### ***Hyperlink Styles***

By default all hyperlinks in your webpage use the default HTML link colors as defined in the Page Properties. But by using Hyperlink styles you can set the style of individual links.

- a) Create a new style
- b) In the (text) link properties select the style The style will be applied when you preview or publish the page.

### ***Gradient Styles***

Use the Gradient Style Manager to add/edit and remove global (multi-color) gradients effects. Gradient effect can be used by Shapes, ClipArt, TextArt and other drawing tools.

### ***Web safe fonts***

Note: You can now enable **@font-face** to be able to use non-web safe fonts. More information is available on the bottom of this page.

Web safe (or "web safe", "safe for the web") fonts are fonts that are common among all versions of Windows, Mac, and Linux. We recommend using web safe fonts if you want your web pages to look the same on all computers.

List of web safe fonts:

Arial  
Bookman Old Style  
Comic Sans MS  
Courier  
Courier New  
Georgia  
Impact  
Lucida Console  
Lucida Sans Unicode  
MS Sans Serif  
MS Serif  
Palatino Linotype  
Tahoma  
Times New Roman  
Trebuchet MS  
Verdana

You can enable the option 'Tools->Options->Miscellaneous->Display web safe fonts only', so WYSIWYG Web Builder will only display web safe fonts.

This may also increase the speed of the user interface, because not all fonts need to be loaded into memory every time you want to select a different font.

Of course, this font limitation is only for text-based objects. So, you can use other fonts for navigation bar buttons, banners and other image based objects. Web Builder's text object also has an option to publish the text as an image.

### ***Using @font-face***

For a long time it was only possible to use a selected number of web safe fonts in your web designs. However now you can use any font by enabling WYSIWYG Web Builder's 'Use @font-face for non-web safe fonts' option (Menu->Tools->Options->HTML)!

If you enable this option you will be able to use any type of true type font even if it's not web safe by using a new CSS3 feature called @font-face. WYSIWYG Web Builder will automatically generate the necessary code and upload the font to the server. It will even generate a secondary (eot) font file required to make this feature work with IE!

## Table

The Table Menu contains all the operations related to creating and modifying tables. Tables have columns and rows of cells that can contain text (images, forms, or other page elements are not supported at the moment). Tables are useful for the layout of data; they can be used to simulate columns of text. When you type text in a table cell it expands horizontally and vertically to accommodate the text that are typed or inserted. You can edit, format, and specify properties (background color or image) for the text, as well as for the table cell, row, column, or table itself. You can easily resize cells, columns, rows, or the entire table by the dragging borders.

### ***Insert Table***

Draw a box where you want to position the table.

The Insert Table dialog appears.

Enter the number of cells and rows required.

Enter layout and size details and click on OK

### ***Insert Rows or Columns***

Select this option if you need to insert additional rows and columns after a table has been created.

Specify if you want to insert Rows or Columns and enter the number of rows/columns to be added.

To insert a column to the left of a selected column, choose [Left of selection](#).

To insert a column to the right of a selected column, choose [Right of selection](#).

To insert a row above a selected row, choose [Above Selection](#).

To insert a row below a selected row, choose [Below Selection](#).

### ***Merge Cells***

Merge two or more adjacent cells. This command is only available when two or more adjacent cells are selected on the **same row**.

### ***Split Cell***

Split the selected cell into columns.

### ***Delete Column***

Select this option to delete the selected column.

### ***Delete Row***

Select this option to delete the selected row.

### ***Table Column Width***

Set the column width for the selected column.

### ***Table Row Height***

Set the row height for the selected row.

### ***Sort***

Sort text (Ascending/Descending) of a table column or row.

### **Table Properties**

#### **Border Size**

Enter how wide you want the border to be, in pixels.

#### **Cell Padding**

Enter how much space you want between the contents and inside edges of cells, in pixels.

#### **Cell Spacing**

Enter how much space you want between the cells in the table, in pixels.

#### **Background color**

Specifies the color of the form background. If set to 'Automatic' the webpage background will be used.

#### **Background image**

Specifies the optional background image.

#### **Border color**

Specifies the color of the table's borders. If set to 'Automatic' the table will have a 3d border.

#### **Hover rows color**

Enable a hover state on table rows.

#### **Striped row color**

Add zebra-stripping to the table rows.

#### **Header row**

This will output the first row as header cells (<th> instead of <td>).

#### **Size mode**

- **Pixels**, the size of table cells is in pixels. This will get the best 'pixel perfect' result. However, when using the table in responsive layouts, it cannot be resized in breakpoints.
- **Percentages**, the size of cells is in percentages. The cell sizes will be approximately based on the design time dimensions. Using this option makes it possible to resize the table in breakpoints. However, the cell sizes will still have the same percentages relative to the table size.
- **Automatic**, when using this mode, the table cells will be automatically sized based on their content. This makes it possible to use a table in layout grid layouts.

#### **Table Styles gallery**

The 'Table Styles' gallery (in the Ribbon). This allows you to quickly update the style of your tables. You may know this feature from MS Office. 30 predefined styles are currently available.

#### **Sort**

Sort text (Ascending/Descending) of a table column or row.

New in WWB12: If you sort a column then the other columns will be moved too. Also, the style of the cells will be included, not only the text, so cells keep their own styling.

#### **Import data from text file**

A quick way to get data from a comma separated text file into the table. Data should be separated with a comma.

#### **Table HTML**

View generated HTML of the table. You can also insert your own HTML code!

### ***Cell Properties***

#### **Background Color**

Specifies the color of the text background. If set to 'Automatic' the webpage background will be used.

#### **Background Image**

Specifies the optional background image.

#### **Repeat**

Sets the tiling attributes for the background image.

Possible options are:

- Repeat in both directions
- Repeat in horizontal direction
- Repeat in vertical direction
- Do not repeat

#### **Horizontal Align**

Sets the horizontal position for the background image.

#### **Vertical Align**

Sets the vertical position for the background image.

#### **Cell HTML**

View generated HTML of the selected cell. You can also insert your own HTML code!

### ***Table Tips:***

1. While resizing the table hold down the Ctrl-key to resize last column/row of a table with affecting the size of the other columns/rows.
2. To select multiple cells, hold down the Ctrl-key while selecting the cells.
3. To select the whole row, move the mouse cursor to the left border of the first cell.
4. To select the whole column, move the mouse cursor to the top border of the first cell.
5. To change the properties of multiple cells in one action, first select the cells and then click Cell Properties.
6. To center an image in the middle of a cell, open Cell Properties, specify the background image, set Repeat to 'Do not repeat' and set Horizontal/Vertical Align to 'Center'.
7. To change the font and size of multiple table cells: Select multiple cells -> hold down the SHIFT key and click cell properties.

### ***Using a Table as an object container***

Since version 12 is it now also possible to add other objects to table cells. When you drag an object inside a cell then it will automatically become an object container (just like a layer or layout grid). Any text that was in the table cell will no longer be visible (until you remove the object again).

Multiple objects can be inside a single cell and they will be floating, just like in a layout grid. Note however that tables are not meant to be used for layout purposes. The main reason why this functionality was added is to make it possible to add images to the table.

## Arrange

The arrange menu contains all operations related to the layout of the current page.

### **Align**

#### *Lefts*

Aligns the left edges of the selected objects with the dominant object.

#### *Centers*

Aligns the centers of the selected objects with the dominant object

#### *Rights*

Aligns the right edges of the selected objects with the dominant object

#### *Tops*

Aligns the top edges of the selected objects with the dominant object

#### *Middles*

Aligns the middles of the selected objects with the dominant object

#### *Bottoms*

Aligns the bottom edges of the selected objects with the dominant object

### **Space Evenly**

#### *Across*

Evenly spaces the selected controls horizontally

#### *Down*

Evenly spaces the selected controls vertically

### **Center in Page**

#### *Vertical / Horizontal*

Centers the controls vertically or horizontally within the web page

### **Make same size**

#### *Width*

Resizes the selected objects to have the same width as the dominant object

#### *Height*

Resizes the selected objects to have the same height as the dominant object

#### *Both*

Resizes the selected objects to have the same size as the dominant object

### **Arrange**

#### *Move to Front*

Move object to front of the page

#### *Move to Back*

Move object to back of the page

#### *Move Forward*

Move object to next position in z-order

#### *Move Back*

Move object to previous position in z-order

### **Group**

You can group multiple objects, so that they stick together when you move them. When you select one object of a group, the other objects will automatically be selected too. Grouped objects cannot be edited until you ungroup them.

### **Ungroup**

Ungroup objects.

### **Merging Objects**

By using this option, you can merge multiple objects into a single image! This can be useful for merging multiple (layered) shapes into a single image to reduce the number of published images and speed up loading times. This option will basically convert any object (or group of objects) into an image. So if this is used for objects like forms, buttons, menu then they will lose their original functionality, since they will be published as a static image.

#### **Tip:**

You can also use this option on a single object. This can be useful to convert an image or shape to another image format.

For example, let's say you have applied a shadow effect to an image. The output format of the image will then be PNG. Now select 'Merge' from the menu. The image will be converted to an 'merged object', you can now select another output format like **jpg** which will result in a smaller output image).

Q: But wait.... what will happen to the transparency of the shadow?

A: The merged object will make a 'snapshot' of the background objects and use that as background image!

### **Merge Objects**

Merge the currently select objects. In the properties of this object you can specify the output format of the image.

### **Split Objects**

This option will split previous merged objects.

### **Save as Block**

Save the selected object(s) as Block, so you can reuse them later in the same (or another) project. Blocks are 'building blocks' that make it possible to quickly create a website by dragging predefined blocks to the workspace. Blocks Once the block has been dragged to the page you can fully customize the behavior and appearance of the content.

### **Rotate**

This command will activate the rotate mode. You can rotate image and shape objects.

For more information see also: Rotation

### **Lock/Unlock**

This will 'lock' the selected objects, so that they cannot be moved or resized accidentally. Note that this will also prevent you from editing the objects properties unless you enable the option 'Allow locked objects to be edited' in the Tools->Options->Advanced configuration. To unlock the object again, repeat the same command.

### **Lock All**

This will lock all objects in the active page.

### **Unlock All**

This will unlock all objects in the active page.

## *Guide settings*

### **Snap to ruler guides**

Enable or disable snap to ruler guides

### **Show Table Cell Outlines (if border = 0)**

When this option is enabled, Web Builder will draw table cell outlines even if the border is zero.

### **Show Guide Borders**

Guide border can be useful when designing a web page for specific resolutions. If you make sure all objects stay between the guide border, the final page will fit in the desired window size.

### **Show smart guides when objects are aligned**

Smart guides are dynamic guidelines that appear when you move objects into alignment with each other.

### **Lock page size (no automatic page adjustment)**

Normally Web Builder will automatically update the page size if you place an object outside the page borders. When this option is enabled, the page width will be locked even if you place objects outside the border. If you want a larger workspace you will need to update the page width/height manually in that case (using Page Properties).

### **Show Grid**

Show or hide grid.

### **Snap to grid**

Enable or disable snap to grid. Use the Snap to Grid feature to align objects exactly. Web Builder creates a "magnetic" attraction between the selected object and the grid.

### **Grid Spacing**

Specifies the spacing between the grid dots.

### **Show Tooltips while resizing and moving objects and guides**

Enable this option if you want to see the current position (while moving) or size (while resizing) of the current object in a tool tip above the mouse cursor.

It also works while moving ruler guides!

#### **Note:**

This option may cause objects to render a little bit slower during moving/resizing because the tooltip needs to be updated constantly.

### **Edit Points**

This option can be used for Polygons and Curves to add, edit and remove nodes.

To start editing nodes, first select the Polygon or Curve and then select 'Edit Points' from the menu.

To edit existing nodes simply hold the left mouse button and drag it to its new position.

To add a new node, click anywhere on the line and drag the point to the desired position.

To remove a node, hold down the CTRL key and click the node with the left mouse button.



### **Ruler guides**

Horizontal and vertical ruler guides are used to align objects on the page.

Typically, ruler guides are placed on the page by dragging them from the horizontal and vertical rulers or by specifying precise positions using the 'Format Ruler Guides' dialog box.

Alternatively, you can use the menu option 'Add Horizontal Ruler Guide' or 'Add Vertical Ruler Guide' to insert a new guide.

To move the ruler guide, position the mouse pointer over the guide, until you see the vertical or horizontal Adjust pointer and then drag the guide to its new position.

You can remove a single ruler guide or all ruler guides from a page. Position the mouse pointer over the ruler guide you want to delete until you see the adjust pointer and then drag it back to the ruler. Or you can use the 'Format ruler guide' dialog box to delete the ruler.

To remove all ruler guides in a page, select the Arrange menu, point to Ruler Guides, and then click Clear All Ruler Guides.

Objects which are placed close to a guide "snap to" the guide for easy alignment.

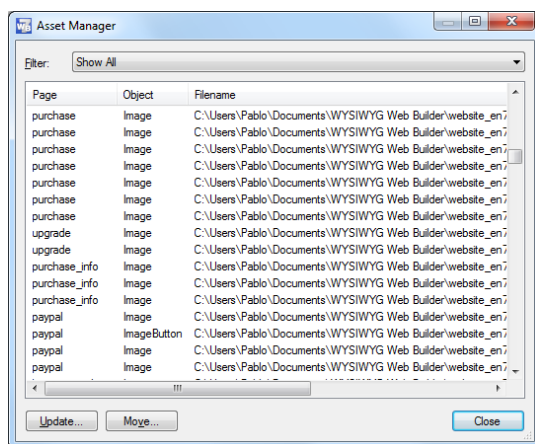
## Tools

### Asset Manager

The Asset Manager can be useful to modify the location of one or more assets (images, movies, sounds etc.) without the need to open the properties of each item. You can select which group of items will be displayed in the Asset Manager (Filter).

To change the location of only 1 asset, simply select the item, click the 'Update' button and select the new location. To change the location of multiple assets, select the items, click the 'Update' button and select the new location. This means that you can update the location of all assets with just a few clicks!

It is also possible to move assets to another location. In that case a copy of the assets will be made to the specified location and update the path in the editor. Note that the original file will not be deleted!



Another cool feature of the Asset Manager is the ability to show all orphan files in the project folder. Select Filter->**Orphan files** to display a list of all the assets no longer used by the current project. Now you can select and remove those files from the project folder.

### Backup Manager

Each time you save your project the software will automatically create a backup of the previous version of the project. The backup behavior can be configured in Tools->Options->Backup

The Backup Manager can be used to easily restore and delete automatically created backups. The Backup Manager will display the time and date of the backup and the filename. The backed up files will have file names like: myproject\_01.wbs, myproject\_02.wbs, myproject\_03.wbs. The highest numbered file will always be the latest backup.

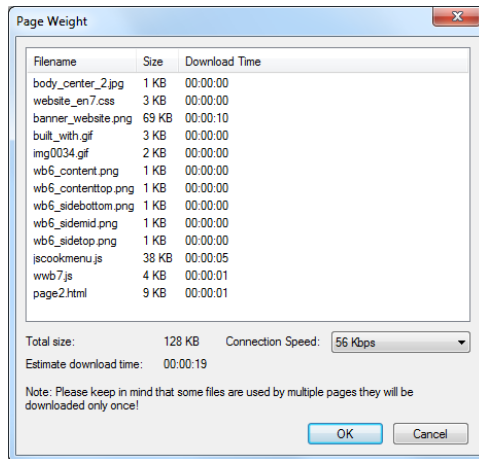
To restore a backup, select the filename and click 'Restore'. The file will then be moved back to the project folder and renamed to its original name.

#### Notes:

- The Backup Manager will override the current version of the project!
- A backup cannot be restored if the project is current in use. So close the project before using the Backup Manager.

### Page Weight

The Page weight tool helps you determine the estimated size and download time of a page. The tool will list all files which are part of page and their sizes. By selecting the connection speed, you can get an idea how long it will take to download the complete page. Note that some files (like scripts, images) are used by multiple pages. They will be downloaded only once!



### Verify Links

This option scans your documents for links and displays them in a list. You can choose to edit them or press the **Verify** button to validate their current state.

Possible states:

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Not verified  | - not verified yet                              |
| Validated URL | - URL is valid                                  |
| URL not found | - URL is not valid (or currently not reachable) |

This tool can be handy when you want to verify all your links so you don't have to verify them one by one.

## **Site Map**

The sitemap tool creates an XML sitemap that can be submitted to Google and other search engines to help them crawl your website better.

A Sitemap is an XML file that lists the URLs for a site. It allows webmasters to include additional information about each URL: when it was last updated, how often it changes, and how important it is in relation to other URLs in the site. This allows search engines to crawl the site more intelligently.

It's important that you specify the full URL to your website, for example  
`http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/`

This URL must begin with the protocol (such as http) and end with a trailing slash. You can specify the change frequency and priority for each page in your website.

### **Change frequency**

How frequently the page is likely to change. This value provides general information to search engines and may not correlate exactly to how often they crawl the page.

Valid values are: always, hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, never

The value "always" should be used to describe documents that change each time they are accessed. The value "never" should be used to describe archived URLs.

Please note that the value of this tag is considered a hint and not a command. Even though search engine crawlers consider this information when making decisions, they may crawl pages marked "hourly" less frequently than that, and they may crawl pages marked "yearly" more frequently than that. It is also likely that crawlers will periodically crawl pages marked "never" so that they can handle unexpected changes to those pages.

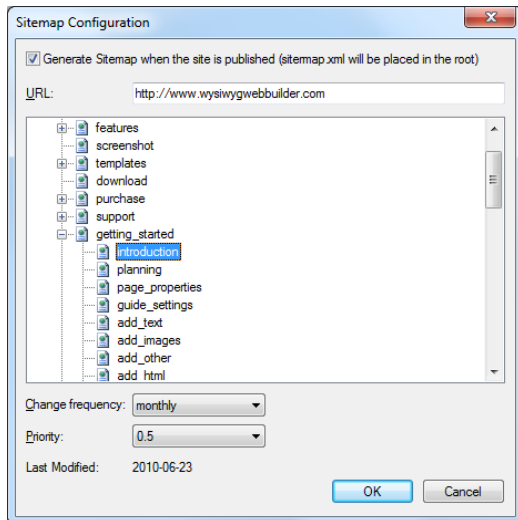
### **Priority**

The priority of this page relative to other pages on your site. Valid values range from 0.0 to 1.0. This value has no effect on your pages compared to pages on other sites, and only lets the search engines know which of your pages you deem most important so they can order the crawl of your pages in the way you would most like.

The default priority of a page is 0.5.

Please note that the priority you assign to a page has no influence on the position of your pages in a search engine's result pages. Search engines use this information when selecting between pages on the same site, so you can use this tag to increase the likelihood that your more important pages are present in a search index.

Also, note that assigning a high priority to all of the pages on your site will not help you. Since the priority is relative, it is only used to select between pages on your site; the priority of your pages will not be compared to the priority of pages on other sites.



The final step is to tell Google where it can find your sitemap.

<https://www.google.com/webmasters/tools/docs/en/sitemap-generator.html#submitting>

The location of the sitemap will be something like:

<http://www.yourwebsiteurl.com/sitemap.xml>

### **Customize**

This command will display the Customize window.

This option is for advanced users only and allow you to customize almost every menu, toolbar or keyboard shortcut of the application.

Users who are familiar with Microsoft Office products, will probably recognize most of the available settings.

## Options

This command displays the configuration window of WYSIWYG Web Builder.

### General Options

#### Create blank document at startup

Enable this option to create a new empty project when the application starts up.

#### Application window maximized at startup.

Enable this option to maximize the application window at startup.

#### Open the most recent used file at startup

Specifies whether to open the most recent used project at startup

#### Open the most recent used page of the project

This will open the page that was active when you last saved the project.

#### Show splash screen

Enable this option to display the splash screen/copyrights image at startup.

#### Allow locked objects to be edited.

Locked objects cannot be moved or resized, but you can still edit their properties.

#### Check for updates online at startup.

This option will connect to the Web Builder website to check if there is a new version of the software available.

You can also check for updates in the Help menu: Menu->Help->Check for updates online.

#### Show page extensions in Site Manager.

Enable this option to display the extension of the page (html, php, asp etc.) in the Site Manager.

#### Note:

You must restart the application before the page extensions will be displayed.

#### Automatically check for duplicated IDs when page is loaded.

Enable this option to automatically check for duplicated IDs when page is loaded, published or previewed. If the software finds duplicated IDs then it will show a message with a link to Error Reports.

#### Use ctrl+click+drag to duplicate objects

Enable/disable ctrl+click+drag (duplicate objects) functionality.

#### Text Box

Initial Text: Specifies the initial text of a text object. Default: Double click to edit

#### Do not show initial text, but directly go into edit mode when created.

If you enable this option then the initial text (Double click to edit) will not be displayed. You can directly start typing text into the box.

## **Responsive Web Design**

### **Keep inline styles with Responsive Web Design**

This option applies to Responsive Web Design only. This is an advanced option. Do not change this option if everything works correctly!

When using Responsive Design Design/breakpoints, the software will move all inline styles of objects to the <style> section in the header of the page. This makes it possible to use CSS3 media queries to control the position, size and visibility of objects for different breakpoints.

However, in some cases this may affect the behavior of an object or extension. If you enable this option then the software will not touch inline styles, but add !important to overwrite the position, size and visibility of objects with media queries.

### **Use 'Include visibility' as default for new objects in Responsive Web Design.**

This option sets the default value for 'Include visibility' in Responsive Web Design .

A description of the 'Include visibility' option is available [here](#).

### **Automatically scale new objects in other breakpoints**

Normally when you insert a new object, it will be inserted at the same position and with the same size as the default view (for fixed/absolute layouts).

When this option is enabled, new objects will automatically scale and reposition in other breakpoints relative to the breakpoint size. It will also scale the font size of some objects when possible.

#### **Notes:**

*This option was mainly designed for fixed/absolute layouts. When you use layout grids or flex box the layout is flexible based on width of the browser window.*

*Also, if you do not want the text to scale automatically, you can disable this option.*

*The font-size of the Text object can only be scaled when 'Enable responsive fonts' is enabled.*

### **Hide new objects on other breakpoints (Responsive Web Design)**

When this option is enabled then new objects will be set invisible in other breakpoints. This is usually the best option because new objects generally do not have the same position of different breakpoints. You can use the Object Manager to make the object visible in other breakpoints.

### **Unsplash Access Key**

By default, Unsplash requests will be made via the WYSIWYG Web Builder's Unsplash account. The number of requests per hour is limited to 250 for each user.

If need more than 250 requests then you can specify a (private) Access Key, so the application will use own your Unsplash account instead. In that case, all requests will go directly to the Unsplash website instead of via WYSIWYG Web Builder's proxy.

To get an Access Key, you will need to create a developer account on the Unsplash website:

<https://unsplash.com/oauth/applications>

#### **Disclaimer:**

*WYSIWYG Web Web Builder uses the standard Unsplash API to get the information about the images from the Unsplash website. Like most third party APIs, the Unsplash API is regularly updated. This means that in the future this functionality may suddenly stop working. Of course we will do our best to make sure the software is always up-to-date, so if Unsplash no longer works then please check the website for an update.*

## HTML Options

### Generate external CSS style sheets for page specific styles.

Enable this option to generate a separate CSS file with the styles used by a page. The name of the file will be the same as the page name. So 'index.html' will generate a 'index.css' file.

Inline styles will not be part of the style sheet! So, for the best results your objects should make use of styles created in the Style Manager.

### Generate single CSS style sheet for global styles.

Enable this option to generate a single CSS file with all styles created in the Site Manager. All pages will refer to this file.

The global style sheet will not contain page specific styles (like menu bar styles).

### Optimize inline styles (experimental)

This is an option which attempts to clean up the HTML code by moving inline styles to the page's style sheet.

#### Note:

This option will process all HTML elements on the page, however not all (third party) extensions may support this behavior. So please test all functionality of your website before using this!

### Web Fonts (@font-face)

- **Do not use @font-face (default)**  
No code will be generated to support non-web safe fonts.
- **Automatically use @font-face for non-websafe fonts.**  
If you enable this option you will be able to use any type of true type font even if it's not web safe by using a new CSS3 feature called @font-face. WYSIWYG Web Builder will automatically generate the necessary code and upload the font to the server. It will even generate a secondary (eot) font file required to make this feature work with IE!
- **Manually specify @font-face fonts.**  
In some cases it's necessary to manually configure @font-face. For example, if it's not possible; to automatically determine the filename associated with a specific font or if you want to use separate files for each format. Enabling this option allows advanced users to manually link font files to a specific font.

#### Notes about @font-face:

- Be aware that font files can be pretty large, so they can add a considerable weight to the page.
- Make sure you check the license of the font you wish to use, as most fonts are not licensed to allow this kind of use. Making the font available on your server violates most end user licensing agreements.
- Unfortunately Internet Explorer requires a different font type (EOT instead of TTF), so the software will automatically generate the EOT version of the font. This means that you will end up with two versions of each font!!



- **Use Google Fonts for non-web-safe fonts**

Enable this option if you plan to use Google Fonts in your project. If this option is enabled then the software will assume that all non-web safe fonts you are using are Google Web Fonts and it will automatically generate a link to the font in the HTML code, so you do not have to do that manually. Note however that to use Google Fonts during design time you must have it installed on your computer!

Here's how you can install a Google Font on your computer:

1) Visit the Google Fonts website: <http://www.google.com/fonts/>

2) Find the font you want to use and add it to a collection (Click 'Add to collection'). Take note of the font name, you will need it in step 6.

3) To be able to use the font on your computer you will have to download and install it so it will be available in WYSIWYG Web Builder (and other Windows software).

Click the "Download your Collection" link at the top of the Google Fonts website and you'll get a zip file containing all the requested font(s) in TTF format.

4) Unzip the collection and drag the TTF files to your Windows fonts folder. (In Windows 8: Control Panel\Appearance and Personalization\Fonts). The font(s) will now be available to all your Windows applications.

5) To see the font in WYSIWYG Web Builder, make sure the option 'Display web safe fonts only' is disabled: Menu->Tools->Options->Miscellaneous

Note: Some Google fonts require additional parameters. You can add those parameters by clicking the 'Manage' button. Next click 'Add' and select the font family. In the Parameters field specify the parameters.

Example:

**&subset=latin,cyrillic-ext**

or

**:400,700,900&subset=latin,cyrillic**

**Use CSS3 gradients instead of images (when possible).**

Enable this option to generate CSS styles for background gradients instead of images. This reduces the number of images generated for the page. Keep in mind however that not all browsers (especially Internet Explorer!) do support CSS3 gradient yet. Also note that not all gradients styles are yet supported, for in some cases images still will be used.

**Publish navigation icons as SVG image.**

This will output the icons as embedded SVG (scalable vector image) instead as font and reduces the overall size of the website if you only use a few icons.

This option applies to icons used in: Breadcrumbs, Cards, Mega Menu, Overlay Menu, Panel Menu, Responsive Menu, Tabs, Themeable Menu and Toasts.

**Include page name in automatically generated ID attributes.**

This option will add the page name to automatically generated ID when a new object is added to the page. So for example 'Image1' it will become 'indexImage1'. Where 'index' is the name of the page. This can be useful when you use lots of master pages in which case it will prevent duplicated ID attributes within a page.

**Note:** This option does not change your existing ID's only for newly created objects!

**Enable HTML encoding (based on the selected character set).**

This will save the document encoded with the selected codepage. This is a new feature in version 7.5 in an attempt to generate (even) better W3C compliant HTML documents. This option should be enabled unless you are experiencing problems with character display in browsers.

**Enable URL encoding to prevent web unsafe file names.**

Specifies whether to use URL encoding for file names. In general, you should not use white spaces or other non-alphanumeric characters in file names, because it may confuse web servers and browsers (especially in combination with JavaScript). If you enable this option then the software will encode file names to prevent possible problems with invalid file names. Of course, it's still better to make sure your filenames are valid before adding them to your website.

**Use shared folder for assets (pages in folders will not have their own asset folder)**

Enabling this option will share the asset target folder(s) for the entire website (including pages in sub folders!). This means that sub folders in the Site Manager no longer use a separate asset folder.

Note that you can set the target folder for specific file types in Publish & Preview. If this option is disabled then each folder you create in the Site Manager will have its own asset folder.

**Generate external JS file for page specific scripts.**

Enable this option to generate a separate JS file with the script used by a page. The name of the file will be the same as the page name. So 'index.html' will generate a 'index.js' file.

**Move JavaScript to the end of the page**

This will place all scripts at the end of the page and may result in better performance because the JavaScript will be executed after the rest of the page has been loaded. This is also known as "Unobtrusive JavaScript".

**Load built-in JavaScript files asynchronously**

Specifies that built-in scripts will be executed asynchronously as soon as they are available.

Note that this is only useful when 'Generate external JS file for page specific scripts' is enabled, because otherwise local scripts may be executed before the external scripts they depend on have been loaded!

More information:

[https://www.w3schools.com/tags/att\\_script\\_async.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/tags/att_script_async.asp)

### Formatting

- **Default**  
The HTML will be published "AS IS". No formatting will be applied.
- **Beautify**  
Formats the HTML code so it looks better and is easier to read. If you select this option then the size of the page will slightly increase because of the extra white spaces added to the page. But in general, this does not affect the performance in the browser
- **Minify**  
This option reduces the size of the generated HTML and may improve the performance of the page. However, the HTML becomes more difficult to read.

#### Notes:

- Formatting will affect all HTML on the page. Including custom code and code generated by extensions!
- PHP and JavaScript will not be formatted.

### *Files & Folders Options*

In the **System Folder** option you can configure where the software will store all user specific data, like extensions, templates, publish settings, gradients etc.

**Important:**

If you change the System Folder folder then this will also change the location where WYSIWYG Web Builder looks for extensions, templates, publish setting etc. So if you change the folder then make sure your also move all files to the new folder!

If you enable **Let WYSIWYG Web Builder manage images and other files used by a project**, then Web Builder will make a backup copy of all assets (images, movies, sounds) which are part of your website to a folder relative to the project file, so all files will be stored in one place. The name of the folder will be the same as the project name. This means that if your project is called 'mywebsite', then all assets will be stored in the sub folder 'mywebsite'. Copying or moving your project to another computer is now as easy as copying the project file and its sub folder to another PC!

In the **Preview Folder** field you can change the default folder which is used for the preview files. This can be useful if you want the files to be copied to a folder of your local web server in case you generate PHP or ASP pages.

If the option **Remove preview files** is enabled, Web Builder will remove all previously generated files the next time you select the preview option. This prevents that old files will be left behind and only new files exists in the preview folder.

**Warning:** This will remove all files from the specified folder! (not only the files that where previously generated by Web Builder).

### *Publish & Preview Options*

**Connection Timeout**, increase this value if you experience timeouts while connecting to the FTP server. Default is 30 seconds.

**Enable Logging**, enable logging when you have problems while publishing your web site. The log might contain useful information about the problem.

**Images name prefix.** Some objects such as shapes, navigation bar buttons will be published as (dynamically generated) images. These images do have an unique name within the website (e.g. img0001.gif, img0002.gif). With this option you can control how the images will be named. For example if you specify wbimage as prefix, the images will be named 'wbimage0001.gif' or 'wbimage0002.png' It is also possible to make the name of the page part of the filename by enabling the option **Use page name for image prefix**, this makes it easier to keep track of which images belong to a specific page

#### **Target folder for File Types**

WYSIWYG Web Builder can publish the images, scripts, swf, pdf, css and other files it generates to a separate folder on the web server. This will keep your web site organized.

If the web server does not support sub folders, then remove all file type from the list. In that case all files will be published to the same folder as the HTML files.

**Note:** The folders are relative to the folder of the HTML page. So, if you have created folders in the Site Manager then each folder will have its own sub folders for the files!

**Preview Scope**, this option specifies the preview scope of Web Builder. Select **Current Page** to only preview one page or **Entire Web Site** if you want to test your complete web site.

**Tip:**

Holding down the SHIFT key while previewing will 'invert' the current preview scope. This means that if 'Current Page' is selected then holding de SHIFT key will preview the Entire Website'.

### Remove PHP code during preview

Many of the advanced features of WYSIWYG Web Builder use PHP code. As you may know, browsers cannot interpret PHP code and usually will display errors or nothing at all! Previewing the layout of such a webpage on a server is not always convenient, so that's why we introduced this option. If this option is enabled then all PHP code will be removed during preview, so you can view the layout. Of course, you will still be to publish the page to a PHP enabled web server to fully test the (dynamic) behavior of the page.

#### Note:

During preview the software will rename the page's file extension from .php to .html. This means that if other pages link to this page then the browser will not find the page since it has a different extension.

### Hide file extension for internal links (for advanced users only!)

Remove the extension from internal links. Instead of 'page1.html', the application will use 'page1' in navigation objects and links.

Note that the generated files will still have extensions otherwise they will not be recognized as HTML/PHP files on the server! You will need to configure the server to hide the extensions on the server via .htaccess.

For example:

#### PHP EXTENTION REMOVAL

```
RewriteEngine On
RewriteCond %{REQUEST_FILENAME} !-f
RewriteRule ^([^\.]*)$ $1.php [NC,L]
```

#### HTML EXTENTION REMOVAL

```
RewriteEngine On
RewriteCond %{REQUEST_FILENAME} !-f
RewriteRule ^([^\.]*)$ $1.html [NC,L]
```

### *Miscellaneous Options*

**Language:** Use this option to specify the language used for the user interface. Default is English. Before a certain language is available from the dropdown list, you need to install the appropriate language module. Visit the website of WYSIWYG Web Builder to check for the available languages.

#### **User Interface**

Specifies whether to use the classic menu and toolbars or the Ribbon interface.

**Docking algorithm for resizable bars:** Default or Visual Studio 2005 style. When Visual Studio 2005 style is selected, so called Dock Markers are displayed when you reposition windows like the Site Manager or Toolbox.

#### **Display web safe fonts only**

You can enable this option so WYSIWYG Web Builder will only display web safe fonts.

#### **Display rotate handle for rotatable objects**

Specifies whether to display rotate handles in the workspace to provide quicker way to rotate objects.

#### **Use theme colors**

By default, WYSIWYG Web Builder's color picker displays a standard color palette with 140 standard web colors. With the 'Theme color' option (inspired by the MS Office color picker) you can configure a custom color palette of 12 colors. The light and dark variants of these colors will be generated automatically.

Besides the ability to customize the colors, it is also possible to synchronize the colors when they are modified or when you select a different color theme.

The following options are available:

- **no**  
use the default color palette.
- **yes - do not synchronize**  
use custom colors, but do not replace the colors in pages when the theme is modified.
- **yes - synchronize all colors**  
use custom colors, replace the colors in pages when the theme is modified or when a different theme is selected. Basically, this will do a global replace of the matching colors in all pages. The colors from the previous selected theme will be replaced with the colors from the selected theme.
- **yes - synchronize categories**  
use custom colors, replace the colors in pages when the theme is modified or when a different theme is selected. Do a global replace of the matching colors in all pages based on their categories. For example, text colors will only be updated for text, but if the background uses that same color then it will not be updated. This works the same as in this 'Global Replace' tool.

Online tutorial:

[https://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/color\\_themes.html](https://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/color_themes.html)

#### **Enable live HTML rendering of extensions.**

Some extensions use 'live HTML rendering' which means they create a live preview of the generated HTML code for the extension. And although this may be useful to get an idea what the final page will look like, it also can use lots of system resources (memory /processor time), especially when you are using many extensions in the same project. Disabling this option can reduce the memory usage and loading time of projects. It will have no effect on the generated output.

### Tab 'Close' button

Specifies the appearance and behavior of the close button on the page tabs.

- **None**  
No close button on the tabs.
- **Active Tab**  
Close button is displayed on the active tab only.
- **Highlighted Tab (Compact)**  
Close button is displayed on the active and highlighted tabs. The space for the close button on non-active tab is not reserved.
- **Highlighted Tab**  
Close button is displayed on the active and highlighted tabs.
- **All**  
Closed button is displayed on all tabs.

**Backup folder:** WYSIWYG Web Builder can automatically make backups of your projects, before overwriting a previous version of the project.

Backup folder specifies the folder where the backup will be stored.

**Total number of site backups.** Specifies the number of backup to keep before overwriting them with newer versions. Enter 0 if you do not want Web Builder to create backups.

Web Builder will name the backups like this:

myproject\_01.wbs, myproject\_02.wbs, myproject\_03.wbs

The highest numbered file will always be the latest backup. If the maximum number of backups is reached, the oldest backup will be deleted and all other backups will be renamed.

### Auto backup

Enable this option to automatically make backup copy of your project every 5, 15, or 30 minutes. This may help you restore your work if your computer crashes unexpectedly.

The name of the backup will be myproject\_autobackup.wbs and it will be stored in the backup folder.

### Make a backup of the project on the server.

Enable this option to automatically make a backup of the project on the server. This may be useful if your computer crashes or your local projects become corrupted. In that case you will always have a backup copy on the server.

### AutoSave

This automatically saves the active project at the specified interval.

Note that for this does not work for new 'untitled' projects, because the project must have a filename before it can be saved.

### Enable debug logging (use for test purposes only!)

If you enable this option then extensions will create a log file with information that can be useful for debugging. This may help you or the developer of the extension to trace/solve problems.

The log file will be created in the extensions folder and it has the same name as the extension (extensionname.log).

The following information will be logged:

- Loading/uploading with version number.
- Properties, variables and values
- Dataset XML transformation (user input applied to XSL template)
- Gallery XML transformation
- Menu XML transformation
- Copying files to publish folder.

### **Extension Manager**

Extensions (also called add-ons or plugins) are components which enhance the functionality of WYSIWYG Web Builder. Extensions can be accessed through the Toolbox or via the Insert menu just like the standard objects.

There is already a long list of official extensions and in the future, we plan to release many more to make WYSIWYG Web Builder even more powerful than it already is. Some extensions are simply components with few parameters while other are almost complete applications by themselves! See also: <http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/extensions.html>

You can even create your own extensions with the Extension Builder tool:  
[http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/extension\\_builder.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/extension_builder.html)

Many users have already made some incredible custom extensions. Check out the full list here:  
<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forum/viewforum.php?f=42>

The Extension Manager helps you organize extensions. In the Extension Manager you can install/remove and update extensions. You can also search for extensions in the online gallery. The **Installed Extensions** page displays all extensions which are currently installed. If you do no longer need a specific extension you can remove it by clicking the 'Uninstall' button.

#### **Note:**

Please make sure that none of your projects uses the extension if you decide to remove a specific extension, otherwise you will no longer be able to load that project until you re-install the extension.

The Online Gallery page displays all extensions available for download and installation. If a new version of an extension that you already have is available online, then you have the choice to update it. Each time you open this window, Web Builder will ask if you wish to download the most recent list from the website. Normally you will have to do this only once a week.

#### **Notes:**

The built-in Extension Manager only works correctly if the software can access our web server! If for some reason your firewall or virus scanner blocks access the Internet connection then you will not be able to use this feature. To fix this problem make sure WYSIWYG Web Builder is on the exception list of your firewall/virus scanner!

If you've recently purchased your license, it's possible that your registration information is not yet in the online database. IT MAY TAKE SEVERAL HOURS BEFORE YOU CAN DOWNLOAD THE EXTENSIONS! Please be patience.

See also: <http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/restricted.html>

The Manual Install page allows you to manually install extensions. Click the 'Install' button to select an extension file (\*.wbx) or zip file. You can also drag & drop one or more extensions from Windows Explorer on this window! You can also manually install extensions by copying the .wbx file to the extensions folder: C:\Users\Your Name\Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\extensions Where 'Your Name' is the name of your personal folder on the computer.

Related FAQ topic:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forum/viewtopic.php?t=7234>

#### **Disclaimer:**

Extensions are made available as an extra service for registered users. They are not an official part of the software. Pablo Software Solutions will not offer support for third party extensions and is in no way responsible for proper functioning of these extensions. All extensions are provided "AS IS" for those who find them useful. Of course we will do our best to make sure they work properly.



### Search Index

WYSIWYG Web Builder has basic built-in 'search engine' functionality, so visitors can search for specific words within your website.

To make this feature available non-advanced users we decided to use JavaScript as it does not require you to setup database and indexing service on the server. The downside is that it can be slower for larger websites (> 100 pages).

#### Generate Search Index

Enable this option to create the search index during publishing.

#### Note:

The search index is required if you want to use the 'Site Search' object on your website!

#### Name of Index File

Specifies the name of the search index file. Since this is a JavaScript file, it must have the .js extensions.

#### Create Index from

This option specifies how the search index will be created.

- **Page Content**  
The search index will be created from the content of the page. In this case WYSIWYG Web Builder will extract all text from the pages.
- **Meta tags**  
The search index will be created from the meta tags you've specified content in Page Properties.
- **Text Only**  
This will only index the text which result in a smaller/faster search index. In most cases this mode will be sufficient enough. Note that will also decrease the time required to create the search index during publishing.

#### Exclude Stop Words from Index

Enable this option to exclude stop words.

WYSIWYG Web Builder includes a predefined list of stop words in the file 'search.dat'.

To make your own list of 'exclude' words simply copy the file to 'My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\search.dat and Web Builder will use this file instead.

#### Note:

Stop Words are words which do not contain important significance to be used in Search Queries. Usually these words are filtered out from search queries because they return vast amount of unnecessary information.

#### Use absolute links

Enable this option if you want to use the search engine in sub folders. In that case absolute links must be used otherwise the links in the search results will not be using the correct path (because there is only one search index in the root of the website).

Example:

<http://www.yourwebsite.com>

## Error Report

The Error Report tools will analyze the current page and check for errors like duplicated IDs, invalid filenames or other common problems. Here's a list of possible problems which are currently detected by error report tool:

### Invalid filename

Names must contain only ASCII letters (a-z,A-Z), digits (0-9), underscore, dot and dash.

### Empty ID

Make sure all objects have a valid ID.

### Duplicate ID

All objects must have a unique ID property within the context of the page. This includes the objects on master pages!

### Invalid HTML

Custom HTML may not contain <html> <<head> or <body> tags.

### Invalid page extension

The page contains a form which requires PHP. Set the page file extension to 'php' (in Page properties)

### Success page not specified

The success page property of the form cannot be empty.

### Error page not specified

The error page property of the form cannot be empty.

### Invalid page title

The page does not have a meaningful title. The page title is either empty or has the default 'untitled page' value.

### Invalid page name

The 'index' page should not have uppercase characters in its name. 'Index' or 'INDEX' is invalid.

### Form is using 'mailto:'

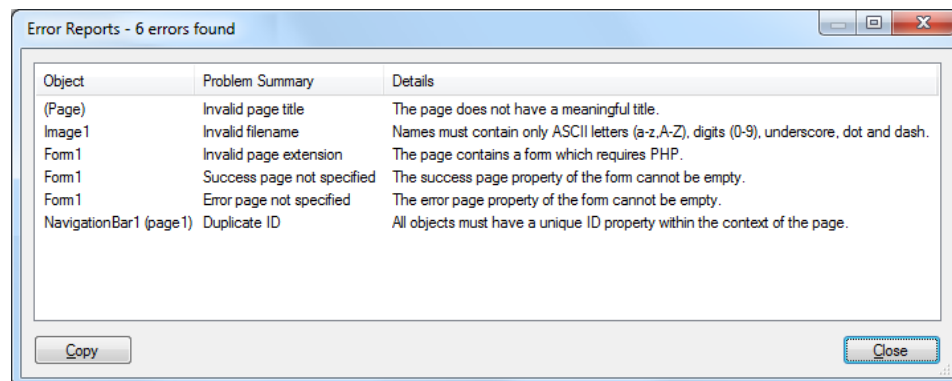
Using 'mailto:' in forms is unreliable. Please consider using the built-in form processor instead.

### Text is not optimized

The text is not optimized for all browsers. Consider using one of the compatibility options.

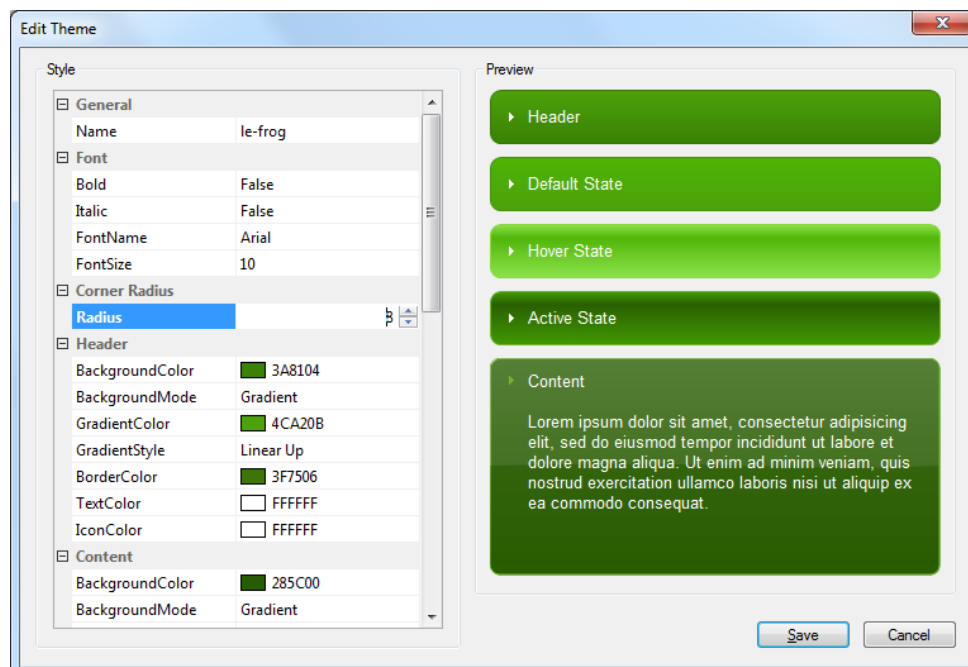
### Object is outside the view port

The object's outline is outside the page boundaries. If the object is hidden then first unhide it, move it inside the page boundaries and hide it again.



## Theme Manager

The Theme Manager provides an alternative way to create jQuery UI themes which are used by objects like jQuery Accordion, jQuery Tabs and many other jQuery-based widgets. Normally you would create these themes via <http://jqueryui.com/themeroller/>, but you can create awesome themes directly from within WYSIWYG Web Builder! The Theme manager uses the powerful 'shape engine' of WYSIWYG Web Builder to produce high quality themes.



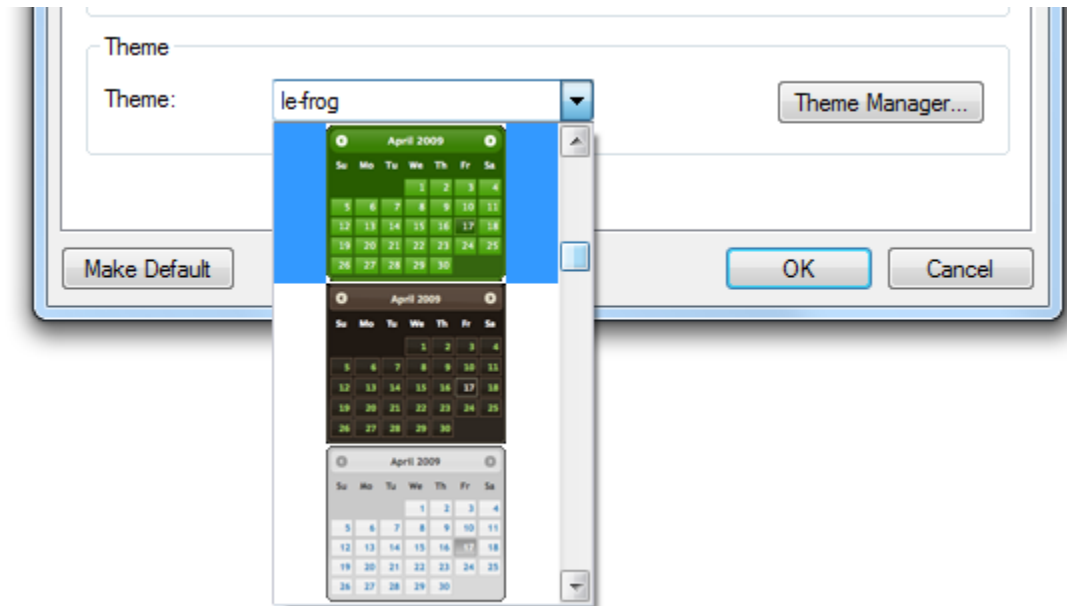
To create a new theme click the 'Add' button. Now you can specify styles for each state of the jQuery widgets. There is the default state, the hover and activate states, and the content area. The content area may be the panel of a set of tabs or an accordion. You can also set the global font-family, font-style and the font-size. The corner radius specifies the roundness of the borders. In the right panel you can preview the result of the specified styles.

When you are done designing your theme click 'Save'. The Theme Manager will now generate the CSS files and associated images. The files will be copied to the My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\themeroller folder. If the theme already exists you will be asked to overwrite the current theme.

Note that if you save a theme with the same name as a standard theme then (like 'cupertino' or 'smoothness') then the custom theme will be used by the software, although the original theme will not be overwritten or removed (because it's in another folder). This means that if you delete the custom theme, then the original version will still exist. Original themes are located in C:\Program Files\WYSIWYG Web Builder 15\themeroller\

You can also create a new theme based on an existing theme by using the 'Copy' button. It's even possible to import CSS themes generated by the theme roller website. Although this will only import the color scheme of course, because it's not possible to extract style data from images...

In Page Properties you can select the theme for a page (which then will be applied to all objects on that page). And although the Theme Manager was designed to create themes for jQuery UI widgets, other objects also support the themes! For example, you can select 'Use page theme' in the menu bar, navigation bar, tab menu and many other objects.



Of course you can also still use theme create on the ThemeRoller website:

<http://jqueryui.com/themeroller/>. New themes must be installed in the 'themeroller' folder of WYSIWYG Web Builder: My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\themeroller\

### Mobile Theme Manager

Mobile Theme Manager introduces an easy way to create themes which are used to style jQuery Mobile Objects like buttons, menus, headers, footers etc.

A jQuery Mobile theme is a set of color swatches defining: text colors, background color and gradients and font. You can define up to 26 color swatches, from A to Z. It supports many CSS3 properties, such as rounded corners, shadows, and gradients.

To create a new theme, click the 'Add' button. Now you can specify color for each part of the jQuery Mobile widgets. You can also set the global font-family, border radius and shadows.

In the right panel you can preview the result of the specified styles. To modify the colors of another swatches, select the swatch letter (A-Z) in the property list.

When you are done designing your theme click 'Save'. The CSS files and associated images will be generated when you publish the website which uses the theme.

The theme definitions are saved in the file: C:\Users\Username\Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\mobilethemes.dat

In WYSIWYG Web Builder you can select the theme for a (mobile) page in the Page Properties.

## Global Replace

The Global Replace tool can be used to quickly change the color, font, URL or filename for all objects (or a selection) on the page or entire website.

### Pages

Specifies whether to replace values on the current page only or on the entire website.

### Objects

Specifies the object categories the find/replace will apply to.

For example: only replace a color value for form elements.

### Property

Specifies what to replace:

- **Color**  
Replace a color value with another value.
- **File**  
Replace a filename. The tool will automatically list all filenames currently in use.
- **Font Name**  
Replace the font name. The tool will automatically list all fonts currently in use.
- **Font Size**  
Replace the font size.
- **URL**  
Replace an URL. The tool will automatically list all URLs currently in use. Also supports tel, email, facetime, sms and skype links!
- **(ID)**  
Rename the ID of objects.
- **Internal Link**  
Replace internal links

Tip: to add a prefix to all IDs of a page, set the old value to \* (wildcard) and the new value to the prefix. This can be useful to quickly add a prefix to the IDs of master pages/master frames.  
See also: *How to prevent duplicate IDs*

Note that this action cannot be undone!

Global Replace cannot replace data in extensions.

### Google Fonts

Adding Google Fonts to your website has never been easier. Google Fonts no longer have to be manually downloaded/installed from the Google website, The Google Font Manager takes care of this!

Fonts that are installed via the Font Manager will be added to the 'web safe fonts list and the necessary CSS code will be generated automatically when you preview or publish the website.

Font can have different variants, like light, medium, bold, regular etc. The available variants can be enabled per font.

**Note:**

To be able to preview or use fonts they need to be downloaded to your computer. When you select a font for preview, it will be downloaded from the Google Servers to a local folder `\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\downloads`.

The application includes a file `googlefonts.json` which contains the name and (server) location of all Google Fonts that were available at the time this version of WWB was released. If you are an advanced user then you can edit this file to add or remove fonts (at your own risk!).

If you install the font then it will be copied to the `\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\fonts` folder, also an entry will be made in the `googlefonts.dat` file with information about the font (filename, font family, subsets, etc.) By keeping the fonts in a sub folder, it will be easier to copy/move your entire WWB configuration to another computer or make complete backups.

Fonts that you install via the Font Manager will only be available to WYSIWYG Web Builder. If you wish to make them available for other applications then you will need to manually install the fonts from the Google Fonts Website.

Clicking in the font dialog will display a context menu:

Open file location, is a shortcut to the font download folder. This may be useful, for example, to install a font on your computer.

Clear font cache will delete all downloaded fonts from the cache folder. This will not delete installed fonts!

## WYSIWYG Web Builder Objects

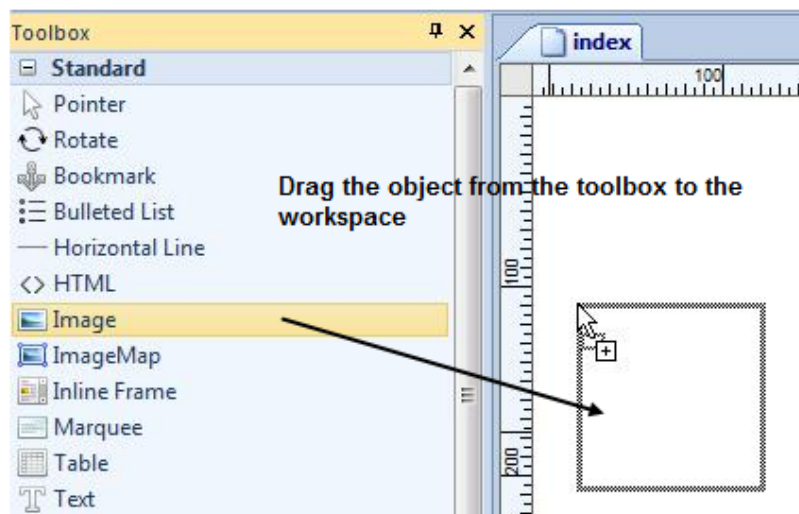
In WYSIWYG Web Builder you create your website by dropping objects on the page. Most of these objects represent a standard HTML element. There are 2 ways to insert object to your page:

1. By using the Insert Tab.
2. By using the Toolbox

To insert a new object, select one of the available items and draw a box to indicate the position of the object. The new object will now be inserted to the page. To change the properties, double the object or select Edit->Properties from the menu bar. It's also possible to call the object's properties using the keyboard shortcut 'Alt+Enter'.

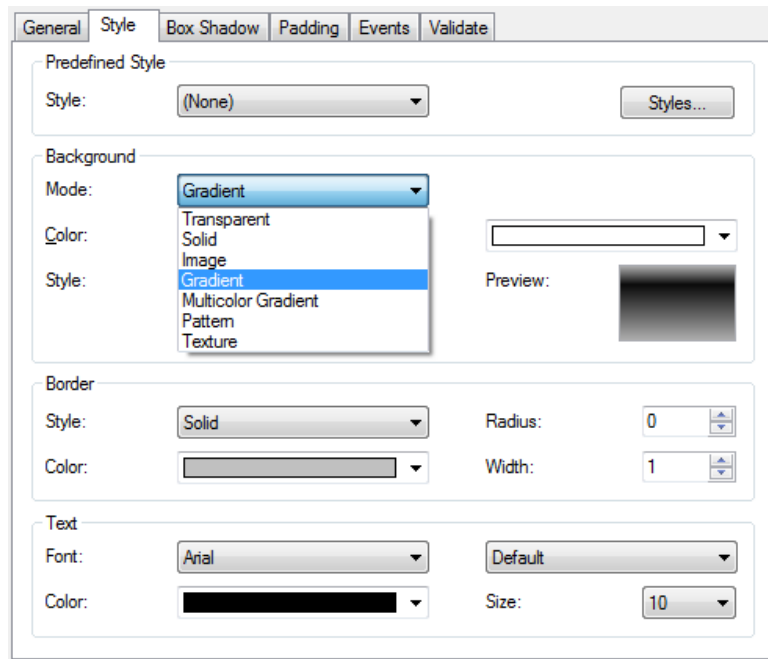
**Tip:**

Another way to add objects to your page is by simply dragging them out of the toolbox onto the workspace.



## Style

Most objects have a style section in the properties window, here you can set the appearance of the object. Note that not all options do apply to all objects!



### Predefined Style

Here you can select one of the global site styles. This option will overwrite all custom style settings for the object. You can add or edit styles in the Style Manager.

Note that the `<h1>` ... `<h6>` are generally only used for text!

### Background

#### Background mode

Specifies the background mode.

- **Transparent**  
The background of the object will be transparent.
- **Solid**  
Use a solid background color.
- **Image**  
Use an image as background.  
**Repeat;** Sets the tiling attributes for the background image. Possible options are: Repeat in both directions, Repeat in horizontal direction, Repeat in vertical direction and Do not repeat.  
**Horizontal Align;** Sets the horizontal position for the background image.  
**Vertical Align;** Sets the vertical position for the background image.
- **Gradient**  
Use a (two-color) gradient as background. This option supports many different gradient styles like linear, ellipse, glass, glossy etc. By default, a background image will be generated for the gradient effect. However, you can also use CSS3 gradients by enabling the option 'Use CSS3 gradients instead of images' in Menu->Tools->Options->HTML. Keep in mind however that not all browsers support CSS3 yet.



- **Multi-color gradient**

Use a (multi-color) gradient as background. WYSIWYG Web Builder includes many predefined multi color gradient styles but you can easily create your own style with the Gradient Style Manager. Just like the standard gradient option it supports many different gradient styles like linear, ellipse, glass, glossy etc. By default, a background image will be generated for the gradient effect. However, you can also use CSS3 gradients by enabling the option 'Use CSS3 gradients instead of images' in Menu->Tools->Options->HTML.

- **Pattern**

Use a pattern as background. A new image will automatically be generated for the pattern.

- **Texture**

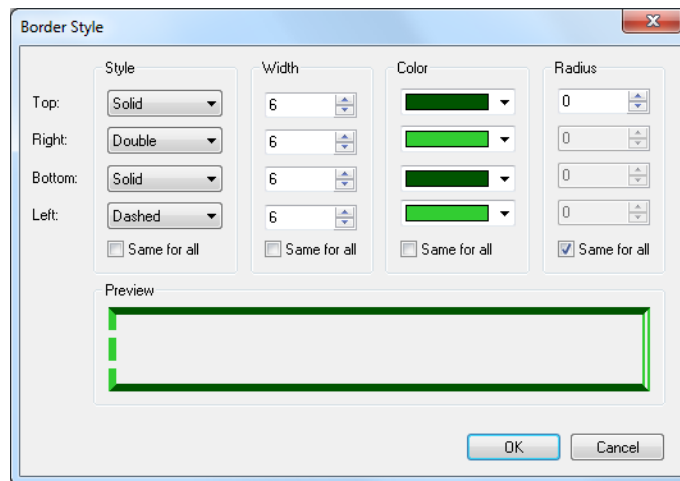
Use a texture as background. A new image will automatically be generated for the texture.

## Border

### Style

Specifies the style of the border: Dotted, Dashed, Solid, Double, Groove, Ridge, Inset or Outset.

For many objects you can also set the individual style, width, color and radius for each side for the border! Select 'Individual style for each side' and then click 'Settings'.



### Width

Specifies the thickness of the border around the banner. Set this to 0 (zero) for no border.

### Color

Specifies the color of the border around the banner.

### Radius

Defines the degree to which border corners will be rounded.

## Text

### Font

Specifies the font family of the text, such as Comic Sans, Times New Roman, and Courier New.

### Style

Specifies the style of the text such as Bold, Italic or Regular.

### Size

Specifies the size of the text.

### Color

Specifies the color of the text.

## Bookmark

Text and images can be set as bookmarks (also called "anchors") that can be linked to within a page. For example, if a page has several new items, the news titles for each item can be set as bookmarks and a row of links can be added to the top of the page that will each skip down to those bookmarked sections. This method of using bookmarks allows visitors to your site to quickly access information by not having to scroll down the page to view the information they want.

You can create a Bookmark by using the Bookmark tool from the Insert menu and place it anywhere in the page. Make sure you give the bookmark a unique name. Once you have placed the bookmark icon on your page, it can be selected from the Bookmark dropdown list.

### Enable Smooth Scrolling

Enable this option to animate the page scrolling. This effect is often used in modern websites. The Duration specifies the timing of the animation. Easing can be used to create 'bounce effects'.

### Events

The following events are unique to WYSIWYG Web Builder. They make it possible to trigger actions based on the scroll position of the page. For example, you can start animations or show/hide objects when the bookmark scrolls into (or out of) the viewport.

#### *onscrollreveal*

Fires when the bookmark is completely visible in the view port of the browser.

#### *onscrollrevealpartial*

Fires when the bookmark is partially visible in the view port of the browser.

#### *onscrollhide*

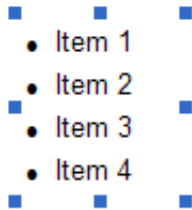
Fires when the bookmark is scrolled out of the browser's view port.

You can read more about bookmarks in the 'Links' chapter.

## Bulleted List

You can add a bulleted list to your web page to set apart a list of items from the rest of the page of text. The bulleted list is a combination of ordered (numbered) lists and unordered lists and supports the following styles:

Circle, Disc, Square, Numeric (1, 2, 3), Lower Alpha (a, b, c), Upper Alpha (A, B, C), Lower Roman (i, ii, iii), Upper Roman(I, II, III) and custom images.



To insert a bulleted list into your page select Insert->Bulleted List. Next select the initial number of items and the bullet style. Note that you can always change the bullet style to something else through the object's properties.

Other properties of the bulleted lists include Font, size, color and spacing and padding for the individual items.

### ***How do I edit the text of an item?***

Double click the item to edit the text. Formatting of the text works the same way as in a regular textbox.

### ***How do I insert a new item?***

Right click the bulleted list to display the context menu and select Insert Item.

### ***How do I remove an item?***

Right click the bulleted list to display the context menu and select Delete Item.

### ***How do I select the next item using the keyboard?***

Use the Tab key to go to the next item

### ***How do I change the space between the bullet and the text?***

When you move the mouse cursor between the bullet and the text you can drag the (invisible) border to increase or decrease the spacing.

### ***Why does Web Builder not use 'real' bullet tags in the output HTML?***

Bulleted lists are not cross browser compatible. This means that all browsers have their own way of displaying lists all with their own padding, line-spacing and other specific offsets.

It is impossible to generate a bulleted list using the standard <OL> <UL> tags in a way that is looks the same in all browsers. For this reason, we have decided to use tables to simulated look and feel of bulleted lists. This way we have much more control over the layout of the bulleted lists and we can be sure it looks (almost) the same of every browser.

## Horizontal Line

The Line object is used to insert a horizontal line across the page.

### Line Color

Specifies the color of the line.

### Use page theme

Use the page theme to style the object. More details about themes: Theme Manager.

### Box Shadow

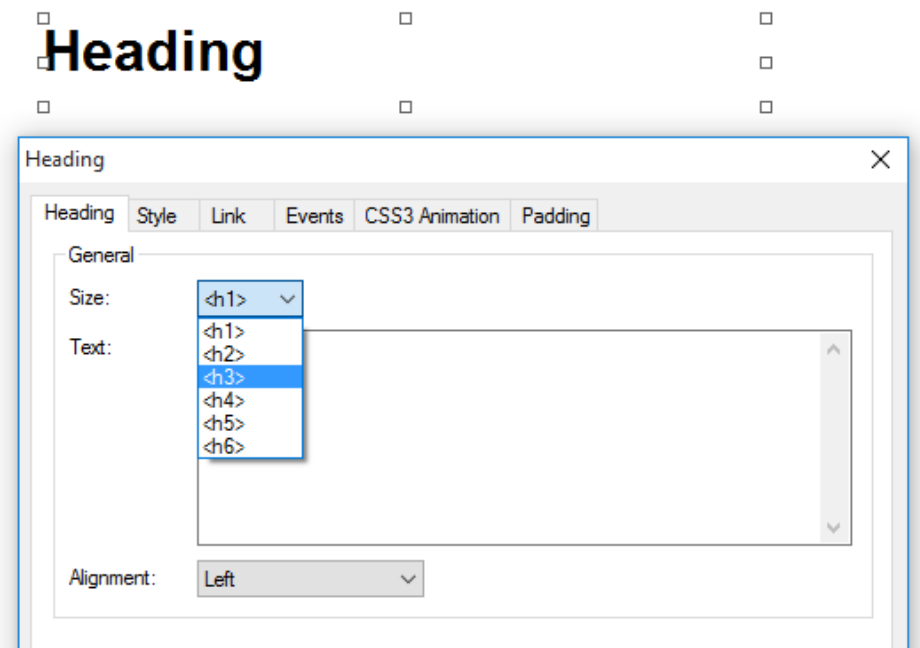
Configure box shadow (also called drop shadow) for the object. This feature requires a CSS3 enabled browser.

**Note:** HTML does not have a vertical line object, but in Web Builder, you can use the shape object or draw tools instead.

## Heading

This object provides a quick and easy way to add headings (<h1>, <h2>) without using styles. Each heading object can have its own fonts/size/color!

Note that you can also use Styles to insert headings into the standard text objects, but in that case the all headings will have the same style.



## Image

To add images, use the Image object. Drag the object to the page and a file dialog will pop up to select the image. Web Builder supports jpg, gif, bmp and png files.

**Filename:** enter the path and filename of the image/picture or select **Browse** to find an image on your local drive.

### Notes:

1. This property specifies the location of the local image, when you publish the page the image will automatically be copied to location as specified in Tools->Options->Publish->Images Sub Folder.
2. You can also specify absolute URLs like this  
[https://www.paypalobjects.com/en\\_US/i/logo/paypal\\_logo.gif](https://www.paypalobjects.com/en_US/i/logo/paypal_logo.gif)
3. To make a (backup) copy of the images used in your page enable Tools->Options->Folders->**Make a copy of images** to this folder when documents are saved. This will copy all images to the specified folder, so they're all stored in one place. It also prevents having duplicate image names in your web site.

### Alternate text

This text, usually a short description, appears in place of the object in browser when images are unsupported or have been disabled. In some browsers it appears as a ToolTip when you move the mouse over the image.

### Title

In modern browsers this title appears as a ToolTip when you move the mouse over the image.

### Use original size

Select this if you want the image to appear at its original size.

### Fit to layout rectangle

Select this if you want to manually specify the image size.

### Border size

Specifies the thickness of the border around the image. Set this to 0 (zero) for no border.

### Border Color

Specifies the color of the border around the image.

### Border radius

Defines the degree to which border corners will be rounded.

### Reflection

Specifies the amount of reflection.

### Opacity

Change the transparency (0 - 100%) of the image.

### Lazy loading

Enable this option to delay the loading of images until they are visible in the view port. This will speed up the page loading. It also prevents loading large images in mobile devices because only the visible images will be downloaded.

**Enable Shadow**

Specifies whether to enable the shadow effect. A shadow with an x and y offset of 0 (zero) will produce a glow-like effect. Decreasing the blur factor of the shadow will make the edges sharper.

**Shadow Offset X**

Horizontal shadow offset

**Shadow Offset Y**

Vertical shadow offset

**Shadow Opacity**

Sets the transparency of the shadow.

**Shadow Color**

Specifies the shadow color

**Shadow Blur**

Softens the shadow's edges.

**Use CSS3 box-shadow**

Enable this option to use native CSS shadow instead of generating a new image with the shadow effect. This option requires a modern browser with CSS3 support!

**Rotation**

See also the description 'Rotate an image' earlier in this document.

**Links**

For more details about linking please read the chapter about 'Links'.

**Events**

For more information about events please read the 'Events' chapter.

## *Image Tools & Effects*

In WYSIWYG Web Builder, you can apply effects to images without having to open a separate image editor!

Available tools are:

- **Rotate**  
Rotate the image 90 degrees left or right.
- **Flip**  
Flip the image horizontally or vertically.
- **Contrast**  
Adjust the contrast of the image.
- **Brightness**  
Adjust the brightness of the image.
- **Resample**  
Re sampling an image will change the number of pixels and therefore the physical file size of an image. Re sampling will be done based on the current size of the image on the page. If the size is smaller than the original size, the physical file size is decrease. If it's larger the physical file size will increase!
- **Crop**  
By cropping an image, you can remove areas of the image that you don't want to use. While in crop mode drag the handles of the cropping box to resize and include the part of the image that you want to keep. Click Crop again to remove the area outside of the cropping box.
- **Slice**  
The slice tool is used for "Slicing" up your images into many smaller pieces you will not notice anything on your page because when it is previewed all the pieces show as one. The logic behind slicing is that your images will load faster and it can also help to stop users from trying to steal your images if they try to they won't get one large image but just one small piece of it.
- **Hue/Saturation**  
Adjust the hue or saturation of the image.
- **Auto thumbnail**  
Use this option to quickly create a smaller thumbnail-sized version of the image. A hyperlink to the original full-size image will be added.
- **Set Transparent Color**  
You can create a transparent area in most images except in animated GIF images.  
Select the image you want to create transparent areas in.  
On the image toolbar or menu click 'Set Transparent Color'.  
In the image, click the color you want to make transparent.  
The Set Transparent Color option is available for images that don't already have transparency information. The image will be converted to the PNG format and will be published with a different name.
- **Add/Replace stencil**  
Stencils are a cool way to change the appearance of your images. Stencils can convert your images into any shape! Basically, stencils replace the alpha channel information (transparency) of the image with the one from the stencil. You can create your own stencils and place the stencils in the sub folder 'stencils' of the program.
- **Save as Image**  
This option can be used to export the image to disk including all applied effects. You can export the image in JPG, GIF or PNG format.

Available effects are:

- Aquarelle
- Blue Print
- Blur / Blur More
- Buttonize
- Colorize
- Comic
- Cylinder
- Diffuse
- Droste Effect
- Edge Linear / Edge Non Linear
- Emboss / Emboss More
- Engrave / Engrave More
- Erode
- Fish Eye
- Flame
- Holga
- Impressionism
- Inner bevel frame
- Invert Luminance
- Jitter
- Gaussian Blur
- Glow
- Gold/Ice/Metallic effect
- Grayscale
- Laplace
- Median
- Mosaic Tiles
- Motion Blur
- Negative
- Neon Glow
- Night Vision
- Noise
- Oil Painting
- Old Movie
- Old Photo
- Pencil
- Pinch
- Pixellate
- Polaroid Stack
- Psychedelic
- Punch
- Replace Color
- Ripple
- Sepia
- Sharpen / Sharpen More
- Sketch
- Sobel
- Solarize
- Soften
- Soft Edges/Feather
- Splash
- Swap Color Channels
- Texture
- Thermique
- Threshold
- Tilt Shift
- Twirl
- Urban Ink
- Water Reflection



Things that you should know about effects:

1. You can apply multiple effects to an image.
2. Effects are non-destructive, which means they are not apply to the original image. A copy of the original image will be published to your website using an unique name (.png format).
3. Effects are applied to the image 'on-the-fly' when the images are loading into workspace and in the order you've added them. So, for example if you apply Brightness 3 times, the images will be processed 3 times the next time you load your page.
4. Plan your effects! Do not add to many effects to images. This will slow down loading times of the image in Web Builder. Before applying effects, test which impact the effect has on the image, if you do not like it use undo the restore the original image.
5. Do not apply effects to very large images! The bigger the image, the longer it will take before the effect has been processed (just like in any other image editor!).
6. Resample can be used to decrease the size of the published image and therefore can increase the loading speed of your website. Of course, resampling will also reduce the quality of the image.

### Watermark

Watermark Tool is the powerful feature that allows you to quickly and easily protect your images with a visible watermark. With the many watermarking options available, you're able to personalize your images in a variety of ways including text size, color, and position.

#### Type

- **None**  
The watermark tool will be disabled.
- **Standard**  
The text will be rendered in top of the image.
- **Inverted**  
The watermark effect will be inverted.
- **Embossed**  
This option will use an emboss effect for the text.

#### Text

Specifies the watermark text.

#### Font

Font type is the font family of text, such as Comic Sans, Times New Roman, and Courier New.

#### Color

Specifies the color of the text.

#### Opacity

Specifies the opacity/transparency of the text.

#### Horizontal / Vertical Alignment

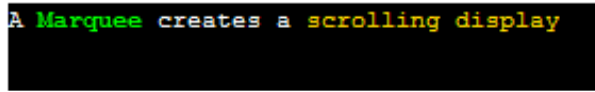
Specifies the horizontal and vertical alignment of the text.

#### Repeat Text

Enable this option to repeat the text over the full image.

## Marquee

The Marquee object is used to introduce text that scrolls.



### Text

Enter the text to scroll. Text can include formatting and links.

### Direction

This attribute controls the direction of scrolling.

### Repeat

Number of times to repeat the scrolling (0=Continuously).

### Delay

This controls the delay (in milliseconds) between the successive displays that give the impression of animation.

### Amount

This controls the amount of movement (in pixels) between the successive displays that give the impression of animation.

### Behavior

This attribute controls the behavior of the displayed text.

- **scroll**  
indicates that the content should scroll off the edge of the marquee area, then reappear on the other side.
- **slide**  
same as scroll, however the text stops scrolling when it reaches the edge of the object
- **alternate**  
makes the text bounce back and forth.
- **star wars**  
Implements Stars Wars-like 3D scrolling.

### Pause scrolling on mouse over

Specifies whether to pause scrolling on mouse over.

### Note:

The unofficial <marquee> tag has been replaced with CSS3 animations for better compatibility with (modern) browsers. W3C compliant!

## Text

This object allows you to add text to the web page drag the object to the page and **double click** it to start typing your text. Use the Format Toolbar to change the font, size, color and other properties of the text. For the available formatting options please see Format Tools. To insert a link in the text, use the Link option. For more information about hyperlinks please read the 'Links' chapter of this document.

Most text properties can be changed using the format toolbar or using the menu bar's format item.

**You must first highlight text before you can change the formatting.**

### Note:

Although WYSIWYG Web Builder can display all fonts installed on your computer, it's recommended that you only use **web safe fonts** so your web pages will look the same on all computers. You can read more about web safe fonts in the 'Format menu' section of this document.

The following properties can be changed using the Text Properties window (right click context menu):

### Padding

Sets the amount of space between the object and its border.

### Publish this text as an image

Converts the text to image when your page is published. This option can be useful if you want the text to be displayed exactly as in WYSIWYG Web Builder, even when you selected fonts which are not web safe. The text will be converted to a GIF, JPG or PNG image.

GIF will use single pixel transparency.

JPG will use a solid background color since it does not support transparency.

PNG will result in the best (anti-aliased) quality for larger fonts, but the output image will be larger.

### Include text in ALT attribute

If text has been converted to an image then search engines will not be able to 'see' this text. Select this option if you want the original text to be included in the alt attribute.

### Compatibility/Output format

Unfortunately, there is no way to make text look exactly the same in all browsers. Each browser uses its own text rendering engine and they are all slightly different. And although WYSIWYG Web Builder uses pixels to specify the font size, this still causes different results in different browsers. To help you optimize your text so that it looks as good as possible in all browsers, we have added a few options to control the way the text is outputted in HTML.

- **Default /Classic Mode**  
All code will be inside one div. This should be ok for most layouts with not too much text.
- **Use <div> for each line (DEPRECATED)**  
Each line will be embedded inside its own <div> with its own styling. This gives more accurate results in some occasions.
- **Use <div> with position for each line (DEPRECATED)**  
Each line will be embedded inside its own div and includes position/size. Text will be split up the text into multiple <div> elements. This will result in better layouts, but also increases the amount of generated code.
- **Include line-height in text styles**  
WYSIWYG Web Builder will calculate the line-height for each font (based on the rendering in the workspace) and add it to the CSS style. In many cases this will give very accurate results in various browsers with minimum of code.

**Important note:**

The 'Use <div> for each line' options have been deprecated and they will be removed in a future version of WWB. Please use Include line-height in text styles instead. It generates cleaner code and works with responsive layouts.

See also for the latest tips and tricks for optimizing text:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forum/viewtopic.php?f=10&t=34318>

**Shortcut Keys**

The text editor supports the following shortcut keys:

Keys	Operations	Comments
Ctrl + A	Select all	
Ctrl + E	Center alignment	
Ctrl + J	Justify alignment	
Ctrl + R	Right alignment	
Ctrl + L	Left alignment	
Ctrl + C	Copy	
Ctrl + V	Paste	
Ctrl + X	Cut	
Ctrl + Z	Undo	
Ctrl + Y	Redo	
Ctrl + '+' (Ctrl+Shift+'=')	Superscript	
Ctrl + '='	Subscript	
Ctrl + ' (apostrophe)	Accent acute	After pressing the short cut key, press the appropriate letter (for example a, e, or u). This applies to English, French, German, Italian, and Spanish keyboards only.
Ctrl + ` (grave)	Accent grave	See Ctrl+' comments.
Ctrl + ~ (tilde)	Accent tilde	See Ctrl+' comments.
Ctrl + ; (semicolon)	Accent umlaut	See Ctrl+' comments.
Ctrl + Shift + 6	Accent caret (circumflex)	See Ctrl+' comments.
Ctrl + , (comma)	Accent cedilla	See Ctrl+' comments.
Ctrl + Shift + ' (apostrophe)	Activate smart quotes	
Backspace	Delete previous character	
Ctrl + Backspace	Delete previous word.	
Ctrl + Insert	Copy	
Shift + Insert	Paste	
Insert	Overwrite	
Ctrl+Left Arrow	Move cursor one word to the left.	
Ctrl+Right Arrow	Move cursor one word to the right.	
Ctrl+Up Arrow	Move to the line above.	
Ctrl+Down Arrow	Move to the line below.	
Ctrl+Home	Move to the beginning of the textbox.	
Ctrl+End	Move to the end of the textbox	
Ctrl+Delete	Delete the next word or selected characters.	
Shift+Delete	Cut the selected characters.	
Esc	Stop editing text. Leave edit mode.	
Alt+0xxx (Number Pad)	Inserts Unicode values if xxx is greater than 255.	When xxx is less than 256, ASCII range text is inserted based on the current keyboard. Must enter decimal values.

**Lorem Ipsum**

Lorem ipsum is a placeholder text (filler text) commonly used to demonstrate the graphic elements of a web site, such as font, typography, and layout, by removing the distraction of meaningful content.

WYSIWYG Web Builder has a simple built-in Lorem Ipsum Text generator to add placeholder text to the text object. You can either insert complete paragraphs or a specific number of words.

The text will be loaded from a file called loremispum.txt in the application folder. If you like you can edit or overwrite this file with your own custom text (for advanced user only!).

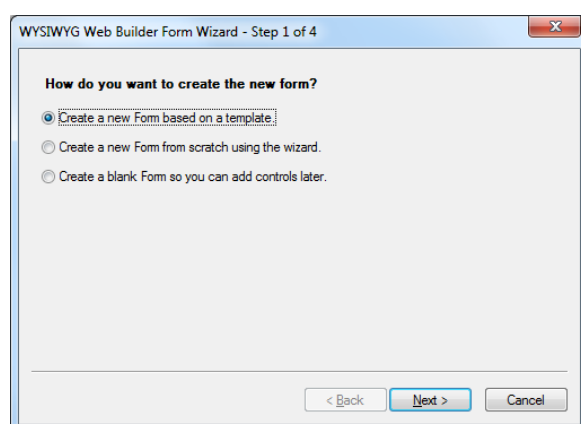
## Form Wizard

Creating forms has never been so easy! Create complete forms in just a few steps. One of the many ways in which you can interact with people who visit your website is to get feedback from them through forms. Creating a form from scratch can be a rather difficult, so we've implemented the Form Wizard to make this task a little easier.

### Step 1: How do you want to create the new form?

The WYSIWYG Web Builder Form Wizard has 3 methods to create a form:

1. **Create a new form based on a template**  
This option allows you to select a template form, which you can use as the basis for own form.
2. **Create a new form from scratch using the wizard**  
Manually insert controls and labels to the form.
3. **Create a blank form so you can add controls later**  
This inserts a blank form to your page with no controls on it. Basically, this is the same as manually inserting an empty form area.



### Step 2: Select a template form

We've included several ready-to-use forms to get you started. Please take your time to study the properties of each of these forms to get an idea how we've implemented them, so you can use this knowledge to create your own forms. For some forms you will need to modify the pre-defined values such as the specified email address or website URL.

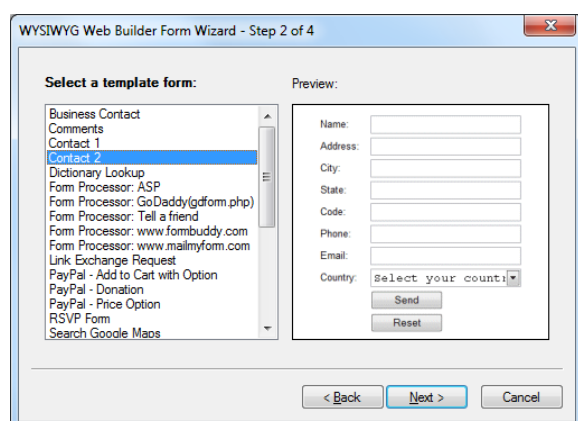
There are 2 form processor templates where external websites are used to process the form data.

Before you can make use of the services of these websites you will need to register first!

<http://www.formbuddy.com/>

<http://www.mailmyform.com/>

These examples can be useful if your website does not support PHP or any other type of form processing.



### Step 3: Add Control to the form

In this step you can insert controls to the form. Each control can have a label which will be displayed in front of the control.

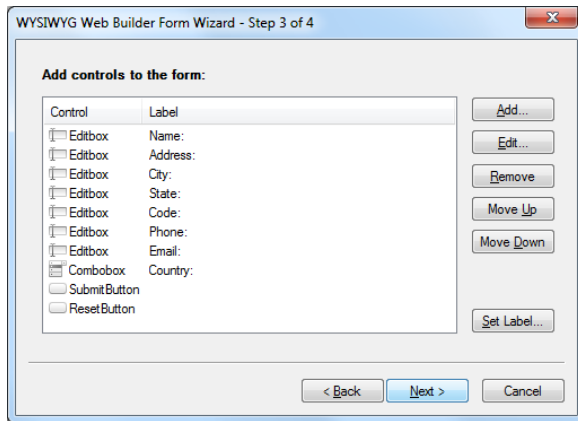
Click Add and select one of the items from the drop down menu to insert a new control. In most cases the wizard will ask you to enter a label name.

To modify the properties of the controls, select it in the list and click Edit to show the control's properties.

You can re-arrange the items using the Move Up and Move Down buttons.

**Tip:**

Make sure your form contains a Submit button. Without this button the user will not be able to submit the entered data!



#### **Step 4: Where should the data be sent to?**

When the user presses Submit, the browser sends the form data to a web server, so we need to specify where the data should be sent to.

One of the possibilities is '**Submit the data to an email address**', although this is a very common method, it doesn't work reliably for all visitors to your site. Whether or not a visitor can use this method depends on the mail client installed on their computer. And unfortunately, there's no way to test if that's the case for each of your visitors. **We do not recommend using this method!**

Instead of using the Submit the data to an email address ("mailto") method, try using a remotely hosted CGI script like PHP, ASP or remote hosted solutions like <http://www.formbuddy.com> or <http://www.mailmyform.com>. These services let you access a CGI script run off of their servers. You build your form as you normally would, but now you select **Submit data to a script on an external server** and fill in the URL of the remote CGI script. The CGI script translates your form into an email message and sends it on to the address you provide.

Alternatively, you can create your own form processor and make the form processor script part of your Web Builder website. In that case select **Submit data to a page within your website**.

In the tutorial section of our website you can find an example how to implement this using PHP: [http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forms\\_php.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forms_php.html)

#### **Note:**

Some form templates use their own form processor script (usually added as a separate HTML object). In that case please do not change the predefined values unless you know what you are doing!

Templates that use a custom form processor include:

Dictionary lookup

Form processor: ASP

Form processor: Godaddy

Form processor: Tell a friend

Form processor: [www.formbuddy.com](http://www.formbuddy.com)

Form processor: [www.mailmyform.com](http://www.mailmyform.com)

Tell a friend

All PayPal templates

All search templates

#### **Important:**

Some form template use hidden fields to (fro example) specify an email address or website. Make sure you replace these values with your own information!!! You can change the values of the hidden fields at any time later through the form's properties.

#### **Use Built-in PHP form processor to send data to an email address.**

Enable this option if you want to use the built-in form processor.

For more details about this feature in the Form chapter.

#### **Encoding type**

The required encoding type depends on the form processor script, so please consult the documentation of the CGI script for more info. In case you have selected a pre-defined form, the correct encoding type will be selected.

## Form

A form provides a way you to collect information from the people who view your web pages. A viewer enters data or makes choices among several options and then submits the form. The results can be sent to you by email. If your web server has the right software, you can save the form results in a database.

The Form Area object is a container for FORM objects like buttons, edit boxes and checkboxes. You can add any standard form object to a form, including single- and multiple-line text fields, check boxes, radio buttons, scrolling lists, and drop-down lists. You add objects to a form using the Form toolbar (Form Tools). You must place form objects inside a form to make them work as part of the form. Browsers display form objects differently, so test your form on all the browsers and platforms you plan to support.

### *How do I create a form in WYSIWYG Web Builder?*

1. Drag the Form object to the page and draw a box to indicate the position of the form.
2. Design your form by adding some Form controls to the form, for example: Button, Image Button, Advanced Button, Checkbox, Radio button, Editbox, Text Area or Combobox. You can also make text and images part of the form. You'll notice that all objects become a part of the form, so when you change the position of the form all those objects move along.
3. Make sure your form contains a Submit button (push button). Without this button the user will not be able to submit the entered data.
4. Once you have designed your form, you may need to set some properties. Select the form and choose Edit->Properties from the Web Builder menu. The most important thing you need to do is specify the form action. For example, to send the entered data to your email address, when the user presses the submit button: **mailto:yourname@yourdomain.com**

**Note:** Much more information about forms is available in the Frequently Asked Questions section of the website, in the online tutorials and in the support forum:  
<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/support.html>



### Form name

Enter a name for the FORM. This name is primarily used for advanced scripting.

### Action

Required attribute, specifying the URL of a CGI script which processes the form and sends back feedback. There are two methods to send form data to a server. **GET** will send the form input in an URL, whereas **POST** sends it in the body of the submission. The latter method means you can send larger amounts of data, and that the URL of the form results doesn't show the encoded form.

Example:

**mailto:yourname@yourdomain.com**

This will email the results to your email address using the visitors default email client.

**Note:** We do not recommend using the HTML's 'mailto' feature. It is very unreliable and its behavior strongly depends on the type of browser and user preferences. When possible use the built-in PHP form processor or create your own processing script.

If your web server supports PHP then you can use the **built-in PHP form processor** which is probably the easiest way to implement form processing. Read more details about this later in this document.

You can also write a simple form handling routine in PHP as explained in this tutorial:

[http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forms\\_php.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forms_php.html)

If your server is not PHP-enabled, then you should contact your web host and ask them for the details on processing forms. Some servers offer server-side scripts that you can use, and if this is the case you'll need instructions setting this facility up. Alternatively, you can use a remotely hosted solution like [www.formbuddy.com](http://www.formbuddy.com) or [www.mailmyform.com](http://www.mailmyform.com).

These services let you access a CGI script run off of their servers. You build your form as you normally would, but now you fill in the URL of the remote CGI script.

The CGI script translates your form into an email message and sends it on to the address you provide.

### Accept Charset

Specifies which character will be accepted by the form. This can be useful for Unicode languages. This value also used by the built-in form processor.

Common values supported by most browsers are ISO-8859-1 or UTF-8.

### Encoding type

Here you can specify an encoding type

the default of "application/x-www-form-urlencoded" is most widely supported.

An alternative is "text/plain", which is typically used in combination when the **Action** attribute points to a mailto: URL. If a browser supports both, the contents of the form is sent in plain text to the indicated recipient.

### Use Built-in PHP form processor to send data to an email address.

After the user has entered the information in the form, you probably want to process it somehow. By default, a HTML form does do anything with the data so you need to implement a form processing script. One of the great features of WYSIWYG Web Builder is that it has a built-in form processor. This implements all the basic features of a form processor like sending an email, saving it to a file on the server or even store it in a MySQL database.

Enable **Use Built-in PHP form processor to send data to an email address** option if you want to use the built-in form processor. This feature automatically generates a PHP script that will process the fields of your form and send it to an email address you specify. The form processing script will be inserted into the same page and you will be able to select a 'thank you' or successful page that will be displayed after the user has submitted the data.

### Email address

The email address where the results of the form will be sent to. You can only specify one email address in this field. You can leave this field empty if you do not want to send an email.

### More-button

Click the 'More' button to specify multiple email addresses (CC/BCC). Use commas to separate email addresses. The 'From email' field will set the 'from' address of email sent messages to the specified email address. If you leave the field empty then it will work like in previous versions: either the 'email' input will be used (if it exists) or the 'to' address.

The 'From name' allows you to set the name of the sender. It is also possible to use a PHP variable. For example, `$_POST['name']` where 'name' is the name of the input field.

'Reply to' can be used to specify an alternative reply address. 'Reply To' can be a fixed email address, in which case you must use quotes:

'yourname@email.com'

or a PHP variable:

`$_POST['email']`

The default value is `$mailfrom`. This is a built-in variable and means that if 'From email' has been configured that this will be used or else the email address entered by the user.

### Subject

The subject of the email message.

### Message

A short message that will be added to submitted data.

By default the message will be sent in plain text, but it's also possible to format the text. Click the 'Edit' button to change the format of the message. Select 'Rich text' to use the built-in editor to format the text (click the 'Edit' button to open the editor) or select 'HTML' to insert your own HTML code for the message (for advanced users!).

### Success page (required)

The page that the user will be redirected to after the data has been submitted (after the 'submit' button has been pressed).

### Error page (required)

The page that the user will be redirected to if an error occurred while processing the data.

### Write form data to a .csv file.

This option will save the submitted form data to a comma separated data file on the web server. You open this file in Microsoft Excel, a text editor or import into a database.

Note that the data file must exist on the server and it must be writable!

WYSIWYG Web Builder has a very useful option to automatically create this file for you and set the appropriate permissions. Simply click the 'Create' button next to the filename field and follow the onscreen instructions.

#### Step 1

Enter the name of the data file. For example, 'formdata.csv'

#### Step 2

Select the publish location where the file will be created. Web Builder will list all profiles you've created in the publish manager.

#### Step 3

Web Builder will connect to the selected location and display the folder structure on the web server. Select the remote folder and click 'Finish' to create the data file.

**Upload files to a folder on the server.**

If this option is enabled the built-in form processor will upload files to a folder on the server instead of sending them as attachment via email.

The files will be saved with a unique filename. The location of the uploaded file(s) will be included in the email message.

***Database (for advanced users only)***

You can use this option in combination with the built-in form processor to store form data in a MySQL database on the server. The generated PHP script will attempt to automatically create the table and fields based on the settings you configured, so you do not have to worry about creating it yourself. The database fields will be in the same order and use the same name as in your form design.

**Note:**

To view or process the submitted form data you will need a separate tool, like the standard MySQL admin tool. Please consult the documentation of your web host for more details.

**Write form data in a MySQL database**, specifies whether to write form data in a MySQL database.

**Database**, specifies the MySQL database name.

**Table**, specifies the MySQL database table name.

**Username**, specifies the MySQL username.

**Password**, specifies the MySQL password.

**Server**, specifies the MySQL database server.

***Auto responder***

We have added some basic auto responder functionality to the form processor. This allows you to send a (thank you or confirmation) message to the user.

**From**

Specifies the 'from' email address for the email message.

**Subject**

Specifies the subject for the email message.

**Message**

Specifies the body text for the email message.

**Input field name**

Specifies the name of the email input field. The default is 'email'. Which means that the form should have an input field named 'email' to collect the email address.

***Miscellaneous***

Enable **Include IP address in form data** to include the IP address of the computer from where the form was submitted in the message. The option **Process variables in Success Page** makes it possible to include form results in success page. This allows you to use variables in the text (or other parts of the success page) which will be replaced by the submitted values of the form.

Example: on the success page add a text object with this text:

```
The following data has been submitted to the online form:  
Name: $name  
Email: $email  
Website: $website
```

Where name, email and website are the names of the form fields plus dollar sign. So, if the field name is 'name' then the variable name will be '\$name'.

**Enable server sided validation**

This adds extra security to the form by also validating the input on the server side (using PHP), so even if JavaScript is disabled in the browser or the form has been modified (by spammers/hackers), the submitted will still be validated. This feature uses the same settings as the JavaScript (client side) validation.

**Do not allow URLs in form data**

This option may help to prevent spam by blocking messages that include links.

**Set envelope-from address for PHP mail() with the -f option**

Setting an envelope-sender address avoids mail bounces annoying your system administrator.

If the mail sent by the form cannot be delivered, it will be rejected to the address specified as the "from" address.

<http://php.net/manual/en/function.mail.php>

### ***Adding custom code to the form processor (for advanced users only!)***

It is possible to add additional code to the form processor, this can be useful for inserting CC/BCC headers or to send another email, store to database etc.

#### **Step 1**

First make sure the option 'Use Built-in PHP form processor to send data to an email address' is enabled.

#### **Step 2**

Right click the form and select 'HTML' from the context menu.

#### **Step 3**

Notice that one of the tabs is called 'Custom Form Processing', here you can type your own code.

The code will be inserted just before the PHP mail() function:

```
$body .= '--'.$boundary.'--'.$eol;

// your code will be inserted here!

mail($mailto, $subject, $body, $header);
header('Location: '.$success_url);
exit;
```

### **Important notes about the built-in PHP form processor:**

- If the form contains an editbox named 'email', then this email address will be used as the 'from' address for the message. This field name is case sensitive! So do not call it Email or eMail.
- If the form contains one or more 'file upload' objects then the script will automatically attached these files to the email message.
- You **MUST** change the file extension on the page to PHP (in Page Properties), because PHP will be added to the page.
- You cannot preview/test a PHP page on your local computer unless you have a PHP web server installed. PHP scripts can only be tested once the page has been published to the server.
- Your hosting account must support PHP and the mail() function must be enable, otherwise it will not work.
- You can have only one form per page.
- The z-order of the objects on the form determines the order of the items in the email message. You can change this order by using the Arrange tools or select 'Arrange Objects' in the form's context menu.

See also this online tutorial:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forms.html>

### *Hidden Fields*

You can also add hidden fields that are not rendered but whose values are submitted with a form. Generally hidden fields are used to store information between client/server exchanges that would otherwise be lost due to the stateless nature of HTTP.

### *Events*

For more information about events please read the 'Events' chapter of this document.

### *Web Storage*

Web storage is a new feature of HTML5. It allows you to store field values between sessions or/and pages. This can be useful if you want to transfer values from one form to another.

Enable this option and WYSIWYG Web Builder web builder will automatically store and retrieve all values for you!

Note that the ID of the objects will be used as the key for the value, so if you want to retrieve the values in another form (on another page) then it must have the same ID.

Local storage stores data with no time limit.

Session storage stores data for one session.

Note:

Web storage only works if your website is online. It works in all modern browsers.

### *jQuery Mobile*

#### **Use AJAX**

jQuery Mobile will automatically handle form submissions through Ajax, when possible. If false, ordinary HTTP requests will be used.

#### **Transition**

Specifies the page transition when loading the success page. Page transitions only work if AJAX is enabled.

### *Set Tab Order in Forms*

The option 'Set Tab Order' can be used to quickly set the Tab order in forms.

Here's how it works:

- 1) First select the form.
- 2) Next select the 'Set Tab Order' option in the menu (also available in the context menu of the form).
- 3) Web Builder will now display the current index of each form element that supports the tab index attribute. If the tab index is not set yet, it shows 'Not Set'.
- 4) Now click each object in the desired order. The new index will automatically be displayed.

## Advanced Button



Inserts an Advanced Button object on a form. The Advanced Button gives you much more control over the appearance and behavior of a button. You can change the background color, use different fonts for the text or even activate JavaScript.

### General

#### Name

Name of the button.

#### Value

Initial value of the button.

#### Button Type

**Normal:** Normal (Push) buttons have no default behavior.

**Submit:** When activated, a submit button submits a form.

**Reset:** When activated, a reset button resets all controls to their initial values.

**OnClick:** With this option you can associated a client-side script to the button.

#### OnClick action

Here you can specify which action if associated with the button OnClick event:

- Navigate to the specified URL; enter an URL as **OnClick value**
- Open a new window and load the specified URL Close the current browser window; enter an URL as **OnClick value**
- Reload; reload the current page (same as Refresh in the Internet Browser).
- Go to the previous page; the same as Back in the Internet Browser.
- Go to the next page; the same as Forward in the Internet Browser.
- Execute Java Script function; specify a script function you've defined elsewhere in the page.

#### OnClick value

Depending on which OnClick action you've selected you enter the associated value here.

For example, for **Navigate to the specified URL** you enter an URL.

#### Access Key

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character.

Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

#### Disabled

The disabled option disables the control for user input. Disabled controls do not receive focus.

#### Tab Index

All elements (except hidden elements) in a form are part of the form's tab order.

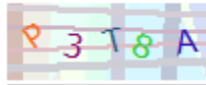
#### Title

Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser

### Events

For more information about events please read the 'Events' chapter of this document.

## CAPTCHA



The CAPTCHA object was designed to work in combination with (PHP) forms. It helps to stop spammers from submitting form data automatically. CAPTCHA (an acronym for "Completely Automated Public Turing test to tell Computers and Humans Apart,") dynamically generates an image with (random) letters and numbers.

The letters, because they're part of an image and not text, are difficult for a spambot or another computer program to read. Yet, a person has little trouble reading the letters in a captcha image.

**Tip:**

The CAPTCHA object must be part of a form. And because it uses PHP, it can only be used/tested on a web server with PHP support!

To be able to generate the CAPTCHA image the GD-library (version 2) must be enabled in your PHP setup.

In some cases, an error message may be displayed on your website. The message is will look something like this:

Warning: imagepng(): Unable to open './captcha.png' for writing in ../../captcha.php on line x

This problem may occur when the captcha script is placed in a folder on the website. The solution is to change the properties of that folder after publishing. The correct properties are 757 or 777. You can use the built-in FTP client to change the permissions of the folder.

Some web servers that do not allow to set the GDFONTPATH option.

In that case you can disable this option in Menu->Tools->Options->HTML

### *CAPTCHA image*

**Width**

Specifies the width of the image

**Height**

Specifies the height of the image

**Font type**

Specifies the font used for the letters/number of the image.

Note that Web Builder will upload the selected font to your website, so PHP can use it to generate the image.

**Font size**

Specifies the font size.

**Background**

Specifies the background color of the image.

**Generate random background**

This will generate a random background with polygons and lines in different colors which is more difficult to read by spam bots.

**Enable text shadow**

Adds shadow to the text, making it even more difficult to read for spam bots (but also for humans...).



### *Editbox*

#### **Offset**

Specifies the offset between the image and the editbox.

Tip: If you enter a negative value, then the editbox will be positioned below the image!

#### **Access key**

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character.

Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

#### **Tab Index**

All elements (except hidden elements) in a form are part of the form's tab order.

When the user presses the Tab key, the browser shifts the input focus from element to element in order the elements appear in the HTML code.

However, sometimes you want the tab order to flow a little differently. In that case, you can number the fields using tabindex attribute.

Usually the first tabindex start on with value '1'. To exclude an element from the tab order, set the value of tabindex to 0. In that case the element is skipped when the user tabs around the form.

Title

**Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser**

### *Validate*

For more information about validation please read the 'Form validation' chapter.

## Checkbox



Checkboxes are on/off switches that may be toggled by the user. Use Check boxes if want to allow more than one item to be selected.

### *General*

#### **Name**

Name of the checkbox.

#### **Value**

Value of the checkbox when it's switched on.

#### **Initial state**

Initial state of the checkbox.

#### **Access Key**

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character. Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

#### **Disabled**

The disabled option disables the control for user input. Disabled controls do not receive focus. Disabled controls are skipped in tabbing navigation. The value of disabled controls will not be submitted with the form.

#### **Tab Index**

All elements (except hidden elements) in a form are part of the form's tab order. When the user presses the Tab key, the browser shifts the input focus from element to element in order the elements appear in the HTML code. However, sometimes you want the tab order to flow a little differently. In that case, you can number the fields using tabindex attribute. Usually the first tabindex start on with value '1'. To exclude an element from the tab order, set the value of tabindex to 0. In that case the element is skipped when the user tabs around the form.

#### **Title**

Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser

#### **Use default browser styling**

Normally it is not possible to change the appearance of a Checkbox with standard HTML. However, WWB implements custom code to make it possible to customize the style (and size) of the Checkbox object to override the default browser appearance. This also make the Checkbox responsive so it can have a different size (and color) in breakpoints. If you rather use the standard browser style then this can be disabled with 'Use default browser styling'.

### *Validate*

For more information about validation please read the 'Form validation' chapter.

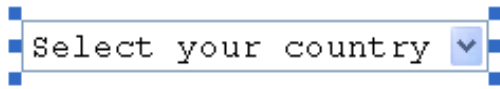
### *Events*

For more information about events please read the 'Events' chapter of this document.

#### **Note:**

This control is normally part of a form.

## Combobox



Used to allow users to make a selection from a number of different options.

### General

#### Name

Enter an identifier for the field.

#### Note:

It's important to note that the element name must be in the form `name[]` for multiple selects! This way you'll receive the selected values in an array (this is a PHP feature).

#### Type

- **Combobox**  
This will make the object a drop-down list. Only a single line is displayed at once.
- **Listbox**  
This will make the object a standard list box. Multiple lines are displayed at once.
- **Datalist (HTML5).**  
A datalist is a combination between a combobox and an editbox. The user can select data from a list or enter the value manually.

#### Allow multiple selections

Allows the user to select multiple items at the same time.

#### Elements

You can Add, Edit and Delete items that will appears in the list.

#### Add

Add a new item to the list.

#### Edit

Edit an existing item in the list.

#### Delete

Remove the selected item from the list.

#### Import

This option allows you to quickly import lists of predefined data. Select from many predefined values (countries, states, months, days etc.) or import from an external file.

#### Import from external file

The file with items must have two items per line, separated by a semi colon: Item Text;Item Value

For example:

Afghanistan;Afghanistan

Albania;Albania

### **Move Up**

Moves the selected item up one position in the list.

### **Move Down**

Moves the selected item down one position in the list.

### **Disabled**

The disabled option disables the control for user input.

Disabled controls do not receive focus.

Disabled controls are skipped in tabbing navigation.

The value of disabled controls will not be submitted with the form.

### **Tab Index**

All elements (except hidden elements) in a form are part of the form's tab order.

When the user presses the Tab key, the browser shifts the input focus from element to element in order the elements appear in the HTML code. However, sometimes you want the tab order to flow a little differently. In that case, you can number the fields using tabindex attribute.

Usually the first tabindex start on with value '1'. To exclude an element from the tab order, set the value of tabindex to 0. In that case the element is skipped when the user tabs around the form.

### **Title**

Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser

### **Focus state**

Removes the default outline styles and applies a box-shadow (with customizable color) in its place.

### **Validate**

For more information about validation please read the 'Form validation' chapter.

### **Conditions**

For more information about conditions and calculations please read the 'Form Conditions' chapter.

### **Events**

For more information about events please read the 'Events' chapter of this document.

#### **Note:**

This control is normally part of a form.

## Editbox



Single-line field that can be used to add name/e-mail address fields.

### General

#### Name

Enter an identifier for the field.

#### Initial Value

Value that is initially display in the field.

#### Place holder (HTML5)

Specifies a short hint to help the user to fill out the input field. The text will disappear as soon as the user enters some text.

#### Max. Length

Specifies the maximum number of characters a user can enter into the editbox.

#### Type

- **text**  
A plain text field.
- **password**  
Makes the editbox a password field so any text entry is displayed as asterisks.
- **color (HTML5)**  
The browser displays a visual color picker.
- **date (HTML5)**  
The browser displays a date picker.
- **datetime (HTML5)**  
Input field is for precise, absolute date and time stamps.
- **datetime-local (HTML5)**  
Input field is for local dates and times.
- **email (HTML5)**  
Input field is for email addresses.
- **month (HTML5)**  
The browser displays a month picker.
- **number (HTML5)**  
The browser displays a visual spin box.
- **range (HTML5)**  
The browser displays a range selector.
- **search (HTML5)**  
The browser displays a search input field.
- **tel (HTML5)**  
The browser displays a telephone input field.
- **time (HTML5)**  
Input field is a time input field.
- **url (HTML5)**  
Input field is for web addresses.
- **week (HTML5)**  
The browser displays a week picker.

**Note:** Currently only text and password fields are supported by all browsers. In other cases some browsers will simply display the default edit box.

**Disabled**

The disabled option disables the control for user input. Disabled controls do not receive focus. Disabled controls are skipped in tabbing navigation. The value of disabled controls will not be submitted with the form.

**Access Key**

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character. Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

**Alignment**

Specifies the horizontal alignment of the input field.

**Auto complete (HTML5)**

Specifies whether the input field should have autocomplete enabled (if available in the browser).

**Spellcheck (HTML5)**

The HTML5 spellcheck attribute specifies whether the element is to have its spelling and grammar checked or not.

**Readonly**

The read only option prevents the user from changing the value of the field, but not from interacting with the field. The user can still highlight the text for copying for example. Read-only elements receive focus but cannot be modified by the user. Read-only elements are included in tabbing navigation. Read-only elements will be submitted with the form.

**Tab Index**

All elements (except hidden elements) in a form are part of the form's tab order. When the user presses the Tab key, the browser shifts the input focus from element to element in order the elements appear in the HTML code. However, sometimes you want the tab order to flow a little differently. In that case, you can number the fields using tabindex attribute. Usually the first tabindex start on with value '1'. To exclude an element from the tab order, set the value of tabindex to 0. In that case the element is skipped when the user tabs around the form.

**Title**

Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser.

**Focus state**

Removes the default outline styles and applies a box-shadow (with customizable color) in its place.

**Box Shadow**

Configure box shadow (also called drop shadow) for the object. Requires a CSS3 enabled browser.

**Validate**

For more information about validation please read the 'Form validation' chapter.

**Events**

For more information about events please read the 'Events' chapter of this document.

**Note:**

This control is normally part of a form.

## File Upload



This object provides a means for users to attach a file to the contents of the form. The element is rendered as a text field and an associated button, though in some browsers it may appear differently. For example: the text of the 'browse' button will be 'Choose' in Opera and 'Browse' in IE/FireFox. Also there is no way to control the size of the button or edit field through HTML..

### Notes:

When using the built-in PHP form processor, the generated script will automatically take care of attaching the selected file(s) to the email message after the form has been submitted.

Most hosting services limit upload size to between 2 and 4 Mb. While you can control the upload limit by adding an hidden field called 'filesize' with the size in kB, it will nevertheless comply with the limits imposed by the hosting providers.

If you choose not to use the built-in form processor, then you must implement a script to handle file uploads yourself!

## General

### Name

Enter an identifier for the field.

### Disabled

The disabled option disables the control for user input. Disabled controls do not receive focus. Disabled controls are skipped in tabbing navigation. The value of disabled controls will not be submitted with the form.

### Access Key

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character. Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

### Use default browser styling

Normally it is not possible to change the appearance of a File Upload element with standard HTML. However, WWB implements custom code to make it possible to customize the style (and size) of the File Upload object to override the default browser appearance. If you rather use the standard browser style then this can be disabled with 'Use default browser styling'. In that case the element is rendered as a text field and an associated button, though in some browsers it may appear differently. For example, the text of the 'browse' button will be 'Choose' in Opera and 'Browse' in IE/FireFox.

### Title

Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser

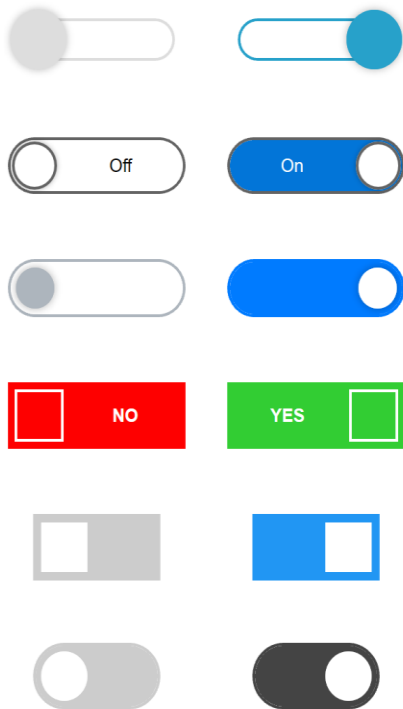
## Validate

For more information about validation please read the 'Form validation' chapter.

### Note:

This control is normally part of a form.

## Flipswitch



A "Flip Switch" (also known as Toggle switch) can be used as alternative for a checkbox. Inspired by the iPhone checkbox.

It is possible to use different colors (text/background/border) for checked/unchecked, add animations, conditions and events.

See also: [Checkbox](#)



## Image Button



Inserts an Image Button object on a form.

An image button is just like a Submit button. When the visitor of the page clicks on the Image it will perform the action associated with the form.

### General

#### Name

Name of the button.

**Image:** enter the path and filename of the image/picture.

**Use original size:** Select this if you want the image to appear at its original size.

**Fit to layout rectangle:** Select this if you want to manually specify the image size.

The Image button acts the same way as a Button with the type set to: Submit

#### Disabled

The disabled option disables the control for user input.

Disabled controls do not receive focus.

Disabled controls are skipped in tabbing navigation.

The value of disabled controls will not be submitted with the form.

#### Access Key

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character.

Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

#### Tab Index

All elements (except hidden elements) in a form are part of the form's tab order.

When the user presses the Tab key, the browser shifts the input focus from element to element in order the elements appear in the HTML code.

However, sometimes you want the tab order to flow a little differently. In that case, you can number the fields using tabindex attribute.

Usually the first tabindex start on with value '1'. To exclude an element from the tab order, set the value of tabindex to 0. In that case the element is skipped when the user tabs around the form.

#### Title

Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser

If you want more control over the appearance and behavior of the button you can also use the Advanced Button

#### Note:

This control is normally part of a form.

## Push Button



The push button will usually be used as submit or reset button on a form. If the push button isn't part of a form it doesn't do anything by default.

### General

#### Name

Name of the button.

#### Value/Label

Caption of the button.

#### Button Type

**Submit:** When activated, a submit button submits a form. A form may contain more than one submit button.

**Reset:** When activated, a reset button resets all controls to their initial values.

**Normal:** Normal (Push) buttons have no default behavior.

Each push button may have client-side scripts associated with the element's event attributes.

When an event occurs (e.g., the user presses the button, releases it, etc.), the associated script is triggered.

#### Disabled

The disabled option disables the control for user input.

Disabled controls do not receive focus.

Disabled controls are skipped in tabbing navigation.

The value of disabled controls will not be submitted with the form.

#### Access Key

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character.

Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

#### Tab Index

All elements (except hidden elements) in a form are part of the form's tab order.

When the user presses the Tab key, the browser shifts the input focus from element to element in order the elements appear in the HTML code. However, sometimes you want the tab order to flow a little differently. In that case, you can number the fields using tabindex attribute. Usually the first tabindex start on with value '1'. To exclude an element from the tab order, set the value of tabindex to 0. In that case the element is skipped when the user tabs around the form.

#### Title

Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser

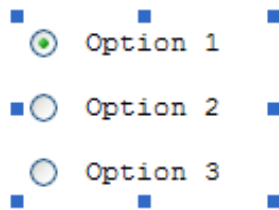
### Events

For more information about events please read the 'Events' chapter of this document.

#### Note:

This control is normally part of a form.

## Radio button



Radio buttons are like checkboxes except that when several share the same name, they are mutually exclusive: when one is switched "on", all others with the same name are switched "off".

### General

#### Group Name

The Radio Button will be part of this group.

Radio buttons with the same group name will force the user to select one choice.

#### Value

Value of the radio button when it is selected.

#### Initial state

Initial state of the radio button.

#### Disabled

The disabled option disables the control for user input.

Disabled controls do not receive focus.

Disabled controls are skipped in tabbing navigation.

The value of disabled controls will not be submitted with the form.

#### Access Key

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character.

Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

#### Tab Index

All elements (except hidden elements) in a form are part of the form's tab order.

When the user presses the Tab key, the browser shifts the input focus from element to element in order the elements appear in the HTML code. However, sometimes you want the tab order to flow a little differently. In that case, you can number the fields using tabindex attribute. Usually the first tabindex start on with value '1'. To exclude an element from the tab order, set the value of tabindex to 0. In that case the element is skipped when the user tabs around the form.

#### Title

Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser

### Events

For more information about events please read the 'Events' chapter of this document.

#### Note:

This control is normally part of a form.

## TextArea



A Text Area is a multi-line form field where the user can enter large amounts of text.

Note: This object is normally part of a form!

### General

#### Name

Enter an identifier for the field.

#### Initial Value

Value that is initially display in the field. When the form is submitted the new or edited text is entered.

#### Disabled

The disabled option disables the control for user input. Disabled controls do not receive focus. Disabled controls are skipped in tabbing navigation. The value of disabled controls will not be submitted with the form.

#### Access Key

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character.

Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

#### Spellcheck (HTML5)

The HTML5 spellcheck attribute specifies whether the element is to have its spelling and grammar checked or not.

#### Readonly

The readonly option prevents the user from changing the value of the field, but not from interacting with the field. The user can still highlight the text for copying for example. Readonly elements receive focus but cannot be modified by the user. Readonly elements will be submitted with the form.

#### Tab Index

All elements (except hidden elements) in a form are part of the form's tab order. When the user presses the Tab key, the browser shifts the input focus from element to element in order the elements appear in the HTML code. However, sometimes you want the tab order to flow a little differently. In that case, you can number the fields using tabindex attribute. Usually the first tabindex start on with value '1'. To exclude an element from the tab order, set the value of tabindex to 0. In that case the element is skipped when the user tabs around the form.

#### Title

Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser

### Box Shadow

Configure box shadow (also called drop shadow) for the object. Requires a CSS3 enabled browser.

### Validate

For more information about validation please read the 'Form validation' chapter.

### Events

For more information about events please read the 'Events' chapter of this document.

## ActiveX

You use ActiveX controls to embed an application in a Web page. ActiveX controls can add custom capabilities such as audio/movie players, calendars, custom buttons or other features to your pages. When using ActiveX controls make sure your site visitors use a browser that supports this. Draw a box to indicate the position of the ActiveX control. The Insert ActiveX Control dialog appears, listing the ActiveX controls currently installed on your system. At the bottom the selected ActiveX control's path (which has an .ocx or .dll extension) is displayed. To change the properties of the Active Control choose Properties. Available properties will be displayed in the window and can be changed by selecting the item and edit the value. Most ActiveX controls also have a native property page, which you can call using the Properties-button. Some ActiveX controls do not support HTML as programming language and will behave unexpected, so be sure you test it extensive before you publish your page.

### Note:

The ActiveX component is not W3C compliant. **It only works in older versions of Internet Explorer!** We strongly recommend not using this component in your website. It's only available for backwards compatibility with older versions.

## File Publisher

This component automatically uploads the specified files to your web site and creates the folders once you publish this page.

The files will be published to the same location as the page itself.

This object can be helpful if you want to include extra files which are part of the page (like scripts or multimedia files).

### Add Files

Add one or more files to the tree.

### Add Folder

Insert a complete folder and all files it contains from your local disk.

### New Folder

Adds a new folder name to the tree.

### Properties

Modify the properties (folder name or file location) of the selected item.

### Remove

Remove the selected item from the folder tree.

### Remove All

Remove all items from the folder tree.

### Do not include files in Asset Manager

If the option 'Let WYSIWYG Web Builder manage images and other files used by a project' in Options is enabled then all files will be copied to the project folder by Web Builder's Asset Manager. You can disable this behavior for this extension by enabling this option.

#### Note:

You can use drag & drop to re-arrange items.

## Flash

With Adobe Flash files (.swf), you can create multimedia, graphics, and audio that downloads quickly. To view these files, site visitors must install the Flash plugin appropriate for their browser and platform. These plugins are available from the Macromedia Web site at [www.macromedia.com](http://www.macromedia.com). Web Builder creates all of the code you need to add a Flash files to your site.

### Movie

Enter a filename of the movie (.swf).

### Alternative image

This image will be displayed if the browser does not support flash.

### Version

This specifies the minimum Flash version number that the movie needs to play correctly.

### Quality

To control the display quality, select a Quality option.

**Low** favors playback speed over appearance and never uses anti-aliasing.

**Autolow** emphasizes speed at first but improves appearance whenever possible. Playback begins with anti-aliasing turned off. If the Flash Player detects that the processor can handle it, anti-aliasing is turned on.

**Autohigh** emphasizes playback speed and appearance equally at first but sacrifices appearance for playback speed if necessary. Playback begins with anti-aliasing turned on. If the actual frame rate drops below the specified frame rate, anti-aliasing is turned off to improve playback speed. Use this setting to emulate the View > Anti-alias setting in Flash.

**Medium** applies some anti-aliasing and does not smooth bitmaps. It produces a better quality than the Low setting, but lower quality than the High setting.

**High** favors appearance over playback speed and always applies anti-aliasing. If the movie does not contain animation, bitmaps are smoothed; if the movie has animation, bitmaps are not smoothed.

**Best** provides the best display quality and does not consider playback speed. All output is anti-aliased and all bitmaps are smoothed.

### Scale

To determine how the movie fits in the frame, select a Scale option.

**Default (Show all)** makes the entire movie visible in the specified area without distortion, while maintaining the original aspect ratio of the movie. Borders may appear on two sides of the movie.

**No Border** scales the movie to fill the specified area, without distortion but possibly with some cropping, while maintaining the original aspect ratio of the movie.

**Exact Fit** makes the entire movie visible in the specified area without trying to preserve the original aspect ratio. Distortion may occur.

### Autostart

To play the movie automatically when the site visitor opens the page, select Auto Start.

### Loop

To replay the movie when it ends, select Loop.

### Display Full Menu

When checked it will display the full menu, allowing the user a variety of options to enhance or control playback. When not checked it will only display a menu that contains only the Settings option and the About Flash option.

### Window Mode

Specifies the window mode of the flash. Select **Transparent** if you want to display the flash movie with transparency. Otherwise select **Window** or **Opaque**.

**Allow Script Access**

The AllowScriptAccess parameter of the Flash Player controls the ability to perform outbound scripting from within a Flash SWF.

When AllowScriptAccess is "never", outbound scripting will always fail.

When AllowScriptAccess is "always", outbound scripting will always succeed.

When AllowScriptAccess is "samedomains", outbound scripting will only succeed within the same domain.

**Allow Fullscreen**

Enable this option to allow full-screen display of the Flash application. This option is supported by Flash 9.0 or higher.

**Flash Variables**

Flash variables (FlashVars) is a way to pass data or variables from html to a Flash application.

FlashVars is supported by Flash Player 6 and newer. Please check the documentation of the Flash application for more details.



## WWB Video Player

This object was previously called Flash Video Player. However, most browsers do no longer support Flash, which makes using Flash Video unreliable in modern websites.

The WWB video player now use the standard HTML5 video player functionality of the browser.

### *General*

#### **Video**

Specifies the video to be played.

#### **Image**

Specifies the 'teaser' image. This will be displayed if the video is not playing.

#### **Title**

Specifies the title of the video. This will be displayed in the player if the user click the 'Info' button.

#### **Description**

Specifies the description of the video. This will be displayed in the player if the user click the 'Info' button.

#### **Auto start**

To play the movie automatically when the site visitor opens the page, select Auto Start.

#### **Loop**

To replay the movie when it ends, select Loop.

#### **Show Info Button**

Specifies whether the 'Info' button should be displayed in the control bar.

#### **Show Fullscreen Button**

Specifies whether the 'Fullscreen' button should be displayed in the control bar.

#### **Show Scale Button**

Specifies whether the 'Scale' button should be displayed in the control bar.

#### **Show Volume Controls**

Specifies whether the volume controls should be displayed in the control bar.

#### **Show Time**

Specifies whether the time should be displayed in the control bar.

#### **Show Large Play Button**

Specifies whether the large play button should be displayed in the center of the player.

## HTML

This object can be used to insert custom HTML code or JavaScript.

When you add HTML using this object it will be placed at the location where you positioned the object.

### Description

This is used for display in Web Builder only. It can help you identify the code block you've added.

The **Type** property specifies how and where the HTML code will be inserted in the page.

- Do not use <div>**  
 Select this option to insert the HTML code "AS IS", without size and position information.
- Use <div> to set position and size of the HTML**  
 Select this option to insert the HTML code inside a DIV container with size and position.  

```
<div style:left:10px;top:10px;width:200px;height:200px;position:absolute">
<-- your html -->
</div>
```
- Start of Page**  
 The HTML will be inserted before all other code on the page.  

```
<-- your html -->
<!doctype html>
<html>
<head>
```
- Between <head></head> tags**  
 The HTML will be inserted between the <head></head> tags.  

```
<head>
...
<-- your html -->
</head>
```
- Inside <body> tag**  
 The HTML will be inserted inside the <body> tags.  

```
<body attribute=value>
```
- After <body> tag**  
 The HTML will be inserted after the <body> tags.  

```
<body>
<-- your html -->
...
</body>
```
- Before </body>**  

```
<body>
...
<-- your html -->
</body>
```
- End of page**  

```
<body>
...
</body>
<-- your html -->
```
- Inside <html> tag**  

```
<html your html>
```
- CSS in media query**  
 This option makes it possible to add breakpoint specific CSS styles. This can be useful if you need different styles in breakpoints.

### **Overflow**

This overflow can be used to control the overflow behavior of the layer.

- None  
The content of the HTML object is fully visible. No clipping will occur.
- Hidden  
The content is clipped, but the browser does not display a scroll-bar to see the rest of the content.
- Scroll  
The content is clipped, but the browser displays a scroll-bar to see the rest of the content.
- Auto  
If the content is clipped, the browser will display a scroll-bar to see the rest of the content.

### **HTML**

Enter your custom HTML code here.

Notes:

1. For most objects you can also add extra HTML before, inside of after the automatically generated HTML. Select an object and select Edit->HTML from the Web Builder menu.
2. To add extra HTML before, inside of after the HEAD and BODY tags, select View->Page HTML from the Web Builder menu.
3. If you need to add 'global' HTML to your page, it is better to add it using the Page HTML option.

## **Java**

Java applets are an efficient way to add sound and animation, such as scrolling messages and other cool effects, to a page. Java applets are platform-independent applications with compact file sizes.

Most browsers are Java-compatible, so site visitors don't need special plug-ins to run a Java applet.

The Java Object makes it easy to insert Java Applets to you page and set their properties.

To choose appropriate properties settings, you should be familiar with Java before you add these types of application files to your site.

## Inline Frame

Inline Frame or an iframe allows you to open new pages inside main pages. Inline frames are also referred to as Floating frames.

### *General*

#### **Name**

Used to set a name for the inline frame.

#### **Link to**

**Web Site:** display a page from an external web site. Syntax: <http://www.google.com>

**Internal Web Page:** display one of the pages of your web site.

Click 'Select' to choose a page. The Select Page window will show all the pages which are part of the current web site project.

Web Builder will automatically create to correct (relative) URL when you publish your pages.

#### **Show border**

Used to specify the whether to have a border for the inline frame or not.

#### **Scrollbars**

Used to specify whether the inline frame should have scrolling capability or not. Possible values: If Needed, Never or Always.

#### **Alternate text**

This text will be displayed by browsers which do not support inline frames.

#### **Enable Safari Mobile fix**

This implements a workaround for inline frames ignoring the specified height on the iPhone/iPad.

### *Lightbox*

The Lightbox option makes it possible to display another page in a lightbox (using FancyBox) after clicking on a preview image. You can specify the preview image, lightbox title and width/height of the lightbox.

### *Box Shadow*

Configure box shadow (also called drop shadow) for the inline frame. This feature requires a CSS3 enabled browser. It will not work in combination with the lightbox feature.

See also this online tutorial:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/iframe.html>

## Layer

Layers can be used to create advanced layouts. A layer is a container for other objects. Objects can be dragged and dropped on a layer just like on a form.

Some of the cool features of layers are:

- 0...100% transparency
- Show/Hide a layer (and all its contained objects) using the layer manager or through events.
- Position and size a layer relatively
- Position a layer absolute to the right and/or bottom border of the browser window
- Several background repeat and alignment options.
- Sticky layer mode, keeps a layer visible at all times.

### Opacity

Change the transparency (0 - 100%) of the layer (and all its children).

### Box Sizing

The box-sizing property is used to tell the browser what the sizing properties (width and height) should include. Should they include the border-box or just the content-box (which is the default value)? be The 'border-box' option is especially useful for full width layers, where you usually want the border inside the view port. With content-box the border size will be added to the total width (> 100%).

### Semantic HTML5

Specifies whether to use semantic HTML5 tags instead of generic <div>. Available options: <article>, <aside>, <footer>, <header>, <nav>, <section>.

### Overflow

This overflow can be used to control the overflow behavior of the layer.

- **None**  
The content of the layer is fully visible. In this case the size of the layer cannot be smaller the content.
- **Hidden**  
The content is clipped, but the browser does not display a scroll-bar to see the rest of the content.
- **Scroll**  
The content is clipped, but the browser displays a scroll-bar to see the rest of the content. This can be useful to create scrollable content without the need for an inline frame!
- **Auto**  
If the content is clipped, the browser will display a scroll-bar to see the rest of the content.

#### Note:

To create/update the content of the layer, you must resize it in the designer so all objects will be visible. After you've created/updated the layout you can resize the layer to the desired size. You cannot scroll the contents of the layer inside Web Builder.

### Layer Mode

The Layer has 3 modes. The **Default** mode, **Sticky Layer** Mode and a **Header/Footer** mode.

In Default mode the layer will be positioned on the location where you've placed it during design time. If Sticky Layer mode keeps a layer visible (top/bottom/left/right) at all times. This can be useful if you want to keep a menu or image visible even if the page scrolls. Animation is also an option!

The **Header/Footer** mode can be useful if you are using the layer as a header or footer for your page usually in combination with the 'relative horizontal resizing' option.

Normally the 'relative horizontal resizing' (and the other relative options) will add the code **after the <body> container** resulting in a higher z-index. Selecting 'Header/Footer' mode will insert the code **before the <body> container**, so the layer will be behind all other content.

There is also the **Docking layer** mode which allows you to dock a layer to a specific side of the screen or in the center of the screen. The main difference between this mode and the sticky layer mode is that Docking layer mode does not use JavaScript, instead it uses standard CSS techniques. It's just another way for you to use layers and this mode can also be useful for full page headers and footers.

With **Anchored Layer** you can anchor one or more sides of the layer to the sides of the page. For example, if you enable 'Anchor Left' and 'Anchor Right' then the layer will stretch if you resize the browser window (the offset to the left and right page border will remain the same). But you can also anchor just one border (or all).

**Floating Layer** mode is for advanced usage. It will make the layer 'float' instead of having a fixed position. If multiple floating layers are placed on the page then they will be placed next to each other (from left to right) depending on the available screen space. If the layer does not fit on the current row then it will be wrapped to the next row. This feature may be useful (for advanced users) to create responsive websites.

The option **Floating mode** can be used to control the 'float behavior':

- **Default**  
The layer will be positioned to the right side of the previous floating object. If the object does not fit on the current row, then it will move to the next row.
- **Clear Left**  
The layer will be forced to the next row. The layer can have other objects on the right side of the row (unless the next floating object is also set to clear left).
- **Full Width**  
The layer will use the full width (100%) of the page. No other objects can be on the same row. This mode can be useful for headers or footers.
- **Full Screen**  
This will set the width/height of the layer to 100% of the current view port. This can be useful for creating full screen/single page web sites. Important: you must also set the page alignment to 'Set page width and height to 100%' otherwise the layer does not use 100% of the browser window height!!!  
Related online tutorial: <http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/fullscreen.html>
- **Modal Layer** mode will position the layer on top of everything. Other items on the page will be disabled until you close the layer. **Enable backdrop**, specifies whether the background overlay is enabled. Close on escape, specifies whether pressing the 'esc' key will close the modal layer. .

**Modal Type**, jQuery UI (as in previous version of WWB) or Bootstrap. Unlike the jQuery UI option Bootstrap is responsive, so the layer can have a different size in breakpoints! Also, Bootstrap uses the title of the layer in the header.

A **Panel Layer** is initially invisible, but can slide from the right or left side of the page by using events (show/hide). **Display**, specifies the relationship of the panel to the page contents. "Push" pushes the page over and "overlay" display the layer over the content. **Dismissible**, specifies whether the panel can be closed by clicking outside onto the page.

## Default Mode

### Relative horizontal / vertical position

Instead of using absolute coordinates, the position of the layer will now be relative to the page size. This property only has effect when the page is displayed in the browser!

### Relative horizontal / vertical sizing

Instead of using absolute dimensions, the width/height of the layer will now be relative to the page size. This property only has effect when the page is displayed in the browser!

### Right

Sets the position of the object relative to the right edge of the page. This will replace the 'left' attribute.

### Bottom

Sets the bottom position of the object in relation to the bottom of the page. This will replace the 'top' attribute.

### Alignment

Specifies the alignment of the content of the layer if Relative horizontal sizing is enabled.

- **Left**  
The content will be left aligned (default).
- **Center**  
The content will be centered.
- **Right**  
The content will be right aligned.
- **Center in browser window (floating full screen only)**  
This option will center the content both horizontally and vertically in the viewport. This option is only useful for floating full screen mode. Note that when the viewport is smaller than the content then the browser will add scrollbars! To prevent this, you can add breakpoints to optimize the layout for smaller viewports.
- **Stretch content (DEPRECATED, please use layout grid instead!)**  
This will position and size child object relative to the layer.

## Dividers

Shape dividers are SVG based shapes that can be used to separate the sections of a page.

There are more than a dozens shapes you can choose from, but you can also add custom shape SVG files. Shapes dividers can be added at the top or bottom (or both) of a layer. The **Orientation** property determines which side is currently edited. For example, if you want to set a divider at the bottom first select 'bottom' and then set the properties. If the type is set to none, the divider will be disabled. The color specifies the color of the shape. The width specifies the width in percentages, this can be useful if you only want to display a smaller part of the shape, for example 200%, clips the left and right part of the shape. The height is in pixels. Shapes can be flipped horizontally/vertically. This makes it possible to use shapes that were designed to be used at the top, also at the bottom (flip vertically). The arrangement property controls whether the shape will be displayed underneath the content or on top of content.

Shapes dividers are SVG files and are stored in the folder 'dividers' of the application folder.

Online tutorial: [https://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/shape\\_dividers.html](https://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/shape_dividers.html)



## **Rollover Layer**

A RollOver Layer works just like the RollOver image, but instead of just images you can now use any type of objects. In addition to fixed mode (where you can place object anywhere you want), the object also supports floating mode so it can be used in Layout grids.

## Layout Grid

The Layout Grid can be used to create flexible multi column layouts that automatically adapt to the screen size. A grid can have up to 12 columns, with sizes in percentages. Objects that are dragged onto a grid will automatically become floating, which means that they are placed next to each other (from left to right) depending on the available space. If the object does not fit on the current row then it will be wrapped to the next row. Some objects (like images, text, blog, photo gallery) can be full width, so they always take up the entire row and stretch or shrink when the page size changes. For smaller (mobile) screens all columns are stacked based on the defined breakpoint. This is a great new way to create flexible and responsive (Bootstrap-like) layouts!



### Layout

The grid can be configured as fixed or fluid layout. A fixed grid will have fixed columns based on the design time width of the grid. The layout will be centered in the viewport. A fluid grid uses the full width of the browser window and all columns will be resized accordingly.

### Gutter Width

The gutter width specifies the spacing on each side (left/right) of a column.

### Padding

Padding (top/bottom) can be used to create spacing at the top or bottom of the layout grid.

### Breakpoint

The breakpoint specifies at which viewport width when the layout will be switched to mobile/stacked layout.

### Maximum Width

Specifies the maximum width of the layout grid in the browser window. This can be useful to prevent items from being stretched to wide. If the browser window is wider than the specified width, then the grid will be centered.

### Column Height

The column height specifies whether the height of the grid columns is variable, fixed or full screen.

- Auto  
the column height depends on the content inside the grid.
- fixed  
the column height is fixed. If the column has a background then the entire column will be filled.
- 100vh  
the column height is 100% of the viewport height (full screen).

### Semantic HTML5

Specifies whether to use semantic HTML5 tags instead of generic <div>. Available options: <article>, <aside>, <footer>, <header>, <nav>, <section>.

### Grid System

This specifies grid system will be used.

- **Default**  
This will use a Bootstrap-like grid. This grid is compatible with all modern browsers.
- **Flexbox**  
When this option is enabled, the grid will use CSS flexbox layout. This results in cleaner code and also enables some extra features like vertical alignment and entire column will be filled with the background.  
Note that this is a relative new CSS feature, it is not supported by older browsers (< IE11).  
<http://caniuse.com/#feat=flexbox>
- **CSS Grid**  
This will use CSS's native Grid Layout. Note that this is only supported by modern browser. It is not supported by Internet Explorer and older mobile browsers!  
<https://caniuse.com/#search=grid%20layout>

### Overflow

The 'overflow' property determines what happens when columns that do not fit in the current row. For example, if you have more columns in the default view than in breakpoints. Overflow columns can be hidden, 100% or have custom value.

Note: the breakpoint value overrides the overflow value. This means that even if you have set column to overflow they will not be visible for stacked columns (if the viewport is lower than the breakpoint). If you need different behavior then set the breakpoint value to a low level (so it won't be triggered) and implement a breakpoint with custom overflow values.

### Position

The position of a layout grid can either be floating (default) or fixed. When fixed, the layout grid will be fixed to the top of the page. This can be useful to create a page header which is always visible.

In version 15 we have added the following position options:

- **Footer (fixed)**  
This makes it possible to use a the Layout Grid as fixed footer. This also works with master pages.
- **Footer (floating)**  
This makes it possible to use a Layout Grid as floating footer. The layout grid will always be the last item on the page. This also works with master pages.
- **Sticky**  
A sticky Layout Grid is treated as relatively positioned element until it reaches the top, at which point it is sticks to the top. Supported browsers: <https://caniuse.com/#feat=css-sticky>

### Adding objects

To add objects to the layout grid, simply drag & drop the object inside a column. The column will highlight to indicate where the object will be added. Note that the mouse cursor needs to be inside the column.

Related online tutorials:

[http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/layoutgrid\\_part1.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/layoutgrid_part1.html)

[http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/layoutgrid\\_part2.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/layoutgrid_part2.html)

[http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/layoutgrid\\_advanced.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/layoutgrid_advanced.html)

#### Notes:

Some objects cannot be part of a layout grid because they cannot be stretched automatically. For example: Layers, Forms, Tabs, Accordion. This behavior may change in future updates.

Although you cannot drag a form to a layout grid, the grid itself can be a form!

Also, a Layer and Carousel can be set to 'floating', so they can be used together with layout grid on the same page.

Do not use 'Center in browser window' (page properties). This option should only be used for fixed content.

You cannot change the size or position of the layout grid. The grid's size depends on its contents. The grid's position is 'floating' and it will be automatically positioned after the previous floating object.

You can set the background of individual columns in the properties: Select the column and click 'Edit'. Note however that the background will only be applied when the column has content. If the column has empty space, then this space will not have a background. This is standard HTML/CSS behavior. As a workaround, you can enable the option 'Fixed height' which will give the columns a fixed height.

Master frames and master objects cannot be used in combination with the Layout Grid. Master frames/objects were designed to be used with fixed layout only.

## Flex Container

Flexbox is a new CSS layout mode that introduces a powerful way to lay out, align and distribute objects. Flexbox consists of flex containers and flex items.

Flex items (the objects inside a flex container) can be laid out horizontally or vertically, aligned and distributed in various ways. It is also possible to stretch or shrink objects to fill the available empty space. Besides the settings in the flex container, each object also has its own flexbox settings which can be set via Menu->Arrange->Flexbox.

### Flex Direction

The flex-direction property specifies the direction of the flexible items inside the flex container.

- **row**  
The default value of flex-direction is row (left-to-right, top-to-bottom).
- **row-reverse**  
The flex items will be laid out right to left.
- **column**  
The flex items will be laid out vertically.
- **column-reverse**  
Same as column, but reversed.

Note that if you change the direction of the page in the Page Properties to right-to-left (rtl) then all directions will be reserved!

### Flex wrap

The flex-wrap property specifies whether the flex items should wrap or not, if there is not enough room for them on one flex line.

- **nowrap**  
The flexible items will not wrap.
- **wrap**  
The flexible items will wrap if necessary.

### Justify content

The justify-content property horizontally aligns the flexible container's items when the items do not use all available space on the main-axis.

- **flex-start**  
Items are positioned at the beginning of the container.
- **flex-end**  
Items are positioned at the end of the container.
- **center**  
Items are positioned at the center of the container.
- **space-between**  
Items are positioned with space between the lines.
- **space-around**  
Items are positioned with space before, between, and after the lines.

### Align items

The align-items property vertically aligns the flexible container's items when the items do not use all available space on the cross-axis.

- **flex-start**  
Items are positioned at the top of the container.
- **flex-end**  
Items are positioned at the bottom of the container.
- **center**  
Items are positioned at the center of the container (vertically).
- **stretch**  
Items are stretched to fit the container.

### Align content

The align-content property modifies the behavior of the flex-wrap property. It is similar to align-items, but instead of aligning flex items, it aligns flex lines.

- **flex-start**  
Lines are packed toward the start of the flex container.
- **flex-end**  
Lines are packed toward the end of the flex container.
- **center**  
Lines are packed toward the center of the flex container.
- **space-between**  
Lines are evenly distributed in the flex container.
- **space-around**  
Lines are evenly distributed in the flex container, with half-size spaces on either end.
- **stretch**  
Lines stretch to take up the remaining space.

### Size

The size mode determines whether or not the height of the container will be included.

- **undefined**  
When the size is undefined then the height will be determined by the flex items (content).
- **fixed**  
When the size is fixed then the design-time height will be used. This can be useful if you want to vertically align objects.

### Maximum width

Specifies the maximum width of the flex container in the browser window. This can be useful to prevent items from being stretched to wide. If the browser window is wider than the specified width, then the flex container will be centered.

Related tutorial:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/flexbox.html>

## Flex Grid

The Flex Grid is a new way of creating flexible layouts based on CSS Grid Layout ([https://www.w3schools.com/css/css\\_grid.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/css/css_grid.asp)). The CSS grid layout allows web developers to create complex responsive web layouts more easily and consistently across browsers. 'CSS Grid Layout' is a two-dimensional grid system that is native to CSS. It does not rely on floats or other hacks. This results in clean code and reliable code.

Note: To prevent confusion with the existing (Bootstrap-based) 'Layout Grid' object, we have named the new object 'Flex Grid', because it's a combination of CSS Grid Layout and Flexbox.

The idea behind the Grid Layout is to divide a webpage into columns and rows. The columns and rows have named areas where you can drag & drop objects to. The definition of the layout can be different in breakpoints. Each grid area supports its own padding, (flexbox) alignment, border and background styling.

The Flex Grid has a grid editor so you can visually define the layout (grid areas) and behavior of the grid.

### Easy Mode

Many users have asked an easier way to control the flexgrid without having to deal with flexbox. In "Easy Mode, the flexgrid behaves just like the Layout grid.

To make this possible, Easy mode will automatically set the following settings:

- block elements (full width = true) will be set to flexgrow=1, flexshrink=1, flexbasis=100%
- inline-block (full width = false) will be set to flexgrow=0, flexshrink=0, flexbasis=empty
- Each flex item will be set to:
  - flex direction = row
  - wrap mode = wrap
  - justify content will be replaced with horizontal alignment: left / center / right
  - align-items will be replaced with vertical alignment: top / middle / bottom
  - align-content: not used

Note that you can always switch back to 'advanced mode' in case you do know how to use flexbox and need more control.

### Grid Editor

Double click the flex grid to open the grid editor.

#### Columns / Rows

Specifies the number of rows / columns in the grid.

#### Column / Row gap

Specifies the size of the gap between the rows / columns in a grid layout.

#### Maximum width

Specifies the maximum width of the flex grid in the browser window. This can be useful to prevent items from being stretched to wide. If the browser window is wider than the specified width then the grid will be centered.

### Examples

This drop down menu has a few example layouts, which can be used as template for your own layouts. Selecting an item in the list will overwrite the current settings.

The following properties will be displayed depending on the current selection in the grid editor.

### *Item Properties*

Clicking a cell inside the grid will display the properties of the selected area (header, footer, sidebar etc).

#### **Name**

Specifies the name of the selected area. This name must be unique for each area.

For example: header, footer, sidebar, content, navigation.

Only contiguous grid cells can have the same name. So, there cannot be two sidebars (left / right) with the same name. A grid item can also be empty. To create an empty grid item, use a dot as name.

#### **Column start**

Specifies on which column-line the item will start.

#### **Column end**

Specifies on which column-line the item will end. This value must be greater than the start value.

#### **Row start**

Specifies on which row-line the item will start.

#### **Row end**

Specifies on which row-line the item will end. This value must be greater than the start value.

#### **Align Content, Align Items, Justify Content, Flex Wrap, Flex Direction**

Basically, each grid item is a flex container, so it supports the same alignment properties as the Flex Container object! For a description of these properties please see: Flex Container.

Related tutorial: <http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/flexbox.html>

#### **Show Labels**

Specifies whether to display the names of the grid items in the workspace. This does not affect the published page.

### *Column Properties*

Clicking in the horizontal header of the grid will display the properties of the selected column.

The width of the column is either a single value or a range (min/max). Enable `useminmax()` to activate the range.

Sizes can be set in pixels, percentages or the 'fr' unit. The Min value can have a different size unit as the Max size. For example, the minimum value can be in pixels and the maximum value a flex factor (fr).

'fr' stands for 'fraction of available space'. You can think of this as percentages for available space after you've taken off fixed-sized and content-based columns/rows. This allows you to create layout that previously were not possible with standard HTML/CSS! For example, when using 1fr, 40px, 20%, the right column is 20%, the center column is 40px and the remain space (left column) is used by 1fr. The row height is usually defined in 'pixels' or 'auto', where the height is defined by the content.

#### **Move Left**

Move the selected column to the left.

#### **Move Right**

Move the selected column to the right.



### ***Row Properties***

Clicking in the vertical header of the grid will display the properties of the selected row.

The height of the row is either a single value or a range (min/max). Enable useminmax() to activate the range.

Sizes can be set in pixels, percentages, the 'fr' unit or auto.

The row height is usually defined in 'pixels' or 'auto', where the height depends on the content.

#### **Move Up**

Move the selected row up.

#### **Move Down**

Move the selected row down.

Related online tutorials:

[http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/flexgrid\\_part1.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/flexgrid_part1.html)

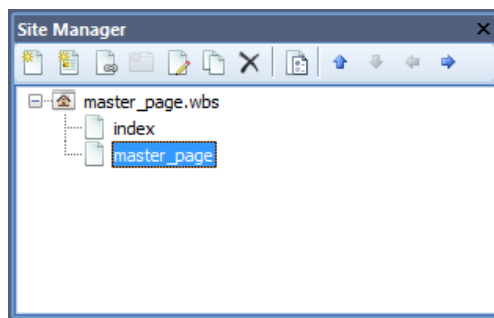
[http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/flexgrid\\_part2.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/flexgrid_part2.html)

## Embedded Page

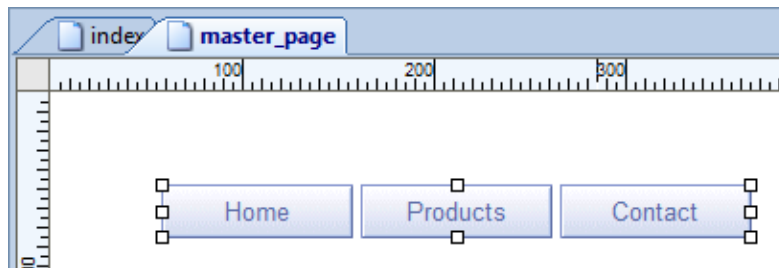
Embedded Page (also known as 'Master Objects') is a useful feature, which allows you to re-use objects from another page (from your web site) in the current web page. An embedded page is basically a pointer to the objects of another page (e.g. the 'Master Page'). These objects will be embedded in the page exactly as they are on the original page. You can even use multiple master page objects on a single page! Let's say you have a certain layout which is the same for all your pages and you don't want this copy/paste it between all your pages; then simply create the layout once in page and insert the layout of that page in all your other pages using the embedded page object. When you want to update the layout, you will only have to do this once in the original page.

Here is an example:

1. Create a new website, Web Builder automatically add the first page called 'index'.
2. Insert a new page using the Site Manager and rename it to 'master\_page'.

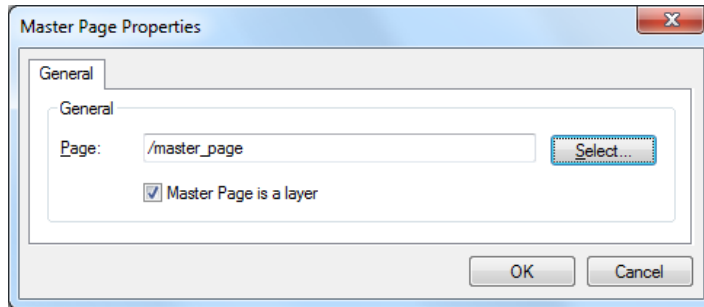


3. Now let's add a navigation bar to the master page. Insert->Navigation->Navigationbar.



4. Switch back to the index page (click on the index tab) and insert a 'Embedded Page' object.

- Double click the object you have just inserted to select a page. Next click the Select-button to display the Select Page window and choose master\_page from the list. Click OK to return to the page.



You will notice that the navigation bar of your master\_page now has become a part of the index page. If you go back to the master page and you modified something in that page, it automatically is updated in the index page as well. Of course, this feature is not limited to navigation bars only; you can add any element to the master page.

#### Notes:

- Place all objects on the master page aligned to the left and top border, so you do not have any margins.
- If you use the master\_page only for master page purposes and not as standalone page, you can enable 'Don't Publish this page' in Page Properties, so the page won't be published when the entire website is published.
- In contrast to inline frames, when using the Embedded Page object, all objects from that page are merged in the current page as if they are really a part of the page. You must however edit them in the master page.
- Embedded Page objects do not clone the properties of a page! Only objects on the master page will be cloned.
- Since the objects are cloned "AS IS", make sure the IDs of objects on the master page are unique. You can change the ID in the Properties Inspector. It's good practice to give them a prefix, like 'master\_'. This will prevent duplicated IDs on a page.
- Forms do not work on a master page.
- Layer can be used on a master page. However, you cannot use internal links on that layer.
- The embedded page should be in the same folder as the pages than are using it. This is especially important if you are using internal links, because the links will be relative to the master page so if the page is in another folder then they are not valid.
- The option 'Use hover state style to indicate the current page' in navigation tools will not work in combination with embedded pages, because there will be only one set of images for that object. The same images will be used on all pages.

#### Embed as a layer

When the "Embed as a layer" is selected, all of the elements that make up the master page are, in fact, on a layer. This layer will block access to any page elements "beneath" it (in the z-order). If the master objects layer is on top of a button or link, visitors to your site will not be able to click on the button or link even if it is visible.

When the "Embed as a layer" box is unchecked, the elements that make up the master page are inserted as individual objects on the page (not on a layer). You can then access any objects "beneath" the embedded objects (as long as they are visible).

## Content Place Holder

The Content Place Holder object should be inserted on a Master Frame page. It defines where the content of the page will be inserted.

### Overflow

Specifies what will happen if the content of the page is larger than the size of the content placer holder.

- **Expand**  
The place holder will automatically expand so that the content will fit without the need for scrollbars. All objects below and on the right side of the place holder will be repositioned.
- **Hidden**  
Content that does fit inside the place holder will be hidden.
- **Scroll**  
Scrollbars will be added if the content does not fit inside the place holder.

### Align

Specifies how the content of the page will be aligned inside the place holder if it's smaller than the size of the content place holder.

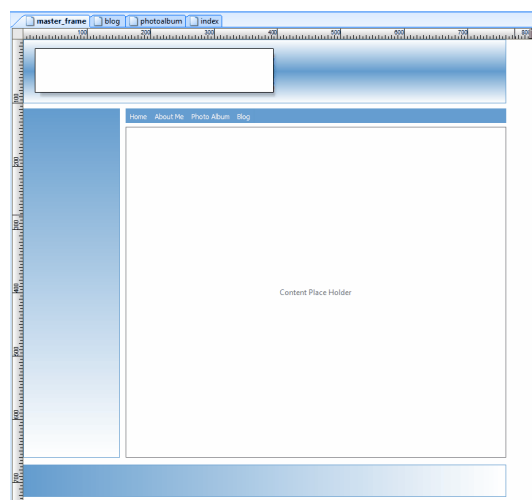
## Master Frames

A Master Frame is a design concept where your website has a constant frame and only the inner part of the pages changes. In WYSIWYG Web Builder you only have to design the frame once and then reuse it in all other pages. You can even automatically expand the layout if the content is larger than the content place holder! If the content is smaller than the place helper there is also an option to center it in the area.

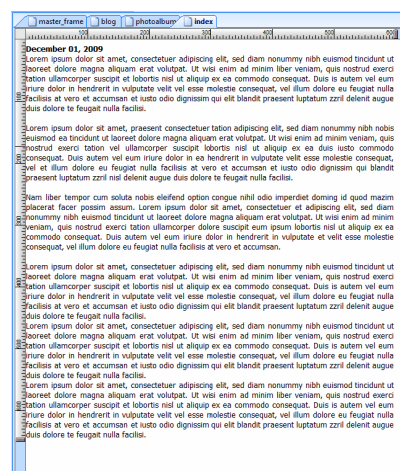
A master frame page can be any page in your website. To indicate the position where the content of the master frame must go, you must insert a Content Place Holder object to the master frame page. During preview/publish this content place holder will be replace with the actual content of the page.

To indicate that a page must use the master frame, you must configure it in the Miscellaneous settings of the Page Properties.

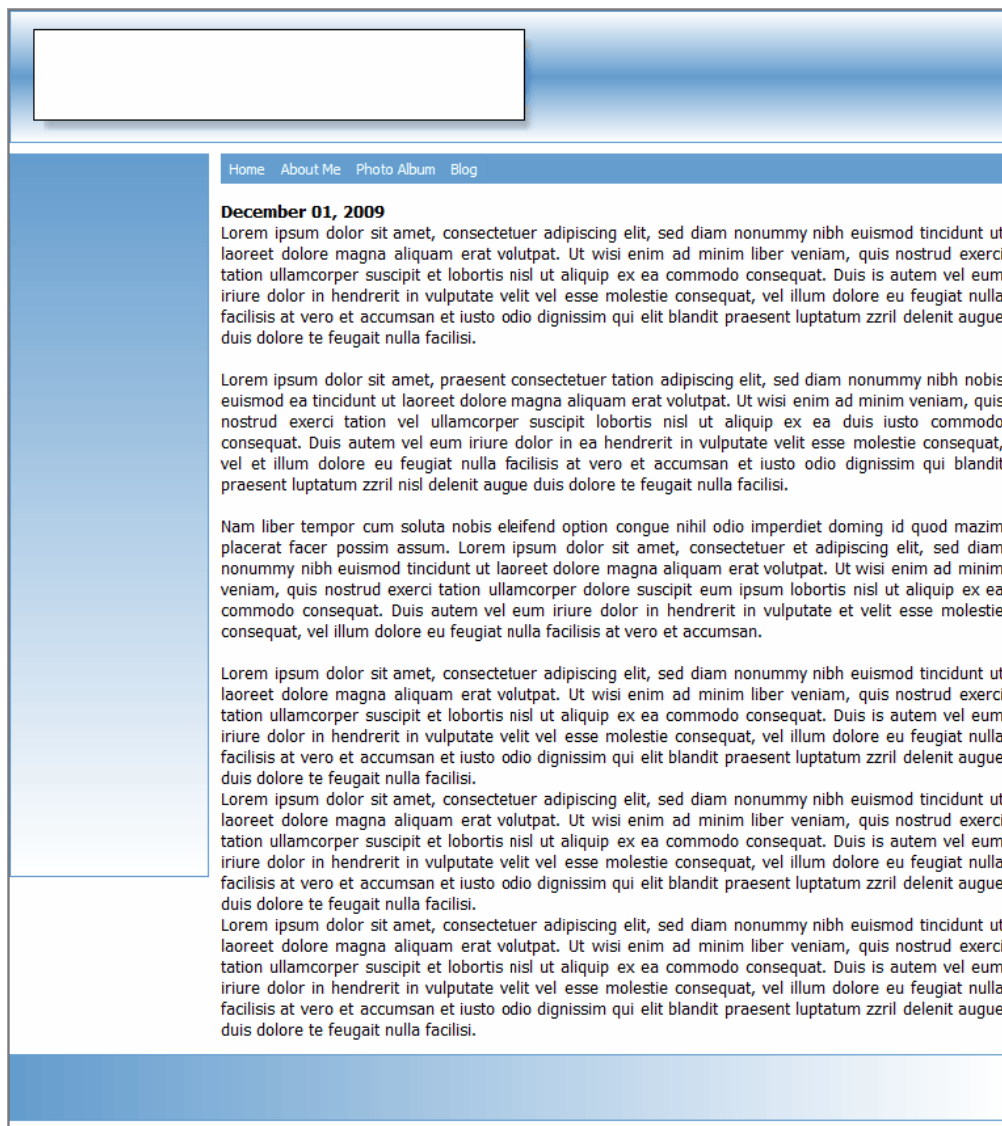
The master frame and content page will be merged into one page when it is preview/published. Note that the footer has been automatically repositioned because the page content was larger than the content place holder! All objects below and at the right side of the content place holder object can be repositioned automatically. You can also select to display scrollbars instead.



Master Frame with Content Place Holder



Page Content



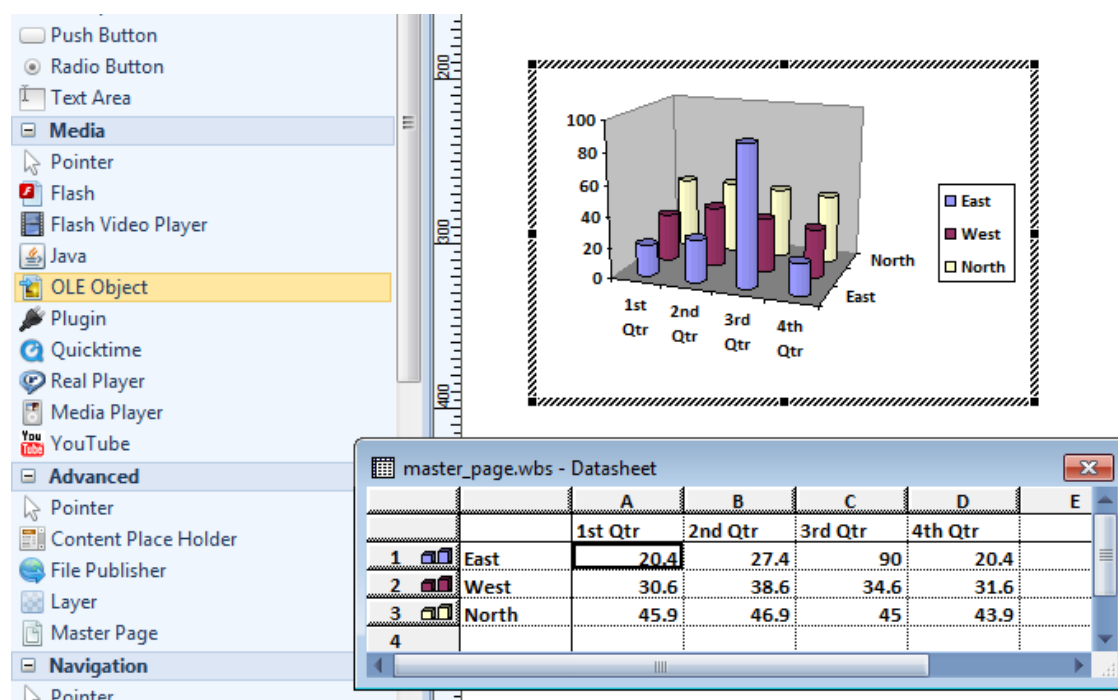
**Result in browser window, the master frame merged with the content of the page.**

Notes:

- The objects on a master frame are cloned "AS IS", so make sure the IDs of objects on the master page are unique.
- You can change the ID in the Properties Inspector. It's good practice to give them a prefix, like master\_, this will prevent duplicated IDs on a page.
- We do not recommend using a master frame as part of another master frame to prevent infinite loops.
- The option 'Use hover state style to indicate the current page' in navigation tools will not work in combination with master objects, because there will be only one set of images for that object. The same images will be used on all pages.
- The master frame should be in the same folder as the pages than are using it. This is especially important if you are using internal links, because the links will be relative to the master frame so if the page is in another folder then they are not valid.

## Embedded OLE Object

You can use linking and embedding to exchange information between documents created in different programs.



Embedding means inserting information, such as text or a graphic, into another document in another program. The embedded information, or object, becomes part of the new document. To edit an embedded object, double-click it; the program in which the object was created opens. When you finish editing the object and return to your document, the document reflects all of the changes you've made; but, the original object remains unchanged.

Linking means inserting information, such as spreadsheet data, that retains a connection to the information stored in another file. Use linking when you want the information to be updated dynamically as the data in the source file changes. To link selected information, use Copy and Paste Special . Some programs do not support linking.

Use embedding when you want to edit the information separately from the source file or if you think the source file will be unavailable.

When you publish a page, which includes an embedded OLE object, Web Builder generates each object as a .gif file. So, the data becomes static once it is published.

**Tip:** If you double click the object while holding down the CTRL key, it will open the embedded application in a new window.

## Notes

'Notes' is a design-time only object. It's an easy way to 'drop' notes/comments on the page. For example, to include notes for another designer or other reminders.

The object supports the same formatting as the Text object. However, the content of the object will not be included on the published page. You can quickly show/hide all notes with the 'Notes' option in the view menu.

## Page Footer

The Page Footer can be used to add a full width footer to your website. Basically, this object is a simplified layer, so most settings are identical and other objects can be dragged on top of this object to make them part of the footer. The footer will always be displayed at the bottom of the page.

### Mode

Specifies the footer mode.

- **Default**  
The footer will be positioned at the bottom of page. Note that this is not necessarily the bottom of the browser window.
- **Fixed**  
The footer will be fixed at the bottom of the browser window.
- **Fullscreen**  
The footer will be hidden by default and become visible when the user moves the mouse over the footer. So, the footer is only visible when needed. This mode also supports animations to slide or fade the footer into view. The animation can be synchronized with the header animation so both header and footer show/hide at the same time.
- **Floating**  
The position of the footer will depend on other floating objects (like layers), but it will always be at the bottom.

### Stack Level

Specifies the stack level of the footer relatively to the page content. The footer can either be 'In front of the content' or 'Behind the content'.

Styling, alignment and other options are the same as for the Layer object.



## Page Header

The Page Header can be used to add a full width header to your website.

Basically, this object is a simplified layer, so most settings are identical and other objects can be dragged on top of this object to make them part of the header.

The header will always be displayed at the top of the page.

### Mode

Specifies the header mode.

- **Default**  
The header will be positioned at the top of page. Note that this is not necessarily the top of the browser window.
- **Fixed**  
The header will be fixed at the top of the browser window.
- **Fullscreen**  
The header will be hidden by default and become visible when the user moves the mouse over the header. So, the header is only visible when needed. This mode also supports animations to slide or fade the header into view.
- **Floating**  
The position of the header will depend on other floating objects (like layers), but it will always be at the top.

### Stack Level

Specifies the stack level of the header relatively to the page content. The header can either be 'In front of the content' or 'Behind the content'.

Styling, alignment and other options are the same as for the Layer object.


## Wrapping Text

One of the most requested features is the possibility to wrap text around images and other objects. Unfortunately, this functionality is very complicated to implement because the size and position of text is usually not exactly the same in different browsers.


The results with standard HTML/CSS are unpredictable and not what-you-see-is-what-you-get. Although future versions of HTML/CSS will support more flexibility, so we decided to simulating the wrapping functionality for now and when browsers are ready for it we will convert it to the official standard.

'Wrapping Text' is an object container (just like a layer and form) with text. By default, the text will fill the entire box, but when you drag & drop objects inside the 'Wrapping Text' object then the text will wrap around it!


All text will have the same formatting which can be configured in the Style properties. Because not all fonts behave the same way in different browsers, we have added a 'font fine-tune' option which allows you to fine-tune the size of the font for the best results. Make sure you test this in all browsers!




Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi.



Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi.



Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi.



Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi.

### Line-height

Specifies the line spacing between lines.

## Layout

The Layout specifies how child elements are positioned inside the container.

- **absolute**

the placement of child elements is done with absolute positions, they can be placed anywhere inside the container. In 'absolute mode' the Wrap Text object cannot be used in flexible layouts, because all sizes/positions are fixed!

Note: When this object was designed its behavior was inspired by CSS exclusions. Unfortunately, most browsers still do not support this functionality so WWB simulates the behavior by using absolute positions for text segments.

- **floating**

the placement of child elements is floating, starting at the top left (or top right) of the container. This makes it possible to wrap text around images or other objects in flexible layouts. In 'floating mode', the Wrap Text object can be used in layout grids or flex box.

- **shape**

This option adds experimental support for CSS's shape-outside. This will wrap the text around the outline of a single, transparent image or shape. This makes it possible to wrap text around complex objects rather than simple rectangular boxes.

'shape mode' was designed to work with 1 child elements only, because there is no way in HTML to extract the shape from multiple elements. So, the text will only flow around the first element all other elements will be ignored!

Threshold specifies the alpha channel threshold used to extract the shape from the image. The range is 0 - 255. Any pixels whose alpha component's value is greater than the threshold are considered to be part of the shape for the purposes of determining its boundaries.

For example, a value of 128 means that the shape will enclose all the pixels that are more than 50% opaque. The margin lets you adjust the distance between the edges of the shape (the float element) and the surrounding text.

Note: shape-outside requires a modern browsers. It currently works in Safari, Chrome and FireFox, but not in IE/Edge!

Online tutorial:

[https://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/wrap\\_text.html](https://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/wrap_text.html)

## QuickTime

Use this object to add QuickTime media files to your page.

### File

Enter the filename of the movie.

QuickTime media has a .mov or .qt extension.

### Hide

Select this option if you don't want to show the movie, but want to use it only as background sound.

### Controller

Select this option to display a control bar that site visitors can use to start or stop the movie.

### Auto start

To play the movie automatically when the site visitor opens the page, select Auto Start.

### Loop

To replay the movie when it ends, select Loop.

### Keep movie in user's cache

Select this option to store the movie in the cache on the site visitor's system.

If the visitor leaves the page and comes back, the movie doesn't have to be downloaded again because it is already in the system cache.

## Real Player

Use this object to add RealPlayer media files to your page.

### Filename

Enter the filename of the audio or video file.

A RealPlayer media file can have one of these extensions: .ra, .rm, .rv, .rmvb, .rmj, .rms, .ram, .rmm, .rax, .rvx, .rp, .rtx, .rt, .rmx.

### Controls

Sets the visible components of the RealPlayer Plug-in.

ImageWindow	Displays the image window.
All	Displays the basic RealPlayer control panel.
ControlPanel	Displays a compact RealPlayer control panel.
PlayButton	Displays a play/pause button.
PlayOnlyButton	Displays a play button.
PauseButton	Displays a pause button.
StopButton	Displays a stop button.
FFCtrl	Displays a fast-forward button.
RWCtrl	Displays a rewind button.
MuteCtrl	Displays a mute button.
MuteVolume	Displays a mute button and volume slider.
VolumeSlider	Displays a volume slider.
PositionSlider	Displays a clip position slider.
TACCtrl	Displays a clip information field.
HomeCtrl	Displays the Real™ logo.
InfoVolumePanel	Displays presentation information along with the volume slider and mute button.
InfoPanel	Displays the presentation information panel.
StatusBar	Displays the status panel, which shows informational messages.
StatusField	Displays the message text area of the status bar.
PositionField	Displays the position field, which shows the clip's current place in the presentation timeline and the total clip length.

### Console

Sets a console name used to link multiple RealPlayer Plug-in instances. All RealPlayer Plug-ins with the same console name work together. For example, if you have multiple Play and Stop buttons on the same page, the console name would enable them to control the same RealAudio clip. Set this property for each instance of the Play or Stop button you want to link. The console name master links to all instances. The console name unique links to no other instances.

### Autostart

Sets whether or not the RealPlayer Plug-in will automatically start playing once the source data is available.

### Loop

To replay the movie when it ends, select Loop.

### Linking Multiple Controls

The **console** property defines a name that unifies RealPlayer objects so that multiple controls work together.

For example, you could create three separate RealPlayer objects to define an image window, a play button, and a stop button.

By using three different object, you can set the size of each control separately.

To tie controls together, define the same CONSOLE name within RealPlayer, or use one of these predefined names:

\_master links the control to all other embedded controls on the page.

\_unique links the control to no other embedded controls on the page.

You can have multiple console names for separate presentations.

For a page showing two video clips, for example, you can define the console names video1 and video2.

All controls linked by video1 interoperate, as do all controls linked by video2. However, a video1 volume slider, for example, will not affect the volume of a video2 clip.

**Example 1:**

You want to add a video file without any controls to your page

1. Add one instance of the object to your page
2. Specify the filename
3. Set the controls property to ImageWindow
4. Set the console property to video1

**Example 2:**

You want to add a video file with all controls visible

1. Add two instances of the object to your page
2. Specify the filename for both objects
3. Set the controls property of object 1 to ImageWindow
4. Set the controls property of object 2 to All
5. Set the console properties of both objects to video1

**Example 3:**

You want to add a video file with only a playbutton

1. Add two instances of the object to your page
2. Specify the filename for both objects
3. Set the controls property of object 1 to ImageWindow
4. Set the controls property of object 2 to PlayButton
5. Set the console properties of both objects to video1

For more information about the RealPlayer object visit the official website:

<http://service.real.com/help/library/guides/production8/htmlfiles/control.htm>

## Media Player

Use this object to add media files to your page. This is the most common way to add media files to your web page. The Media Player now has built-in support for HTML5 audio/video!

Important note: There is currently no audio/video format which works on all browsers. Make sure you configure alternative formats to support all browsers.

### Type

Specifies the type of media player.

- **Default**  
If this option is selected then the browser will use the default media player as configured in the user's preferences.

Note: In order to play a media file, the visitor of your website must have installed the appropriate browser plug in!

- **HTML5 Audio**  
Use this option if you want to use HTML5 audio.
- **HTML5 Video**  
Use this option if you want to use HTML5 video

### Filename

Specifies the filename or URL of the audio/video to play.

### Autostart

To play the movie automatically when the site visitor opens the page, select Auto Start.

### Hide

If supported, this option will hide the player, so only the sound is played.

### Loop

To replay the movie when it ends, select Loop.

### Show controls

If present, controls will be displayed, such as a play button. The actual appearance of the player depends on the type of browser! Each browser will render the player differently!!!

### Preload media

If present, the video will be loaded at page load, and ready to run. Ignored if "autoplay" is present.

### Mute audio (applies to HTML5 video only).

Specifies whether the audio should be muted.

### Alternative formats (applies to HTML5 video only).

Unfortunately, not all browsers do support the same audio/video formats. There is currently no format which works on all browsers.

So, to ensure the player will work in all browser you can specify alternative formats.

### Poster

Specifies the filename or URL of an image representing the video.

## YouTube

The YouTube object provides an easy way to add YouTube videos to your pages.

### URL

Specifies the URL of the YouTube video.

The URL should look like this: <http://www.youtube.com/v/x-40jgwazk0>

### Show related videos

Specifies whether display a list of related videos.

### Play in High Quality Mode

Enable this option to initially play the video in High Quality Mode when it's available.

### Auto start

To play the movie automatically when the site visitor opens the page, select Auto Start.

### Loop

To replay the movie when it ends, select Loop.

### Enable full screen button.

Enable the 'full screen' button in the player's control bar.

### Hide video control after the video start playing.

The video progress bar and the player controls will slide out of view a couple of seconds after the video starts playing. They will only reappear if the user moves her mouse over the video player or presses a key on her keyboard.

### Aspect ratio

Keep the aspect ratio of the video fixed at 16:9 or 4:3. This is especially useful when the video is party of a Layout Grid, so the video resizes dynamically while keeping the original aspect ratio.

Note: this option is also available for: Vimeo and HTML5 video.

### Custom parameters

Use custom parameters to add extra features which are not implemented in WWB (yet). For a complete list of available options please check the YouTube API documentation:

[https://developers.google.com/youtube/player\\_parameters](https://developers.google.com/youtube/player_parameters).

### Enable JS API

Enables the player to be controlled via JavaScript Player API calls. Only works in modern browsers!

<http://caniuse.com/#search=postMessage>

This option should be enabled if you want to use YouTube events or if you want to control the object via (media) events: play, pause, stop.

## Lightbox

The Lightbox option makes it possible to display a YouTube video in a lightbox (using FancyBox) after clicking on a preview image. You can specify the preview image, lightbox title and width/height of the lightbox.



## Breadcrumb

Breadcrumbs are used to enhance the accessibility of a website by indicating the location using a navigational hierarchy. You can either manually configure all links for the menu or automatically synchronize with Site manager. Also supports FontAwesome icons.



Home / Parent Category / Current Category



 Parent Category Current Category

### Synchronize with Site Manager

When this option is enabled, Web Builder automatically synchronizes the Buttons with the content of the Site Manager. So, if for example you add a new page, then a button is automatically added to the menu. Or if you rename a page the text of the item will also be updated.

#### Level

This value specifies which level of the Site Manager will be used to create the buttons.

##### **First Level**

Includes the 'index' page.

##### **Parent Level**

Include all parents of the current page.

### Synchronize with another menu

Enabling this option will synchronize the links of the menu with the specified menu. This may be useful when you have multiple menus on the page, for example a desktop and mobile menu. So, you will have to change the link(s) only once.

#### Target

Specifies the target window of the links when 'Synchronize with Site Manager' is enabled.

#### Symbol

Use '>>>' for special arrow separator. You can increase the 'padding' to control the sharpness of the arrow. A value of 15 gives pretty good results.

### Use this menu for CMS

Enable this option to use the menu with the CMS tools. Instead of a static menu, the links will be dynamically generated based on the CMS database.

Note that this only works when the page has been published!.

## CSS Menu

This menu is very similar to the Navigation bar with the main difference that this menu does not use any images or JavaScript! Still the CSS menu allows you to create fancy looking menus (glossy, glass, gradients etc) using CSS3 gradients and shadows.



Select **Add** to insert a new button.

Select **Edit** to modify the properties of an existing button.

To remove an item from the CSS Menu select **Remove**.

You can rearrange the item order by using **Move Up** and **Move Down**.

### ScrollSpy

ScrollSpy is a navigation mechanism that automatically highlights the navigation buttons based on the scroll position to indicate the visitor where they are currently on the page.

This feature works in combination with bookmarks. so the link in your menu must point to a bookmark on the current page.

### Affix

The Affix option is often used with navigation menus to make them "stick" at a specific area while scrolling up and down the page.

## Go Menu

You can use the Go Menu component to easily create a drop-down navigation menu, with each menu item corresponding to a single URL or page in your web site. When the user presses the Go button the select link will be activated.



Select **Add** to insert a new item.

**Text:** Text of the item in the list

**URL:** The URL (Internet Address) to which the item will link.

For more information about hyperlinks please read the chapter 'Links' in this document.

Select **Edit** to modify the properties of an existing item.

To remove a button from the Go Menu select **Remove**.

You can rearrange the item order by using **Move Up** and **Move Down**.

### Initial Text

This is the initial text which will be displayed in the dropdown menu.

### Button Text

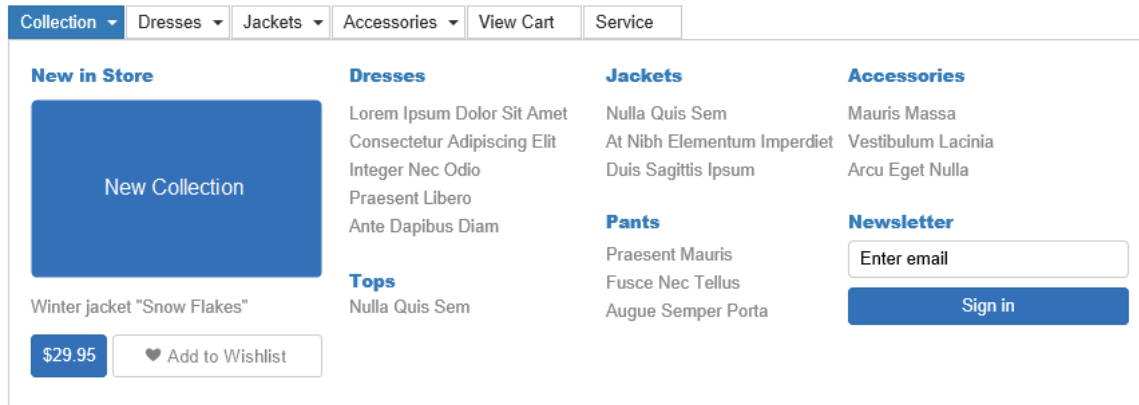
The text of the button

### Do not use button

Select this checkbox to hide the go button. In this case a dropdown menu selection will trigger the link.

## Layer Menu

Layer Menu is an advanced menu where the drop down menus are layers. This is great for creating advanced mega menus with images, text, form or any other object! The drop down layer can be positioned left, centered or at the right of the buttons. It is also possible to make the layer full width of the page.



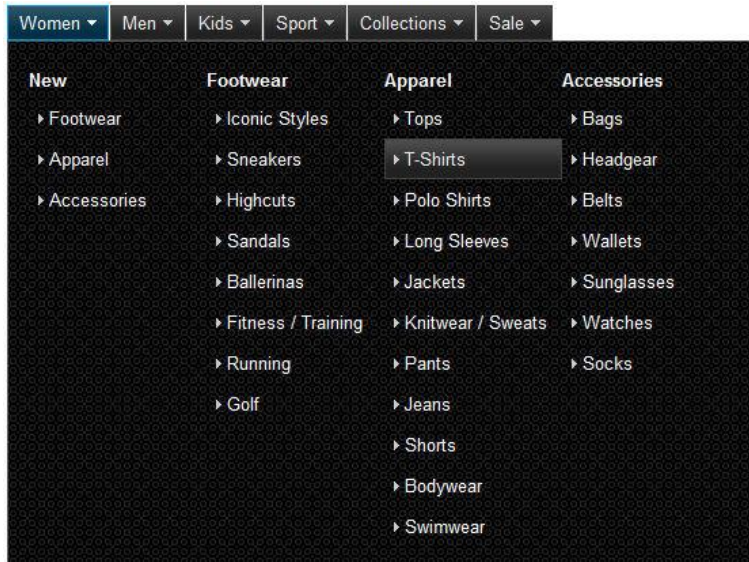
### Notes:

Main buttons can have links, make the layer size smaller than 48 pixel to remove the layer from the item.

- button modes, set spacing to 0
- not recommended for smaller screens.

## Mega Menu

Mega Menus are drop down menus that contain multiple columns of links. They enable access to all links at once, rather than forcing the user to scroll or use sub-menus. One of the unique features of this Mega Menu is that you can set different drop down styles for each button. The drop down can have rows, columns, just a simple menu or no menu at all!



The Mega Menu was created using jQuery and supports the same ThemeRoller themes as the other jQuery based components. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in Theme Manager.

### General

Here you can add, edit and remove menu items to the Mega Menu.

Click 'Add' to insert a new button to the main menu bar. The properties of the button give you access to the submenu.

### Button Text

Specifies the text of the button.

### Menu Layout

Specifies how the items in the submenu will be displayed.

- **Columns only**  
All categories will be displayed in columns (1 row).
- **Rows only**  
All categories will be displayed in rows (1 column)
- **2 columns**  
Categories will be displayed in 2 columns.
- **3 columns**  
Categories will be displayed in 3 columns.
- **4 columns**  
Categories will be displayed in 2 columns
- **Simple menu**  
Displays a simple drop down menu
- **Button only**  
The button has no sub menu.

Links are organized in categories. To add a new category, click the 'Add category' button and specify a name. To add a link to a category, first select the category name and then click 'Add Link'.

You can rearrange the links with the 'Move Up' and 'Move Down' button or by using drag & drop.

### **Style**

The menubar uses the global page theme which can be set in Page Properties->Style.

Other object specific settings can be altered in the 'Style' section of the Mega Menu properties.

The 'Font name' and 'Font Size' properties can be used to override the default font of the theme.

The 'Animation' property enables the fade animation for hiding and showing sub menus.

#### **Button Padding**

Specifies the padding for the buttons. The Button text in combination with the padding determines the size of the button.

#### **Button Spacing**

Specifies the spacing between the button.

#### **Icon**

Specifies the icon displayed on the button.

#### **Icon Offset**

Specifies the position of the icon on the button.

If the value is positive, the icon will be aligned on the left side of the button.

If the value is negative, the icon will be aligned on the right side of the button.

#### **Sub Menu Padding**

Specifies the padding for the sub menu.

#### **Icon**

Specifies the icon displayed on the left side of the links.

#### **RWD**

The breakpoint value in the Responsive Web Design (RWD) tab specifies when the menu will switch from Mega Menu to full width mode.

## Menu Bar

The Menu bar in Web Builder is based on Heng Yuan's JSCookMenu (<http://www.cs.ucla.edu/~heng/JSCookMenu>). This is a very powerful JavaScript-based menu script that can mimic complex menus found in popular GUI applications. Web Builder provides a menu builder so you can easily add menu items, assign the links and set the style for the menu using the style tab.



Select **Add** to insert a new item to the menu bar.  
 Select **Edit** to modify the properties of an existing item.  
 To remove an item from the Menu Bar select **Remove**.  
 The **Insert Split** button inserts a splitter/divider in the menu.

**Layout:** The Menu Bar can be either Vertical or Horizontal.

**Style:** To change the appearance of the menu bar either select a predefined theme or select Default to edit the menu bar colors and text formatting.

Note the effect of the selected theme will only be visible in the browser. So, you'll have to preview or publish the page first.

### Move Up

Move the selected item up amongst its siblings.

### Move Down

Move the selected item down amongst its siblings.

### Move Left

Make the selected item a sibling of its parent.

### Move Right

Make the selected item the child of its preceding sibling.

### Tip:

You can rearrange the items in the menu you can use drag and drop to move the items around.

## Navigation bar

Adding a Navigation Bar in WYSIWYG Web Builder is really easy.  
Just add a few buttons, assign the links and set the style for the buttons.



Select **Add** to insert a new button.  
Select **Edit** to modify the properties of an existing button.  
To remove a button from the Navigation Bar select **Remove**.  
You can rearrange the button order by using **Move Up** and **Move Down**.

### Synchronize with Site Manager

When this option is enabled, Web Builder automatically synchronizes the Buttons with the content of the Site Manager.

So, if for example you add a new page, then a button is automatically added to the Navigation bar.  
Or if you rename a page the text of the button will also be updated.

### Target

Specifies the target window of the links when 'Synchronize with Site Manager' is enabled.

### Level

This value specifies which level of the Site Manager will be used to create the buttons.

- *First Level*  
Creates buttons that will link to the children of the root level.
- *Parent Level*  
Creates buttons that will link to all pages in the level above the current page in the Site Manager.
- *Current Level*  
Creates buttons that will link to the current page and all other pages that share the same parent page.
- *Child Level*  
Create buttons that will link to the children of the current page.

### Synchronize with another menu

Enabling this option will synchronize the links of the menu with the specified menu. This may be useful when you have multiple menus on the page, for example a desktop and mobile menu. So, you will have to change the link(s) only once.

### Resize buttons horizontally

Enable this option to be able to resize navigation bar buttons horizontally. Instead of the original button width, the button will now be stretched.

### Layout Type

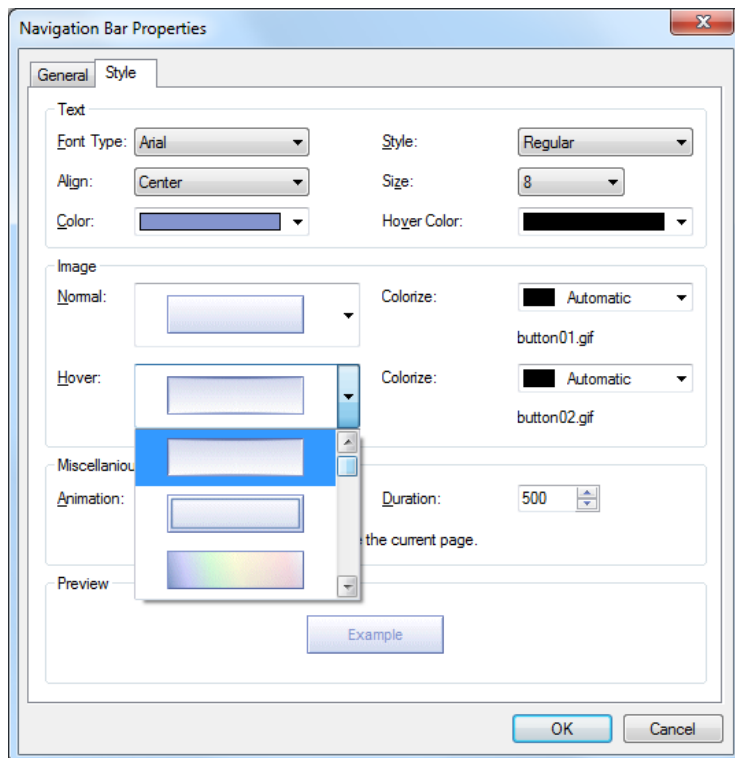
The Navigation Bar can be either Vertical or Horizontal.

### Layout Space

This option specifies the space between 2 buttons.



## Navigation bar Style



### Style

Select one of the available button styles from the drop down menu.

You can select your own images by the using the 'Use Custom Image' option (the first item in the drop down list). By default, Web Builder includes a few example styles, but you can easily add your own styles: Copy your own styles (which are basically just images) to navbar folder:

**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\navbar\**

With the **Colorize** option you can change the color of a button to almost any color!  
This gives you hundreds of additional color variations to choose from!

### Animation

You can choose from several animations for the mouse over effects to give your menu's a modern web 2.0 look and feel.

### Use hover state style to indicate the current page.

To give the visitors of your web site an indication of which page they currently are viewing you can give that page the same style as the hover state.

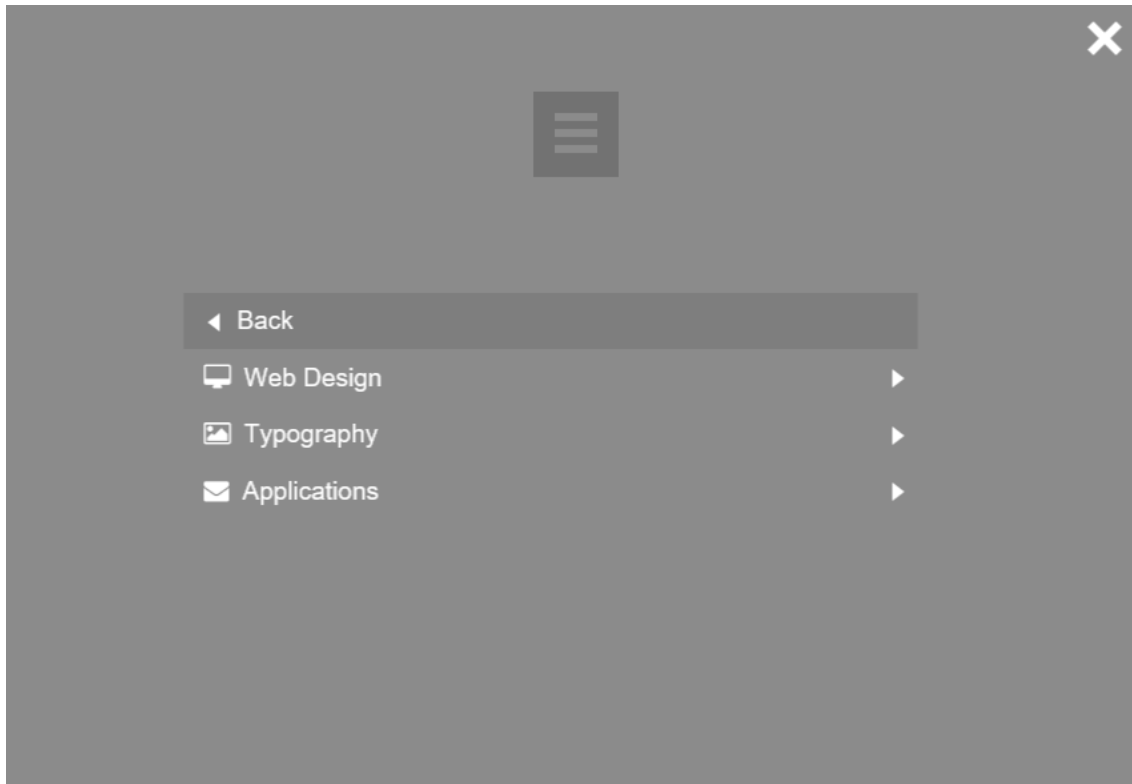
Note that this option does not work when the navigation bar is on a master page, because in that case the images for the navigation bar will be the same for all pages!

### Use page theme

Use the page theme to style the object. More details about themes: Theme Manager.

## Overlay Menu

The Overlay Menu implements a multi-level, responsive full screen menu. With many show/hide animations (genie, sliding door, content push, scale etc.), social icons support and many styling options.

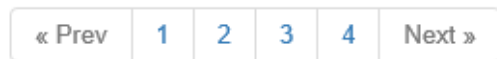


### *How to add social icons?*

There is no dedicated section to configure social icons. Instead, all you will have to do is leave the 'text' field empty and select an icon. This will create a social icon at the bottom of the menu instead of standard menu item!

## Pagination

If you have a web site with lots of pages, you may wish to add the pagination object for easier navigation.



### Synchronize with Site Manager

Automatically generates links with auto numbering and next/previous buttons. Always synchronizes with current level.

- Leave label text empty to remove the button.

This menu also works with the Content Management System.

## Panel Menu

A Panel Menu is initially invisible, but can slide from the right or left side of the page by clicking the menu button. Many modern web sites use this menu type.

The general menu settings are the same as for other menu types like the navigation bar.

### Text

Specifies the text of the menu button. This field can also be used to configure hamburger animations! By using special characters, the button will display a hamburger menu symbol instead of text. When clicked, the bars will animation into a close symbol.

12 different animations are available:

transform:	=
one bar:	—
spinner:	@
rotate:	*
90 degrees:	
arrow left:	<
arrow right:	>
arrow up:	^
arrow down:	v
minus:	-
plus:	+
times:	x

### Icon

Image that can be displayed on the button. The icon position can be used to control the icon position relatively to the text.

### Display

Specifies the relationship of the panel to the page contents. "Push" pushes the page over and "overlay" display the layer over the content.

### Position

Specifies whether the panel menu will be displayed at the left or right side of the page.

### Dismissible

Specifies whether the panel can be closed by clicking outside onto the page.

### Overlay

Use this option to fade the page background (with the specified color and opacity) when the menu is active. When the opacity value is set to '0' then there will be no overlay.

### Width

Specifies the width of the panel. By default, this value is in pixel but you can also use percentage, for example 50%.

The animation can either be none or slide. The slide animation also supports many easing options.

### Overlay

Use this option to fade the page background (with the specified color and opacity) when the menu is active. When the opacity value is set to '0' then there will be no overlay.

**Icon Font Library**

Specifies whether to use FontAwesome Icons or Material Icons in the menu items.

**RWD**

The breakpoint value in the Responsive Web Design (RWD) tab specifies when the menu will switch from panel to full width mode.

**Use this menu for CMS**

Enable this option to use the menu with the CMS tools. Instead of a static menu, the links will be dynamically generated based on the CMS database.

Note that this only works when the page has been published!

***How to add social icons?***

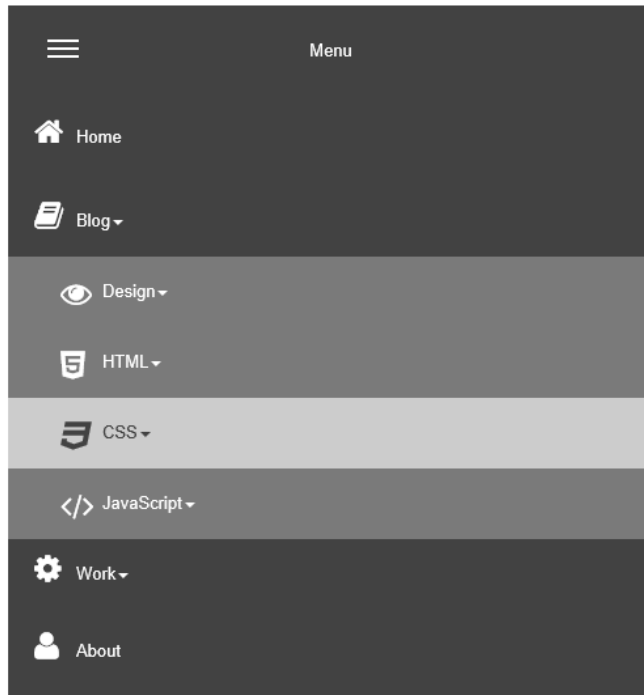
There is no dedicated section to configure social icons. Instead, all you will have to do is leave the 'text' field empty and select an icon. This will create a social icon at the bottom of the menu instead of standard menu item!

***How to add a divider?***

Set the text to '---' (3 dashes) to insert a divider instead.

## Responsive Menu

The Responsive menu is a responsive, multi-level menu optimized for desktop computers and mobile (touch) devices which uses CSS only (no JavaScript). On desktop computers the menu will display a standard drop down menu and on mobile devices it will display a multi-level stacked menu with the common 'hamburger' icon.



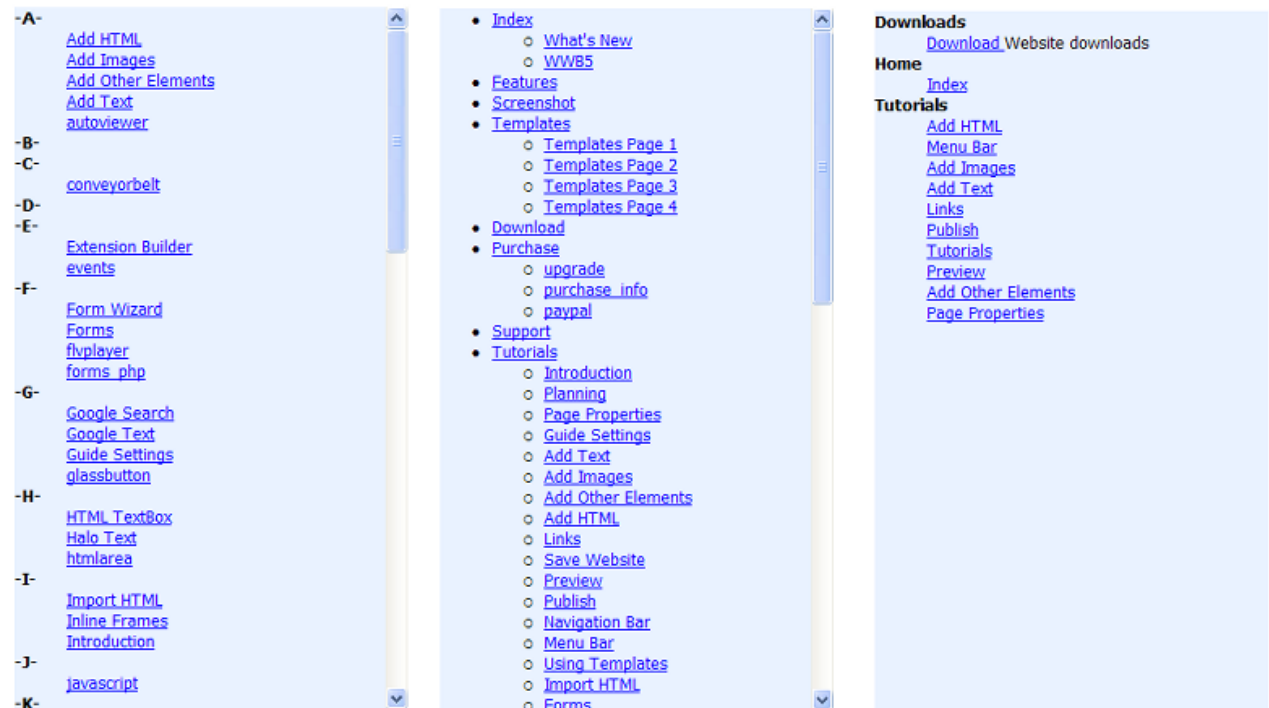
The menu supports FontAwesome icons to give your website a modern look and feel.

### Breakpoint

Specifies the browser width where the menu will switch from desktop to mobile mode.

Most other style and menu related properties are the same as in other menus.

## SiteTree



The SiteTree can display an overview of your website (a Site map) so visitors can quickly find what they're looking for.

**Tip:**

Do not confuse this object with the SiteMap option in the tools menu, which is purely meant for search engines!

The SiteTree will display all pages of your website, with exception of the pages which you have marked 'Don't Synchronize this Page in Navigation Objects.'.

This object has 3 display styles, each giving a completely different overview of your site:

### Alphabetical

Displays an alphabetical list of all the pages of your website.

### Category

Displays all the pages of your website grouped by category.

In order for this style to work correctly, you must first assign one or more categories to a page. You can either do this in the Page Properties (meta tags) or in the General Properties of the SiteTree itself.

### Treeview

Displays all the pages of your website in a tree view based on the structure of the site in the Site Manager.

In the General Properties of this object you can quickly update the display name (is the same as the menu name property in Page Properties), the page description (Description meta tag) and the categories.

You can assign one or more categories to a page (separated with a comma).

## Tab Menu



The Tab Menu is yet another way to implement your website navigation.

The biggest difference between the navigation bar and the tab menu (besides its appearance) is that a tab menu item has 3 states:

1. **Normal**  
Idle state
2. **Hover**  
Mouse over or Roll over state
3. **Activate**  
The selected item is the current page.

### Tab Menu Style

WYSIWYG Web Builder includes several themes you can choose for the appearance of the tab menu.

The default theme is text only and does not use any images. The other themes are defined in the tabmenu folder (**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\tabmenu\**) and usually are made of 2 images. If you like you can modify these theme or create your own themes.

### RWD

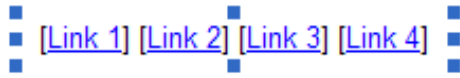
The breakpoint value in the Responsive Web Design (RWD) tab specifies when the menu will switch from horizontal to vertical mode.



## Text Menu

The Text Menu is a text-only version of the Navigation bar.

Text menus can speed up the navigation through your website, because no images need to be loaded first before the user can navigate to another page.



### Target

Specifies the target window of the links when 'Synchronize with Site Manager' is enabled.

### Level

This value specifies which level of the Site Manager will be used to create the items.

First Level      Creates buttons that will link to the children of the root level.

Parent Level    Creates buttons that will link to all pages in the level above the current page.

Current Level   Creates buttons that will link to the current page and all other pages that share the same parent page.

Child Level     Create buttons that will link to the children of the current page.

### Spacing

This setting specifies the space between 2 items.

### Style

#### Font

Font type is the font family of text, such as Comic Sans, Times New Roman, and Courier New.

#### Background Color

Specifies the color of the background. If set to 'Automatic' the webpage background will be used.

#### Link Style

All hyperlinks in your webpage by default use the default HTML link colors (link: blue, visited: purple, active: red). By defining Hyperlink Styles (CCS) you can adjust the colors and formatting of an hyperlink.

Once you have defined a style you can attach it to the Text Menu by selecting it from the **Link Style** dropdown list. Click the **Edit Styles** button to add or modify the hyperlink style sheet.

#### Alignment

Specifies the alignment of the Text Menu.

#### Delimiters

Specify special characters to put before and after the link text. Common characters include {, [ and (.

#### RWD

The breakpoint value in the Responsive Web Design (RWD) tab specifies when the menu will switch from horizontal to vertical mode if the layout type is set to 'Responsive'.

## Banner

A banner is an image that displays the title of a web page. A banner helps visitors understand what the page is about.



### General

#### Banner Text

Text that will be displayed on the banner.

#### Use page title

This option automatically uses the title of the web page as the banner text. Uncheck this if you want to enter custom text.

#### Font Type

Font type is the font family of text, such as Comic Sans, Times New Roman, and Courier New.

#### Text Style

Style of the font such as Bold, Italic or Regular.

#### Text Size

Size of the text.

#### Text Color

Color of the text.

#### Banner Size

The size of the banner. Select one of the predefined sizes or 'Fit to layout rectangle' if you want a custom size banner.

#### Horizontal Alignment

Horizontal alignment of the text.

#### Vertical Alignment

Vertical alignment of the text.

### Style

#### Background effect

You can select from several Fill Effects:

1. Solid Color
2. Gradient
3. Tiled or stretched image.

#### Border size

Specifies the thickness of the border around the banner. Set this to 0 (zero) for no border.

#### Border Color

Specifies the color of the border around the banner.

#### Border Style

Specifies the style (Solid, Circle, Disc, Square or Dash) of the border around the banner.

## *Effects*

### **Enable shadow**

Specifies whether to enable the shadow effect for text.

### **Shadow Offset X**

Horizontal shadow offset

### **Shadow Offset Y**

Vertical shadow offset

### **Shadow Opacity**

Sets the transparency of the shadow.

### **Shadow Color**

Specifies the shadow color

### **Shadow Blur**

Softens the shadow's edges.

### **Reflection**

Specifies the amount of reflection of the text.

### **Reflection Offset**

Specifies the offset of the reflection from the bottom of the text. This value can be negative.

## *Text Animation*

The Banner object can animate the individual characters of the text using built-in CSS3 animations. This makes it possible to create cool introduction to your website.

You can set a different animation for showing and hiding the characters. If you set both animations then both animation will be played continuously. If only the show animation is specified then the animation will play only once on page load.

### **Note:**

Not all animations may be useful for animating characters. For example, animating the border-color will not have any effect on the text or will just look weird...

Also, some animations were designed for showing, while others were designed for hiding. Usually the name of the animation indicates this. For example, 'puff-in' is for showing and 'puff-out' is for hiding. But of course, you can design your own animations with the Animation Manager.

## *Publish*

### **Format**

Specifies the output format of the banner. You can either publish the banner as an image or as standard text with CSS3 styling.

Note however that older browsers do not support text shadow. Also note that reflection is currently not supported by CSS3, so the banner will not look exactly the same as when publish as an image.

## ClipArt



ClipArt uses dingbat fonts and converts them to vector shapes. It has all the features of shapes, but it allows you to insert any type of shape to your page!

You can download thousands of free dingbats fonts from the Internet. Search for 'free dingbat fonts' to find all large collection of new shapes. After you've downloaded one or more files you can copy them to the 'clipart' folder in the Web Builder system folder:

**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\clipart\**

Dingbats fonts have the file extension '.ttf'. There are also many tools available to create your own dingbat collections. The filename of the Dingbats font will be displayed as the category name in the clipart selection.

For more details about the properties of the ClipArt object see **Shapes**.

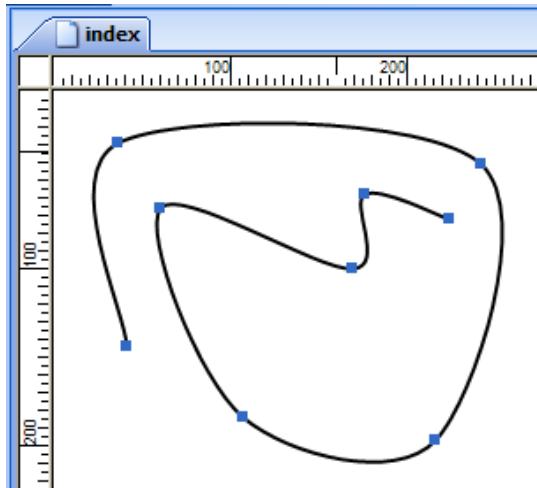
## Curve

The Curve tool lets you draw curved lines.

To draw a curved line:

1. Click the Curve Tool on the Toolbox or click Insert->Drawing->Curve.
2. Click and release the left mouse button where you want the Curve to start, while dragging the mouse press and press/release the mouse button to add points.
3. To end the curve, double click the left mouse button or press the ESC-key.

When the curve is selected, the individual nodes can be changed by dragging them to a new position.



### Alternate text

This text, usually a short description, appears in place of the object in browser when images are unsupported or have been disabled.

### Anti Alias

Enable this option to improve the quality of graphics. It may slow down the performance of the application.

### Fill Effect (Closed Curve only)

Specifies the fill effect of the polygon: Solid, Gradient, Texture, Hatch or Transparent.

### Border Width

Specifies the thickness of the line.

### Border Color

Specifies the color of the line.

### Border Style

Specifies the style of the line (Solid, Dash, Dot, Dash Dot or Dash Dot Dot).

### Link

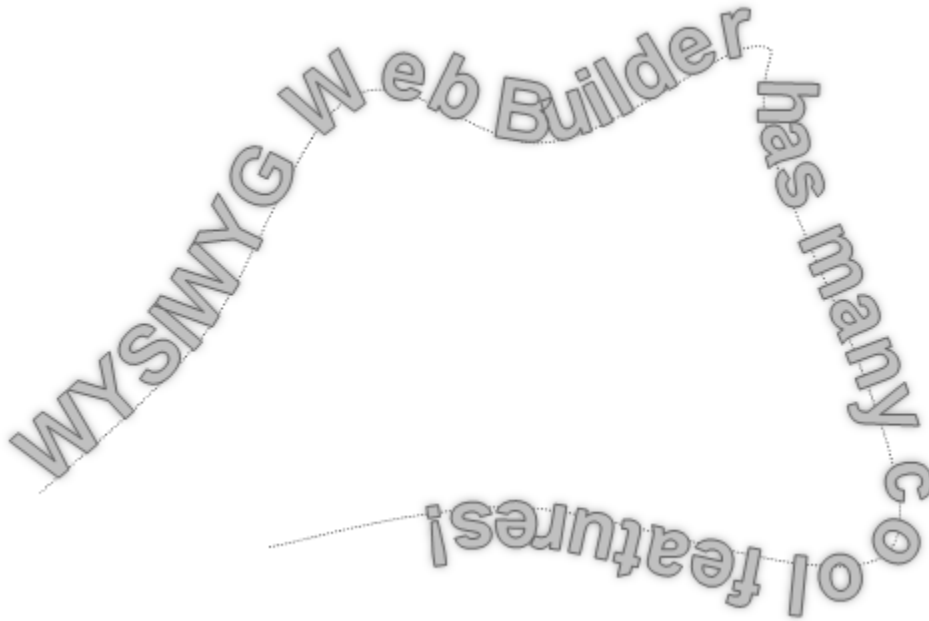
For more information about linking please read the chapter 'Links' of this document.

### Events

For more information about events please read the chapter 'Events' of this document.

**Important note:** The Curve tool is only available on systems with GDI+ installed. Read more about GDI+ in the chapter 'GDI+ Information' of this document.

## Curved Text



With the Curved Text object, you can draw text along an user defined curve.

First you will have to draw a curved line:

1. Click the Curved Text on the Toolbox or click Insert->Drawing->Curved Text.
2. Click and release the left mouse button where you want the Curve to start, while dragging the mouse press and press/release the mouse button to add points.

To end the curve, double click the left mouse button or press the ESC-key.

Then double the Curved Text to edit other properties.

For more information about adding, editing or removing nodes see 'Edit Points' in the Arrange Menu.

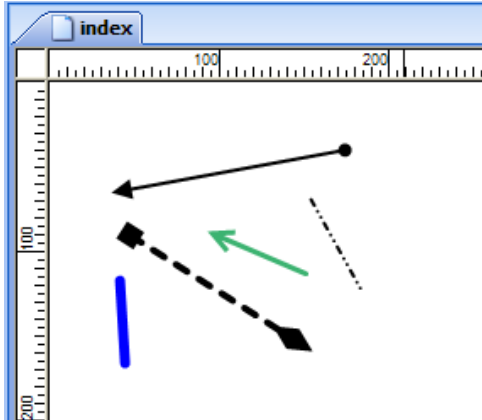
All properties of the Curved Text object are the same as the Shape object.

## Line

The Line tool of WYSIWYG Web Builder gives you much control over its appearance than the standard HTML horizontal line. The Line can be drawn using any angle, color, style and can even have arrows on the start or end of the line!

To draw a line:

1. Click the Line Tool on the Toolbox or click Insert->Drawing->Line.
2. Click where you want the line to start, and hold the left mouse button down as you draw. To end the line, release the mouse button.



### Size

Specifies the thickness of the line.

### Color

Specifies the color of the line.

### Style

Specifies the style of the line (Solid, Dash, Dot, Dash Dot or Dash Dot Sor).

### Arrow Start

Specifies the arrow type of the start of the line (None, Arrow, Circle, Square, Diamond, Stealth or Open Arrow).

### Arrow Start Size

Specifies the size of the arrow.

### Arrow End

Specifies the arrow type of the end of the line (None, Arrow, Circle, Square, Diamond, Stealth or Open Arrow).

### Arrow End Size

Specifies the size of the arrow.

### Alternate text

This text, usually a short description, appears in place of the object in browser when images are unsupported or have been disabled. In some browsers it appears as a ToolTip when you move the mouse over the image.

### Anti Alias

Enable this option to improve the quality of graphics. It may slow down the performance of the application.

### **Connector Type**

Specifies the connector type. Elbow and Curve connector are commonly used in flow charts.

- **Line**  
Draws a straight line.
- **Elbow**  
Draws an elbow line.
- **Curve**  
Draws a curved lined.

### **Connector orientation**

Specifies the connector orientation. Horizontal, Vertical or Auto.

### ***Link***

For more information about linking please read the chapter 'Links' of this document.

### ***Events***

For more information about events please read the chapter 'Events' of this document.

**Important note:** The Line tool is only available on systems with GDI+ installed. Read more about GDI+ in the chapter 'GDI+ Information' of this document.



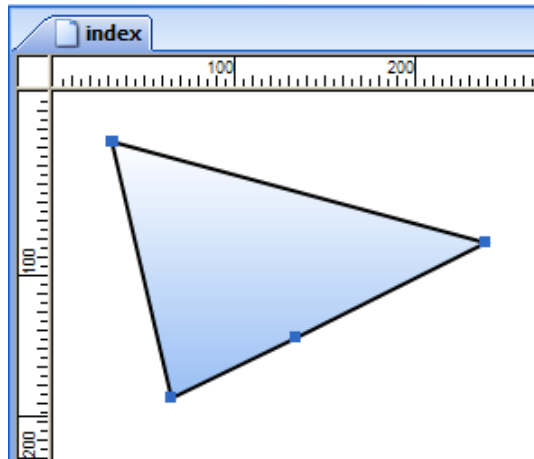
## Polygon

The Polygon tool lets you draw polygons with borders and several filling methods.

To draw a polygon:

1. Click the Polygon Tool on the Toolbox or click Insert->Drawing->Polygon.
2. Click and release the left mouse button where you want the polygon to start, while dragging the mouse press and press/release the mouse button to add points.
3. To end and close the polygon, double click the left mouse button or press the ESC-key.

When the polygon is selected, the individual nodes can be changed by dragging them to a new position.



### Alternate text

This text, usually a short description, appears in place of the object in browser when images are unsupported or have been disabled.

### Anti Alias

Enable this option to improve the quality of graphics. It may slow down the performance of the application.

### Fill Effect

Specifies the fill effect of the polygon: Solid, Gradient, Texture, Hatch or Transparent.

### Border Width

Specifies the thickness of the line.

### Border Color

Specifies the color of the line.

### Border Style

Specifies the style of the line (Solid, Dash, Dot, Dash Dot or Dash Dot Dot).

### Link

For more information about linking please read the chapter 'Links' of this document.

### Events

For more information about events please read the chapter 'Events' of this document.

**Important note:** The Polygon tool is only available on systems with GDI+ installed. Read more about GDI+ in the chapter 'GDI+ Information' of this document.

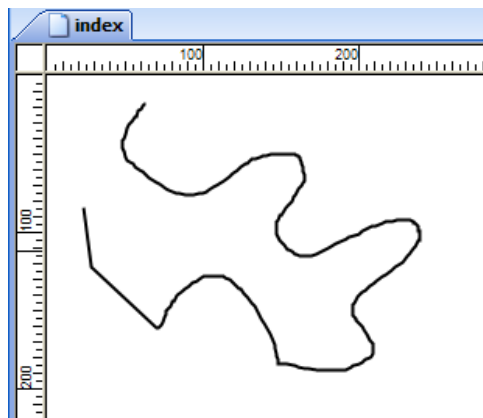
## Scribble

The Scribble tool lets you sketch curved lines and shapes in a freeform way.

To draw a freeform line:

1. Click the Scribble Tool on the Toolbox or click Insert->Drawing->Scribble.
2. Click where you want the line to start, and hold the left mouse button down as you draw. The line will be drawn immediately and follows your mouse movements. Releasing the mouse button will draw a straight line from the point where you released the button to the current mouse position.
3. To end the line, double click the left mouse button or press the ESC-key.

When the line is selected, the individual nodes can be changed by dragging them to a new position.



### Alternate text

This text, usually a short description, appears in place of the object in browser when images are unsupported or have been disabled.

### Anti Alias

Enable this option to improve the quality of graphics. It may slow down the performance of the application.

### Border Width

Specifies the thickness of the line.

### Border Color

Specifies the color of the line.

### Border Style

Specifies the style of the line (Solid, Dash, Dot, Dash Dot or Dash Dot Dot).

### Link

Because the drawing is published as image you can also assign a link to it.  
For more information about linking please read the chapter 'Links' of this document.

### Events

Because the drawing is published as image you can also assign events to it.  
For more information about events please read the chapter 'Events' of this document.

**Important note:** The Scribble tool is only available on systems with GDI+ installed. Read more about GDI+ in the chapter 'GDI+ Information' of this document.

## Shape

The Shape object can be used to 'draw' a shape on your webpage. When you publish a page with shapes, Web Builder generates each shape as a .gif file.



**Type:** Select the type of shape you want to be display on your web page.

- Rectangle
- Round Rect
- Ellipse
- Diamond
- Hexagon
- Octagon
- Arrows
- Signs
- Stars
- Talk Bubbles
- and many more.

Some shapes have a few variants that you can choose from.

To add a border to the Shape, select '**Enable Border**' and specify the border **width** and **color**.

You can select from several Fill Effects:

1. Solid Color
2. Gradient
3. Tiled or stretched image.
4. Transparent
5. Pattern (anti-aliased mode only)
6. Vista Glass (anti-aliased mode only)

### Anti Alias

Enable this option to improve the quality of graphics. It may slow down the performance of the application.

### Inner Shadow

This option will add a bevel effect (inner shadow) to the shape. A Blur value '0' will disable the effect.

#### Note:

If anti alias is disabled it is not possible to set the transparency of the shadow.

### Link

For more information about linking please read the chapter 'Links' of this document.

## Events

For more information about events please read the 'Events' chapter of this document.

## HTML5

Normally shapes will be published as images, for larger shapes this may have some impact on the performance of your website. However modern browsers (FireFox 5, IE9, Safari, Chrome) now have built-in support for alternatives formats like `<canvas>` and `<svg>`.

WYSIWYG Web Builder now enables you to convert your shapes into native HTML5 elements!

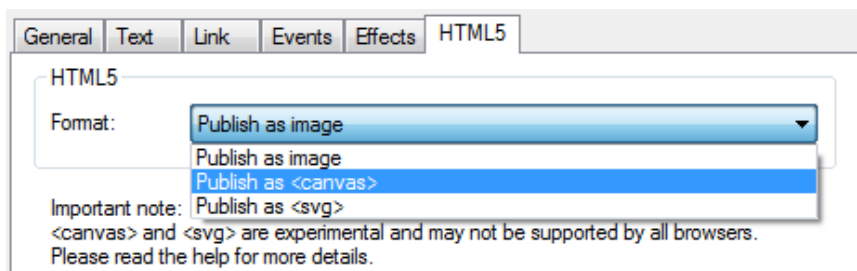
Select 'Publish as **<canvas>**' to output the shape using HTML5's `<canvas>` element. Basically, this generates an complex set of JavaScript calls to draw the shape in the browser.

Select 'Publish as **<svg>**' to output the shape using HTML5's `<svg>` element. This will output SVG instructions for the browser to draw the shape as a vector-based image.

Select 'Publish as **CSS3**' to output the shape using CSS3 styling. This will output a standard `<div>` with CSS3 styling (border and background color) . Note in this mode only rectangle, ellipse and rounded corner shapes are possible, because CSS does not support any other shape types!

Known limitations:

- This is a very new technique and not all WYSIWYG Web Builder shape features are available yet, but we will continue to improve the software when browsers will catch up;)
- Not all gradient effects are supported.
- Text on shape is not supported.
- Dotted and dashed border are not supported for `<canvas>`.
- Shadow and other images effects are not supported.



**Shadow Offset X**

Horizontal shadow offset.

**Shadow Offset Y**

Vertical shadow offset.

**Shadow Opacity**

Sets the transparency of the shadow.

**Shadow Color**

Specifies the shadow color.

**Opacity**

Change the transparency (0 - 100%) of the shape.

***Add text to a Shape***

A new feature in version 5.0 is the ability to add formatted text to a shape!

Now you can create cool logos, banners or even rotate text!

Text can be aligned to any edge of the shape. The available space for text within the shape may vary depending on the type of shape you've selected.

**Note:**

Text will not be visible if the object is transparent!

***Rotation***

To rotate a shape:

1. Select the Rotate tool on the Toolbox or click Edit->Rotate.
2. Click to select the object, hover over one of its handles until you see the rotate pointer.
3. Hold the mouse button down and drag in the direction in which you want to rotate the object, then release. Use the Shift key for 15° rotation intervals.

Notes:

- Rotating large shapes can take a long time.
- Rotating shapes may reduce the display quality of the object.

***Effects***

Just like images you can also apply most effects to shapes, text art and clip art. For more details see Images.

## Blog

The word 'blog' is short for web log. A blog is a journal that's posted on the web for other to read. The Blog object provides an easy way to implement a blog on your website without special requirements on the web server. Unlike its name suggests, the Blog can be used for more than just a blog. It is also a quick way to display all kinds of data in a list or grid.

### General

Comment Text, each blog entry will have a link on the bottom to allow readers to send comments. The default text is 'Send Comments', but you can change this to anything you like. If you leave this field blank, no link will be displayed. Comment Email, specifies the email address where the comments will be sent to. To add a new entry to your Blog, click the Add button. Give your blog entry a title and then type your blog's message in the text area. Optionally you can insert an image and a link to a related web page.

### Pagination

Paginate displays a small subset of the items at any one time, while allowing the user to move through it with navigation buttons. The 'Items per page' property specifies how many items will be displayed per page. Click the Style button to change the appearance of the paginate buttons.

### Order

Specifies the order of the items on the page ('Ascending' or 'Descending').

### Columns

Specifies whether to display the blog items in columns. This option is responsive, so each breakpoint can have a different number of columns.

Related online tutorial:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/blog.html>

### Style

The style page allows you to modify the style of the Blog, each individual item such as Comment, Date, Subject and background can have its own color and font. The Divider image can be used to separate blog entries horizontally.

### Layout

This controls the appearance of the blog items. More than 10 different layouts are currently available. You can also create your own layouts (with HTML/CSS templates). The templates are stored in the folder Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\blog\

### Enable Responsive Fonts

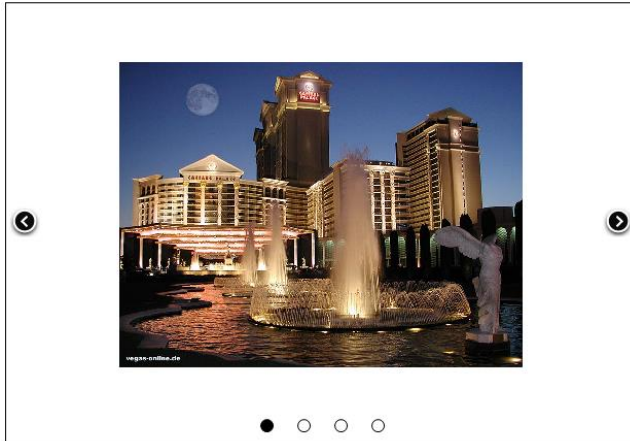
When this option is enabled, the text object can have different font sizes in breakpoints. This can be useful if you need a larger font for smaller screens. Each breakpoint can have a different text size. Note however that when this option is enabled, you can only use one font-family and font-size for the entire text object!

### RSS Feed

Optionally you can enable to generate a RSS Feed for this blog. The RSS Feed Properties are identical to those of the RSS Feed object.

## Carousel

The Carousel object (also known as horizontal sliding panels) displays images or any other objects by scrolling the content from right to left using a smooth sliding animation (with several optional easing effects). Users can step to any specific panel on demand using the pagination icons or browse the carousel sequentially by using the back/next buttons. You can also think of the Carousel as a multiple layer slide show. It's a very effective method to increase the web site usability and engage the user. You probably have seen this effect on many popular websites, such as Apple or Blackberry.



When you first insert the Carousel to your page, you will see a blank area with two buttons and a pagination control. The buttons can be used to go to the next or previous panel. The pagination control displays a 'dot' for each page in the carousel. You can directly jump to a specific page by clicking the dot. The colors and size of the pagination control is configurable and of course you can select your won images for the next/back buttons as well.

Advanced users can even use events to create custom buttons outside of the Carousel!

To add new content the the current page, simply drag and drop objects within the Carousel area. To add objects to another page, first go to the page (either by using the pagination controls or next/back). Another cool feature of the Carousel is support for mobile devices. On the iPhone/iPad/Android you can use slide gestures to switch between pages!

### Pages

This will set the number of pages for the Carousel.

### Pause time

Specify the number of milliseconds to pause before displaying the next panel in the sequence.

### Animation duration

Specifies the duration of the slide animation in milliseconds.

### Easing

You can select from more than 30 easing functions to control the animation process. This option can be used to (for example) create bounce or elastic effects.

### Enable navigation buttons

Specifies whether to display the navigation buttons.

### Previous button

Specifies the image to be used for the 'Previous' button. If you leave this field empty a default image will be used. It is also possible to enter < in the input field. This will use built-in navigation arrows, inspired by Bootstrap-4 Carousel arrows!

**Next button**

Specifies the image to be used for the 'Next' button. If you leave this field empty a default image will be used. Enter > in the input field to use the built-in navigation arrow, inspired by Bootstrap-4 Carousel arrows.

**Margin**

Specifies the margin between the border of the Carousel and the buttons.

**Enable pagination**

Specifies whether to display the pagination controls. The pagination controls will be displayed on the bottom of the Carousel. The user can click the icons to quickly go to the specific panel.

**Color**

Specifies the color of the pagination icons.

**Border color**

Specifies the border color of the pagination icons.

**Size**

Specifies size of the pagination icons.

**Padding**

Specifies the padding around the pagination icons.

**Style**

In this section you can modify the appearance of the object. For more details about object styling please read [Style](#).

**How to control the slides through events?**

You can use the Slideshow Next and Slideshow Previous actions in events to create external navigation.

It's also possible to directly jump to a specific page:

1. Add the Carousel object to your page.
2. Take note of the ID. The default value is 'Carousel1'.
3. Add an image, shape or other object with event support to the page.
4. Open the properties and select the 'Events' tab.
5. Click 'Add' to insert a new event.
6. Select 'Event': OnClick and set the 'Action' to JavaScript function.

To show the dialog enter this JavaScript:

```
$ ( '#Carousel' ) .carousel ( 'goto,1' ) ;
```

where Carousel1 is the ID of the Carousel.

goto,1 jumps to the first slide

goto,2 jumps to the second slide.

etc...

To show the next slide you can also use this JavaScript:

```
$ ( '#Carousel' ) .carousel ( 'next' ) ;
```

To show the previous slide use:

```
$ ( '#Carousel' ) .carousel ( 'prev' ) ;
```





### ***Adding Hotspots***

There are two ways to add hotspots to an image map:

1. Manually entering the coordinates in the hotspot tab of the image map properties
2. Visually modifying the coordinates using the mouse

### ***Manually entering the coordinates***

Open the image map properties and click the Hotspots tab to insert the coordinates of an hotspot.

You can insert three types of hotspots:

1. Circle, here you enter the x and y coordinates of the center and the radius of the circle.
2. Rectangle, here you enter the x (left) and y (top) coordinates and the width and height of the rectangle.
3. Polygon (Irregular Shape), here you enter each point (x, y coordinates) on the polygon.

### ***Visually modifying the coordinates using the mouse***

A more efficient way to modify the coordinates of the hotspots is by visually dragging them.

1. Right click the image map to display the context menu
2. Select the hotspot type you want to insert (Add Circle Hotspot, Add Rectangle Hotspot or Add Polygon Hotspot)
3. A window will popup where you can set the initial coordinates, the URL and alternate text of the area. By default, Web Builder will insert the shape in the center of the image map.
4. After you have clicked OK, the shape will be inserted to the image map, you can now select it and drag it around or change its size using the size handles.
5. To edit or remove the hotspot, right click the area to display the context menu and select Edit Hotspot or Delete Hotspot.

## Unsplash

Browse thousands of free-to-use (\* see license), high quality images from Unsplash directly within WYSIWYG Web Builder.

Unsplash images can be inserted via the Insert Menu. The Unsplash selection dialog supports search and the ability to set the desired size.

There is also a dedicated Unsplash browse button next to the standard image browse button.

When you open the Unsplash insert dialog, it will display a random selection of images.

Enter a one or more keywords in the 'Search' field to display a custom selection. Each request will display 40 images, click the 'More' button to show the next page.

You can also limit the size of the image by specifying the width and height (W and H properties). When the specified size is different than the original aspect ratio then the image will be clipped. This makes it possible to create a square version of the image (eg 250x250).

### Notes:

As specified in the Unsplash guidelines (<https://help.unsplash.com/api-guidelines/unsplash-api-guidelines>), images will be inserted as 'hot links'.

So, the images are loaded from the Unsplash website, they are not uploaded to your website.

By default, Unsplash requests will be made via WYSIWYG Web Builder's Unsplash account. The number of requests per hour is limited to 250 for each user. If need more than 250 requests then you can specify a (private) Access Key (in Tools -> Options), so the application will use your own Unsplash account instead. In that case, all requests will go directly to the Unsplash website instead of via WYSIWYG Web Builder's proxy.

To get an Access Key, you will need to create a developer account on the Unsplash website:

<https://unsplash.com/oauth/applications>

### Disclaimer:

*WYSIWYG Web Builder uses the standard Unsplash API to get the information about the images from the Unsplash website. Like most third party APIs, the Unsplash API is regularly updated. This means that in the future this functionality may suddenly stop working. Of course, we will do our best to make sure the software is always up-to-date, so if Unsplash no longer works then please check the website for an update.*

\* Unsplash license:

<https://unsplash.com/license>

## Photo Gallery

The Photo Gallery object is gives you a tool to create a Photo gallery with only a few mouse clicks.



### Add

Add one or more images to the photo gallery.

### Remove

Remove the selected image(s) from the photo gallery.

### Remove All

Remove all selected images from the photo gallery.

### Advanced

This option specifies where the images for the gallery are located.

- **Use Local images**  
The images will be loaded from the local computer.
- **Get images from an Instagram account**  
This makes it possible to feed the Photo Gallery with images from your Instagram account. The Client ID specifies your ID of your Instagram account. The token is needed for security. To create a token, you can use one of the many available online Instagram token generators.
- **Get images from a folder on the server**  
This load the images form a folder on the server. This uses PHP so the file extension in Page Properties should be set to PHP and the page only works online! If the images have description meta data then this will automatically be used for the title.

### Thumbnail title

Enter the text that will be displayed under the thumbnail image. To enable titles, make sure you selected the 'Include title' option in the Text Page.

### Thumbnail size

Specifies the size of the thumbnail images. Select 'Variable' to dynamically determine the thumbnail size. Select 'Responsive' to make the photo gallery responsive. When this option is selected the gallery can have a different number of columns in breakpoints! The images in the gallery will be responsively resized based on the available space. This means for example that when the gallery is inside a layout grid that it can be full width.

### Columns

The number of images per row.

### Horizontal alignment

Alignment of the thumb images. This option has no effect when the Maintain aspect ratio option is off.

### Vertical Alignment

Alignment of the thumb images. This option has no effect when the Maintain aspect ratio option is off.

### Cell Padding

Enter how much space you want between the contents and inside edges of cells, in pixels.

### Cell Spacing

Enter how much space you want between the cells in the table, in pixels.

### Maintain aspect ratio

Select this option if you want to maintain the aspect ratio of the image in the thumbnail.  
If this option is not selected the thumbnail will be resized to fit whole rectangle.

### Gallery Mode

Specifies what happens if the user clicks on an image.

- **Open in the same browser window**  
The larger version of the image will be displayed in the same browser window.
- **Open in a new browser window**  
The larger version of the image will be displayed in a new browser window.
- **Open in a popup window**  
The larger version of the image will be displayed in a popup browser window. The popup window will have the size of the full image.
- **Open in another window**  
The larger version of the image will be displayed in another window. For example, in an inline frame. You can specify the name of the target window in the Name field.
- **Open in a jQuery Dialog**  
The image will be displayed in a jQuery Dialog. Use the Settings button to modify the appearance of the dialog.
- **Light Box Gallery**  
If you select this option then clicking on one of the images will start a lightbox slideshow. You can select one of built-in slideshows: slimbox, prettyphoto, fancybox.

To customize the behavior of the lightbox, you can add extra options through the 'Settings'. Please consult the documentation or website of the specific lightbox for more details about possible configuration options.

Additional galleries/lightbox plugins can be downloaded from the download section of the website: <http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/download.html>

- **Use Links**  
This option allows you to assign links to images, instead of opening the image.

### Generate thumbnail images

By default, Web Builder will generate a preview window which displays the original images. If the size of these images is large it can take a long time before the page is loaded in the browser. Instead you can enable **Generate thumbnail images** which will generate a smaller version of the images so the page will load faster.

### Prefix

Prefix used for naming the thumbnail images.

### Include title

Include the title of the image under the thumbnail. You can also change the font type, size, style and color of the title.

### Frame

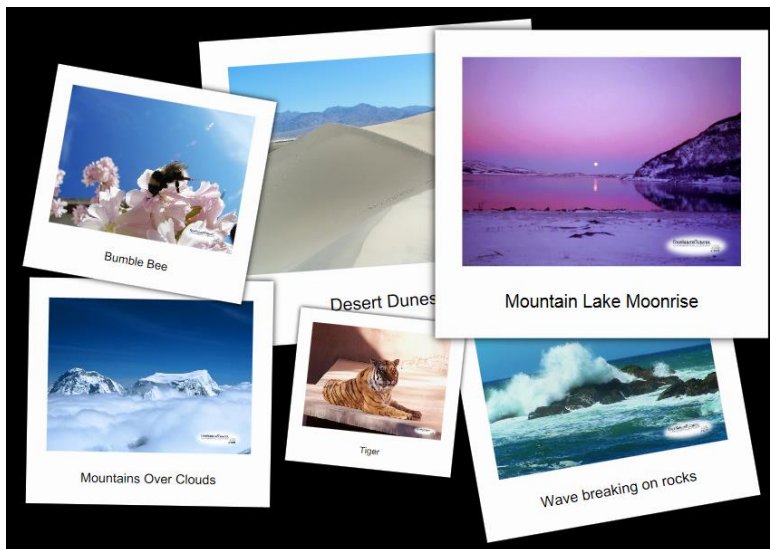
Specifies which style of frame to use. The 'Default' type adds a simply frame where you can specify the width and color. WYSIWYG Web Builder includes a few predefined frame styles, but you can easily add your own styles. Copy your own styles (gif, jpg or png) to gallery folder, where each style has its own folder. **My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\gallery\yourstyle\**

Frame Styles are made out of 8 images (note that you can also use the extensions jpg and png!):  
bottom.gif, bottomleft.gif, bottomright.gif, left.gif, right.gif, top.gif, topleft.gif, topright.gif

### Polaroid mode

The Photo Gallery also has 'Polaroid mode' which uses CSS3 and has a few cool effects like rotated or variable sized polaroids. To enable Polaroid mode select (Polaroid) as the frame style. For the best effect set the frame width to 20 or more and use 'white' as the color. Also adding a little shadow will give it a more realistic effect.

Rotate polaroids will randomly rotate the images to simulate a photo stack. You can also give each photo a different size.



For advanced users who want to have more control over the angles and individual scaling of the image: Hold down the SHIFT key while clicking the checkbox options. This will bring up a dialog where you can specify an array of angles or scales. If these values do not make sense to you then please don't edit them!

### Polaroids are draggable

Adds the ability to reposition the Polaroids around the page. Just like 'real' Polaroids on a stack.

### Animate polaroids on page load

Animates the Polaroids to a random position on the page.

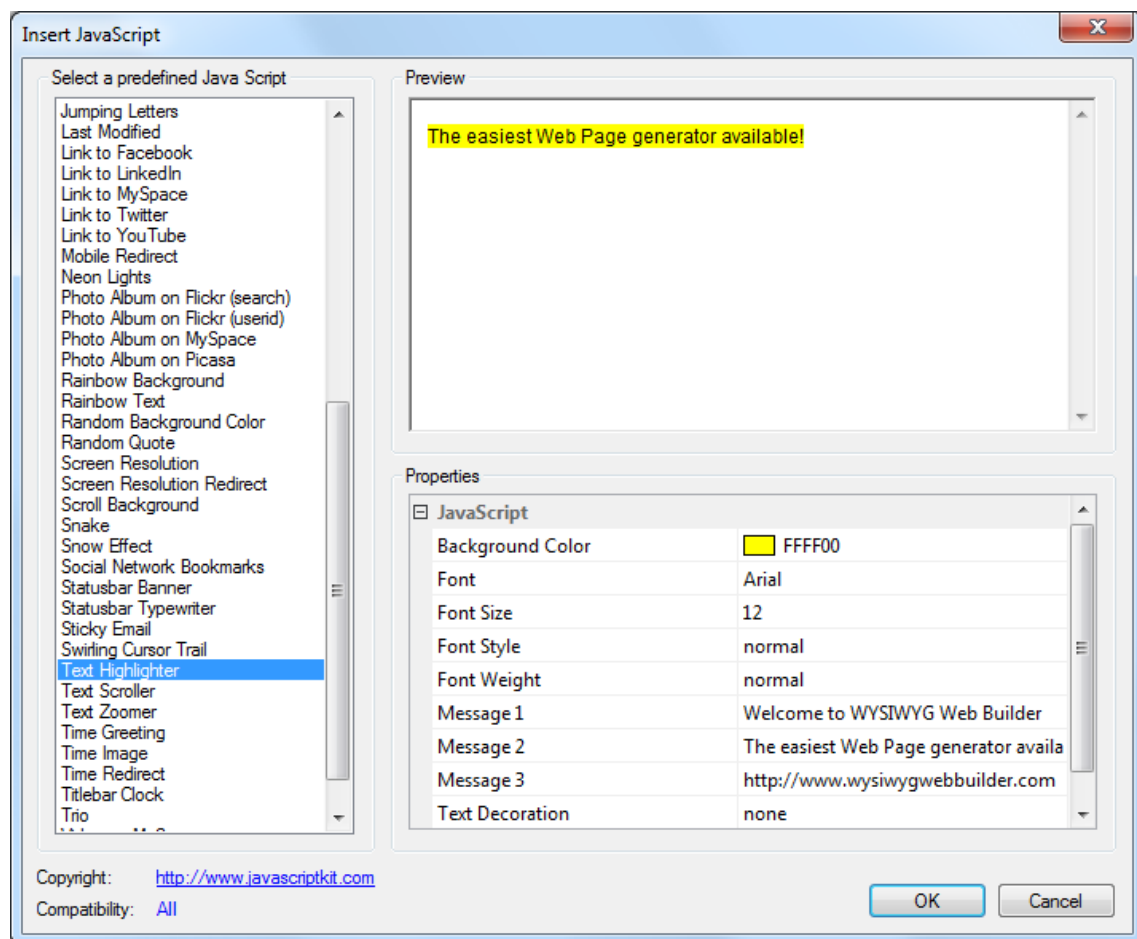
## Ready to use Java Scripts

This feature can be useful if you want to brighten up your web pages with some cool Java Scripts. Click 'Insert JavaScript' and select one of the predefined scripts. Some of the scripts have properties to change the behavior of the script. To see the effect of the Java Script you will need to preview or publish the web page.

### Notes:

- These scripts are not created by Pablo Software Solutions. Where possible the appropriate copyrights are displayed.
- Depending on the configuration of the Internet browser some of these scripts might not work on all systems.
- It is not recommended to use more than one Java Script per page.

You can create add your own Java scripts using the JavaScript editor which is available in the download section of our website.



## Rollover image

Rollover images change swap images on rolling over it (onMouseOver event) and reverts back to the original image on rolling out of the object (onMouseOut event).



### Initial image

Select the image that will be displayed initially.

### Mouseover image

Select the image that will be displayed when the mouse is over the object.

### Alternate text

This text, usually a short description, appears in place of the object in browser when images are unsupported or have been disabled. In some browsers it appears as a ToolTip when you move the mouse over the image.

### Title

In modern browsers this title appears as a ToolTip when you move the mouse over the image.

### Animation

Specifies the animation effect for the rollover image:

- None
- Fade
- Slide Left
- Slide Right
- Slide Up
- Slide Down
- Zoom
- Scale, uses CSS3 to display a larger version of the image. Uses transformation, CSS3 box shadow, a nice image caption when possible (experimental).
- Sliding Door. This makes it looks like the image is split into half and one goes left and the other one goes right.

### Duration

Duration of the animation in milliseconds.

### Easing

The slide animations also support easing. You can select from more than 30 easing functions to control the animation process. This option can be used to (for example) create bounce or elastic effects.

### Link

For more information about linking please read the chapter 'Links'.



## Rollover Text

The RollOver Text object displays a text (title and description) banner over an image on mouse over.

### Filename

Select the image that will be displayed initially.

### Title

Title of image.

### Description

Description of the image.

### Link text

The banner can also contain a link. Here you can specify the text for this link. The URL for the link can be configured in the 'Link' tab.

### Position

Specifies the position of the text banner.

- Top  
The banner will be displayed at the top of the image.
- Bottom  
The banner will be displayed at the bottom of the image.
- Full  
The banner will be displayed over the full size of the image.

### Animation

Specifies the animation effect for the rollover text banner:

- None
- Fade
- Slide Left
- Slide Right
- Slide Up
- Slide Down

### Duration

Duration of the animation in milliseconds.

## RSS Feed

With the RSS Feed object, you can add a RSS Feed to your website in only a few mouse clicks!

### What does RSS mean?

RSS stands for Really Simple Syndication, and is used to describe the technology used in creating feeds.

### What is a feed (RSS)?

Feeds, also known as RSS feeds, XML feeds, syndicated content, or web feeds, contain frequently updated content published by a website.

They are usually used for news and blog websites, but are also used for distributing other types of digital content, including pictures, audio files, or video.

At its most basic, RSS generates a list of links, to various resources on your site with a description of the content for each link.

The contents of a RSS feed can be read in different ways. A variety of tools, both fee based and free, to read RSS feeds are available on the Internet. The latest browsers (Internet Explorer 7.0, Safari, FireFox 2.0 and Opera) also have build-in RSS feed support.

The RSS Feed extension lets you define a RSS channel with a set of headlines. When you publish the web page, which includes the RSS extension, a RSS (XML) file will be generated in the same folder as the HTML page. A small RSS icon will be displayed on your web page with a link to this file. Some browsers will display a special icon in the toolbar, which lets the users easily subscribe to your RSS channel.

### General

#### Title

The name of the channel. It is how users refer to your service. If you have an HTML website that contains the same information as your RSS file, the title of your channel should be the same as the title of your website.

#### Description

Phrase or sentence describing the channel.

#### URL

The URL to the HTML website corresponding to the channel.

For example: <http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com>

#### Include publication date for headlines.

The extension can automatically update the publication date of the headlines (based on the creation or modification timestamp). To include the publication date in the RSS feed, enable this option. If you leave this option off, the publication date will not be included.

#### Filename

The filename of the generated RSS xml file. By default, this file is named 'rss.xml', but you can rename it to anything you like. Common file extensions for feeds are .xml and .rss

#### Logo

Specifies which logo will be displayed on the webpage.

## Headlines

### Add

Add a new headline.

The Subject and Description should be written to describe the content.

The **Podcast** property provides a way of attaching multimedia content to the RSS feeds, such as an MP3 file. The **URL** field should reference the webpage that contains that actual content. This can be an internal or external link.

### Edit

Edit the selected headline.

### Remove

Remove the selected headline.

### Optional

**Category**, specify one or more categories that the channel belongs to.

Example: Newspaper

**Copyright**, Copyright notice for content in the channel.

Example: Copyright 2008, Pablo Software Solutions

**Editor**, Email address for person responsible for editorial content

Example: yourname@yourwebsite.com (Your Name)

**Webmaster**, Email address for person responsible for technical issues relating to channel

Example: webmaster@yourwebsite.com (Web Master)

**Language**, The language the channel is written in. This allows aggregators to group all Dutch language sites, for example, on a single page.

**Image**, specifies a GIF, JPEG or PNG image that can be displayed with the channel.

**Refresh time**, Specifies the number of minutes that indicates how long a channel can be cached before refreshing from the source.

## News Feed Ticker

The News Feed Ticker or Headline rotator displays RSS feeds (local or from another website), Twitter messages, Flickr images or other news sources on your website.

You can also think of this object as a Slide Show for text with many different animations and display types like static, scroller, slideshow, paginate and ticker.

**Note:**

You must publish your page to a web server otherwise the information will not be displayed due to security restrictions of the browser.

### General

#### Data source

The news feed ticker supports many data source types. It uses jQuery to fetch the data.

- **User Defined**

This option allows you to specify the headlines manually.

- **RSS Feed**

Select this if the data source is a RSS feed. This can be a feed on your own website or an external website. Enter the location of the RSS feed in the URL field. For local feeds (like the one created with the RSS feed object), enter `./rss.xml`

For feeds from external websites you should enter the full URL:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/rss.xml>

To overcome security problems due to cross domain restrictions we've included several data retrieval options:

**Load data using a HTTP GET request**

Use this option for feeds retrieved from your own domain. This option uses AJAX (Asynchronous JavaScript and XML) to fetch the data and doesn't require PHP. However AJAX requests cannot be made to a different site than the one hosting the page being viewed.

**Load data through proxy (this option requires PHP support on the server!)**

This option uses a PHP proxy script to fetch the data. This basically tricks the browser into thinking that the feed came from your own server. A PHP script will pull the content of the news feed to your server by using the PHP function `file_get_contents()` and then relay the data to the news feed ticker. This script will be automatically generated and uploaded by WYSIWYG Web Builder, so you do not have to worry about that.

**Load data through cURL (requires PHP)**

Some web-hosting providers may not allow the use of the PHP `file_get_contents()` function to fetch remote files because of security concerns. If your host supports cURL then this may be a good alternative. Consult the documentation of your host for more details. Note that here also the PHP script will be automatically generated and uploaded by WYSIWYG Web Builder.

- **Twitter**

Uses JSON to get the latest messages from a specific Twitter account.

- **Flickr**

Displays images based on the specified Flickr search query. Enter the Flickr search query in the Flickr Parameters field. For example: `tags=vegas&tagmode=any`, which will search for the latest images tagged with 'vegas'

- **Facebook**

This option uses Facebook's Graph API to get status updates, photos and links from your Facebook account. To get data from the Graph API you need to enter your Facebook ID and an Access Token. You can read more about sharing Facebook data here:

<https://developers.facebook.com/docs/getting-started/graphapi/>

**Viewer type**

The viewer type specifies how the headlines will be displayed:

- **Default**  
The items will be displayed as a static list. If the list is longer than the available space, scrollbars will be added.
- **Continuous Scroll**  
The items will be scrolled like a (vertical) news feed ticker. The scroller will pause on mouse over.
- **SlideShow**  
The items will flow into view one at a time, pause for a few seconds and then slide up to show the next item.  
The 'Pause for' property specifies the pause between the headlines in seconds.
- **Paginate**  
Paginate displays a small subset of the items at any one time, while allowing the user to move through it with navigation buttons. The 'Item per page' property specifies how many items will be displayed per page. Click the Style button to change the appearance of the paginate buttons.
- **Ticker**  
Uses ticker-like animations to fade and slide items into view. This effect is frequently used on new web sites.

**Max items**

Specifies the maximum number of items that will be retrieved from the data source.

**Sort order**

Specifies the order in which the items will be displayed.

**Speed**

Specifies the scroll speed of the text for Continuous Scroll mode.

**Animation**

Specifies the animation effect for the slide show mode: None, Fade, Slide Left , Slide Right , Slide Up or Slide Down

**Duration**

Specifies the duration of the animation.

**Link Target**

Specifies the target for links in the news feed ticker. For example:

**\_blank**, opens the link in a new window

**\_self**, open the link in the current frame

**\_parent**, open the link in the parent frame

**\_top**, loads the linked document in the topmost frame

## Slide Show

You can use the Slide Show object to display different images in succession in the same place on the web page. For example, you could rotate among several images that advertise new products or display advertisements for other web sites. To add an image, click the **Add**-button. You can also assign a link to each the image. Click Edit to change the properties of an image or Remove to remove it from the list. To insert multiple images in one action hold SHIFT-key while pressing Add.

You specify the number of seconds to pause before displaying the next image in the sequence. If you set this value to 0 (zero), the images will not rotate automatically, but instead you can use Events to display the next or previous image. This means you can use shapes, images, text or any other object which supports events to walk through the images! There are two special Event actions defined for this purpose: **SlideShow Next** and **SlideShow Previous**. See the chapter 'Events' for more details.

### Type

- **Sequence**  
The images will be rotated in sequence.
- **Random**  
The images will be displayed in random order.
- **Light Box Gallery**  
If you select this option then clicking the image will start a lightbox slideshow. You can select one of built-in slideshows: slimbox, prettyphoto, fancybox.  
To customize the behavior of the lightbox, you can add extra options through the 'Settings'. Please consult the documentation or website of the specific lightbox for more details about possible configuration options. Additional galleries/lightbox plugins can be downloaded from the download section of the website: <http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/download.html>
- **Conveyer Belt**  
This option creates an image slideshow which scrolls the images from right to left in a "conveyor belt" fashion.
- **Carousel**  
When this mode is selected multiple images can be displayed per slide. Bootstrap's (responsive) Carousel plugin will be used instead of Web Builder's own script.
- **Accordion**  
Implements a horizontal image accordion, using CSS only. With animation and caption support. The 'Image Accordion' also has its own icon in toolbox for quick access.

### Effect

Specifies the effect that will be used for image transitions. There are more than 25 animation effects!

### Advanced

This option specifies where the images for the slideshow are located.

- **Use Local images**  
The images will be loaded from the local computer.
- **Get images from an Instagram account**  
This makes it possible to feed the slideshow with images from your Instagram account. The Client ID specifies your ID of your Instagram account. The token is needed for security. To create a token, you can use one of the many available online Instagram token generators.
- **Get images from a folder on the server**  
This load the images form a folder on the server. This uses PHP so the file extension in Page Properties should be set to PHP and the page only works online! If the images have description meta data then this will automatically be used for the title.

Related online tutorial:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/slideshow.html>

## Site Search

Results:

1 result(s) found for search term: Lorem Ipsum (0.01 seconds)  
[Page One](#)  
[page1.html](#)  
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Integer nec odio. Praesent libero. Sed cursus ante dapibus diam. Sed nisi. Nulla quis sem at nibh elementum imperdiet. Duis sagittis ...

WYSIWYG Web Builder has basic built-in 'search engine' functionality, so visitors can search for specific words within your website. The search option does not have any special server requirements because it uses JavaScript, so it's very easy to insert this component to your page(s).

**Note:**  
Before you add this object to your page, make sure you have enabled 'Generate Search Index' in Menu->Tools->Search Index otherwise the search index will not be created and the search will not work!

### Place holder

The hint (or 'cue') text will displayed inside the search field if it doesn't have the focus. When the user moves their focus to the field, the label will be hidden.

### No results

Specifies the text that will be displayed if the search query has no results.

### Keywords

The text for the Keyword label in the search results.

### Description

The text for the Description label in the search results.

### Close button

The text on the close button

### Padding

Sets the amount of space between the results and the border.

### Display query time

This displays the total time it took to execute the search query.

### Display URL

Added option to include the URL in search results (Display URL).

### Display description

Specifies whether to display the description in the search results.

### Display keywords

Specifies whether to display the keywords in the search results.

For performance reasons the keywords in the search results are the words from the search index, and not directly from the page content! Only unique words will be indexed. So, if a word is used multiple times in the text then it will only appear once in the keywords.

### Max length

Set maximum number of characters to display in the results. The description text contains the context of the keyword within the text (Max. length).

### Results per page

Adds pagination to the search results.

### Results

The search results can be displayed on the page in several different ways:

- **Show results in a new Browser Window**  
The results will be displayed in a new browser window. You can configure the properties of this windows via the 'Settings' button.
- **Show results in an Inline Frame**  
The results will be displayed in an inline frame on the same page.  
Note that you will have to insert an inline frame object first before you select its name in the Frame property.
- **Show results in jQuery Dialog**  
The results will be displayed in a jQuery Dialog. Use the Settings button to modify the appearance of the dialog.
- **Show results in another object.**  
The results will the displayed inside another object (for instance a layer on the same page). It will replace the current content of that object. Make sure the overflow mode of that object is set to 'scroll' otherwise you may not see all results!
- **Show results in another page.**  
You can use this option to display the results in another page. This can be useful if you want the results page to have the same design as the rest of your website.

### Auto Complete

Enable auto complete

The auto complete feature will allow users to type the beginning of a search term and be presented with all the possible terms that begin with the typed string (juts like the Google Search engine).

### Mode

Specifies what will happen when the user selects a word in the drop down list.

- **select word**  
This is the default behavior. When the user clicks a word in the drop down list, then it will be copied to the search input field.
- **open page**  
Clicking an item in the Autocomplete drop down list will immediately open the page. This makes it possible to implement a search field without a 'results' section.  
Note that when this mode is active, the results settings are ignored.

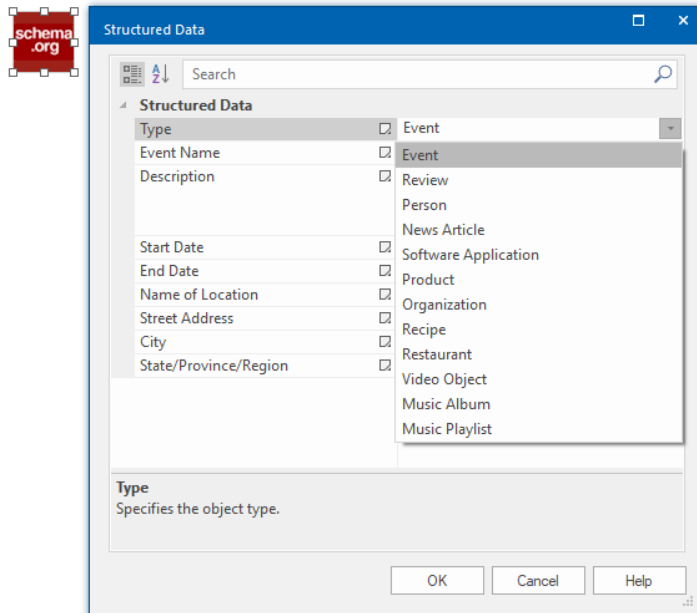
### Padding

Set the spacing around the items in drop down list.



## Structured Data

Provide a better browsing experience for users on your website and in search engines, and improve your SEO with the built-in JSON-LD generator (schema.org).



The following schemes are currently supported:

- Event
- Music Album
- Music Playlist
- News Article
- Organization
- Person
- Product
- Recipe
- Review
- Restaurant
- Software Application
- Video Object

Note that this is just a basic tool to help you quickly add structured data to your web pages. It does not validate the data you have entered!

The Google Structured Data Testing Tool can be used to validate the structure of data:

<https://search.google.com/structured-data/testing-tool/u/0/>

## Timer

The Timer object makes it possible to trigger actions based on timer events. For example, show or hide an object after x milliseconds. Timers can also start/stop other timers! All event actions are supported (animate, show/hide, rotate, media, JavaScript etc.). The possibilities are endless!

### General

The Timer object supports two types:

- **Interval**  
Executes a function, over and over again, at specified time intervals.
- **Timeout**  
Executes a function, once, after waiting a specified number of milliseconds.

### Interval

Specifies the interval in milliseconds.

### Auto start

Specifies whether to automatically start the timer. If this option is not enabled you can start the timer through events (for example on click of a button).

Note that you can also stop the timer through events (Timer Stop).

### Events

In **Events** you can configure what will happen when the timer expires. For example, you can display or hide an object, play a media file, animate something etc.

For more information about events please read the chapter 'Events' of this document.

## PayPal eCommerce Tools

The PayPal eCommerce Tools are the quickest and easiest way to add eCommerce to your web site. You can easily create payment buttons and basic shopping cart functionality for your web site with only a few mouse clicks! Accept payments from anyone, all you need to set up a PayPal account is an email address! PayPal is one of the leading and more respected payment services on the Web. Best of all, it costs nothing to set up an account.

Sign Up for a PayPal Account now:

<https://www.paypal.com/mrb/pal=6TUEY37GLM48U>

The following tools are available:

- **Buy Now Button**  
Enable e-commerce on your website by letting customers quickly buy one item at a time.
- **Add to cart Button**
- **View cart Button**  
These buttons are part of PayPal's shopping cart solution.  
With the 'Add to cart' Button users can add one of more items to their shopping cart.  
The 'View Cart' button lets users check their cart whenever they'd like.
- **Subscription Button**  
Useful for subscriptions and recurring payments. Accept recurring payments with flexible, automated billing.
- **Donation Button**  
Accept credit card and bank account donations on your website or via email.

### Options

You can attach 6 optional form controls so the buyer can select (for example) the size or color of a product. An option field can be either a ComboBox or an EditBox.

The Label property can be used to assign a label to the option. If you leave this field empty then the object's ID will be used.

#### Step 1

Insert a ComboBox or EditBox to the page.

#### Step 2

Select the ID of the object in the dropdown list above

Notes:

The selected options fields should not be part of another form. Web Builder will make sure they are attached to the PayPal button and rename the objects if necessary.

## **Buy Now Button**

When you use PayPal's Buy Now Buttons, you can sell individual items from your website. Buy Now Buttons is a low-cost way for you to accept bank account payments, and can be fully integrated with your website in a few easy steps.

### **General**

**PayPal Account:** Email address for your PayPal account.

**Button Image:** Specifies the button image that will be displayed on your webpage. Select '**Custom Image**' if you want to specify a custom image.

**Enable Sandbox:** PayPal provides a Sandbox to allow you to test your site without actually making payments. Uncheck this option when publishing the live version of your site!

More information about the PayPal's sandbox: <https://developer.paypal.com/>

**Target Window:** Specifies the browser window where PayPal's website will be opened. Default: PayPal. Make this field empty if you want the PayPal website to open in the current window.

### **Details**

**Item name/service:** Description of item. This field is optional. If omitted customers can enter an item name at time of purchase.

**Item ID/number:** Pass-through variable for you to track purchases passed back to you at payment completion. This field is optional. If omitted no variable is passed back to you.

**Price:** The price or amount of the purchase, not including shipping, handling, or tax. If omitted customers can enter an amount at time of purchase.

**Tax:** Transaction-based tax override variable. Set this to a flat tax amount to apply to the transaction regardless of the buyer's location. This value overrides any tax settings set in your Profile.

Default: Profile tax settings (if any) apply.

**Currency:** The currency of the payment. Defines the currency in which the monetary variables (amount, shipping, shipping2, handling, tax) are denoted.

**Allow customers to edit quantity:** When this option is enabled it allows the buyer to specify the quantity.

### **Shipping**

**Base shipping:** The cost of shipping this item if you have enabled item-specific shipping costs. This field is optional.

**Extra shipping:** The cost of shipping each additional item. This field is optional.

**Handling costs:** Handling charges. This is not quantity-specific. The same handling cost is charged regardless of the number of items purchased. This field is optional.

**Require shipping information:** Specifies whether to prompt the customer for a shipping address.

**Allow customer note:** Specifies whether to prompt the customer to include a note with the payment.

### **URLs**

**Successful Payment URL:** The URL to which the customer's browser is returned after completing the payment; for example, a URL on your site that displays a "Thank you for your payment" page. If omitted the customer is taken to the PayPal website.

**Cancel Payment URL:** A URL to which the customer's browser is returned if payment is cancelled; for example, a URL on your website that displays a "Payment Canceled" page. If omitted the Browser is directed to the PayPal website.

**Buyer's Country:** Defines the buyer's language for the Login page only.

More information:

<http://www.paypal.com/cgi-bin/webscr?cmd=p/xcl/rec/singleitem-intro-outside>

### **PayPal Shopping Cart**

When you use PayPal's free Shopping Cart on your website, your customers can purchase multiple items with a single payment, browse your entire selection, and view a consolidated list of all their items before purchasing. The PayPal Shopping Cart is a low-cost way for you to accept credit card and bank account payments, and can be fully integrated with your website in a few easy steps. When a buyer clicks the "Add to Cart" button, a new window will appear listing the contents of the buyer's PayPal Shopping Cart, including the item just added. To make the purchase, the buyer clicks "Checkout" from this window.

#### **Add to Cart Button**

The Add to Cart button can be used to add an item to the shopping cart.

##### **General**

**PayPal Account:** Email address for your PayPal account.

**Button Image:** Specifies the button image that will be displayed on your webpage. Select '**Custom Image**' if you want to specify a custom image.

**Enable Sandbox:** PayPal provides a Sandbox to allow you to test your site without actually making payments. Uncheck this option when publishing the live version of your site!

More information about the PayPal's sandbox: <https://developer.paypal.com/>

**Target Window:** Specifies the browser window where PayPal's website will be opened. Default: PayPal. Make this field empty if you want the PayPal website to open in the current window.

##### **Details**

**Item name/service:** Description of item. This field is optional. If omitted customers can enter an item name at time of purchase.

**Item ID/number:** Pass-through variable for you to track purchases passed back to you at payment completion. This field is optional. If omitted no variable is passed back to you.

**Price:** The price or amount of the purchase, not including shipping, handling, or tax. If omitted customers can enter an amount at time of purchase.

**Tax:** Transaction-based tax override variable. Set this to a flat tax amount to apply to the transaction regardless of the buyer's location. This value overrides any tax settings set in your Profile.

Default: Profile tax settings (if any) apply.

**Currency:** The currency of the payment. Defines the currency in which the monetary variables (amount, shipping, shipping2, handling, tax) are denoted.

**Allow customers to edit quantity:** Allows the buyer to specify the quantity.

##### **URLs**

**Successful Payment URL:** The URL to which the customer's browser is returned after completing the payment; for example, a URL on your site that displays a "Thank you for your payment" page. If omitted the customer is taken to the PayPal website.

**Cancel Payment URL:** A URL to which the customer's browser is returned if payment is cancelled; for example, a URL on your website that displays a "Payment Canceled" page. If omitted the Browser is directed to the PayPal website.

**Buyer's Country:** Defines the buyer's language for the Login page only.

#### **View Cart Button**

The View Cart button can be used to view the contents of the shopping cart.

##### **General**

**PayPal Account:** Email address for your PayPal account.

**Button Image:** Specifies the button image that will be displayed on your webpage. Select '**Custom Image**' if you want to specify a custom image.

More information:

<http://www.paypal.com/cgi-bin/webscr?cmd=p/xcl/rec/sc-intro-outside>

## Subscription Button

When you use PayPal Subscriptions and Recurring Payments, your customers can purchase automatically recurring subscriptions from your website.

Subscriptions and Recurring Payments is a low-cost way for you to accept credit card and bank account payments for content site subscriptions, newsletter fees, club dues, or recurring donations, and can be fully integrated with your website in a few easy steps. Subscriptions and Recurring Payments are only available for Business or Premier accounts.

### General

**PayPal Account:** Email address for your PayPal account.

**Button Image:** Specifies the button image that will be displayed on your webpage. Select '**Custom Image**' if you want to specify a custom image.

**Enable SandBox:** PayPal provides a Sandbox to allow you to test your site without actually making payments. Uncheck this option when publishing the live version of your site!

More information about the PayPal's sandbox: <https://developer.paypal.com/>

**Target Window:** Specifies the browser window where PayPal's website will be opened. Default: PayPal. Make this field empty if you want the PayPal website to open in the current window.

### Details

**Subscription name:** Enter the name of the subscription you wish to sell in the Subscription name field. If you do not enter anything in this field, your customers can complete it.

**Reference Item Number:** If you have an ID or tracking number for your item, enter it in the Reference Item Number field. This field will not be displayed to your customers at the time of payment, but they will see it in their transaction details on the PayPal website.

**Currency:** Choose the currency in which you would like this payment to be denominated. This field will default to the currency of your primary balance.

**Bill the subscriber for:** Enter your regular subscription rate.

**Length of each billing cycle:** Specifies the regular billing cycle.

**Would you like to stop the recurring payments after a certain number?**

Enable this option if you would like to end your customers' subscriptions after a certain number of payments at your regular rates. This means that once a customer has made the specified number of payments at your regular rate, his subscription will be completed. If you disable this option your customers' subscriptions will continue unless it is cancelled manually or by payment failure.

**Trial periods (optional)**

You may enter a trial period and rates for your subscription. To create a free trial period, enter an amount of 0. Trial periods can be entered as a number of days, weeks, months, or years.

**Reattempt on Failure**

Enable this option if you would like PayPal to automatically reattempt failed payments. Payments will be reattempted three days after the failure date. After a second failure, PayPal will try once more five days later. A third failure will lead to an automatic cancellation of the subscription.

Payments made with bank accounts are automatically reattempted once, three days after PayPal notifies the user that the payment failed. If you select No, failed payments will result in the automatic cancellation of the subscription.

**Require shipping information:** Specifies whether to prompt the customer for a shipping address.

More information:

<http://www.paypal.com/cgi-bin/webscr?cmd=p/xcl/rec/subscr-intro-outside>

## **Donation Button**

Collect donations from a button on your website.

PayPal Donations is a low cost way for you to accept credit card and bank account donations. Integrate PayPal Donations with your website in a few easy steps.

### **General**

**PayPal Account:** Email address for your PayPal account.

**Button Image:** Specifies the button image that will be displayed on your webpage. Select '**Custom Image**' if you want to specify a custom image.

**Enable SandBox:** PayPal provides a Sandbox to allow you to test your site without actually making payments. Uncheck this option when publishing the live version of your site!

More information about the PayPal's sandbox: <https://developer.paypal.com/>

**Target Window:** Specifies the browser window where PayPal's website will be opened. Default: PayPal. Make this field empty if you want the PayPal website to open in the current window.

### **Details**

**Donation name/service:** Enter a description for the donation. If you do not enter anything in this field, your customers can complete it.

**Donation ID/number:** If you have an ID or tracking number for your item, enter it in the Donation ID/number field. This field will not be displayed to your customers at the time of the donation, but they will see it in their transaction details on the PayPal website.

**Currency:** Choose the currency in which you would like this payment to be denominated. This field will default to the currency of your primary balance.

**Require shipping information:** Specifies whether to prompt the customer for a shipping address.

**Allow customer note:** Specifies whether to prompt the customer to include a note with the payment.

### **URLs**

**Successful Payment URL:** The URL to which the customer's browser is returned after completing the payment; for example, a URL on your site that displays a "Thank you for your payment" page. If omitted the customer is taken to the PayPal website.

**Cancel Payment URL:** A URL to which the customer's browser is returned if payment is cancelled; for example, a URL on your website that displays a "Payment Canceled" page. If omitted the Browser is directed to the PayPal website.

**Buyer's Country:** Defines the buyer's language for the Login page only.

More information:

<http://www.paypal.com/cgi-bin/webscr?cmd=p/xcl/rec/donate-intro-outside>

## PHP Login Tools

### Important Note:

The login tools are a set of advanced PHP forms and scripts. Please take your time to become familiar with tools. First read all available documentation and study the demo template before using them in your own project.

Web Builder has a complete built-in (PHP) login system to password protect one or more pages.

### Key features:

- Protect a page simply by dragging the Protect Page object to the page.
- Login and Logout forms.
- An Administrator section to add, edit or remove user accounts.
- A Signup form to allow users to sign up for an account.
- A Change Password form so users can change their password.
- A Password Recovery form, to reset the user's password.
- Custom profile fields.
- Supports both MySQL and a plain text database.
- No custom coding needed, everything is 'drag & drop'!

### Requirements:

The login tools require a web server with **PHP support**, so the first step to start using the login tools of WYSIWYG Web Builder is to check whether your web host supports PHP!

### Tip:

We strongly advise to use only one form per page to prevent conflicts between the scripts.

### Convert to Form

All login forms include an option to convert the predefined/fixed form to a standard form (right click on the login form to display the context menu). This allows you to convert the static form into native Web builder objects so you can fully customize the layout and code if you like.

Note that customizing the PHP code requires knowledge of PHP. Making changes to the code without knowing what you're doing will result in undefined behavior!

### Demo Template

A fully functional example template is included in the 'Demo' category of the standard Templates. This template demonstrates how to use the Login tools of WYSIWYG Web Builder.

Please first take your time to study the demo template before including the login tools in your own project. The most common reason for the login tools not to work on a website is due to configuration mistakes of the user!

To open the demo template:

1. Select Menu->New Website from Template
2. Select the 'Demo' category
3. Click 'Login' and the press the OK button.
4. Save the newly generated project to a folder of your choice.

Start by reading the information of the 'Getting started' page in template.

To test the completely working example you must publish all pages to a web server with PHP support.

Also, don't forget to create the user database first!!!



### *User database*

The login tools use a database file on the server to store the user information. The data will be stored in a semicolon separated text file or in a MySQL table. The passwords will be hashed using md5 so they will be securely saved.

The following login tools will use this database file:

- Admin
- Change Password
- Login
- Password Recovery
- Signup
- Edit Profile

**Tip:**

You should set the same database name for all login tools!

### ***How do I automatically create a user database on the server?***

All objects mentioned above do have a button in their properties window called 'Create database'.

1. Click the 'Create database'
2. Enter a name for the database, for example 'usersdb.php'. Click Next.
3. Select the publish location where you are going to publish this website to. Click Next.

**Note:**

If you do not see any publish locations, then you should add them first in the Publish window!

4. The wizard will make a connection with the server and show the folder structure.
5. Select the folder where the database should be created.
6. Click 'Finish' to create the file.

WYSIWYG Web Builder will automatically change the permission of the file so that it's write enabled, so new users can be added.

### ***How do I manually create a user database on the server?***

A user database is basically just a text file on the server. So, if for whatever reason the instructions above fail, you can try to upload the file manually yourself.

1. Open notepad or any other plain text editor and create an empty file named 'usersdb.php'.
2. Upload the file to the same folder as your protected pages. To upload the file, you can use then built-in FTP tool or any other FTP application.
3. After the file has been uploaded you must modify the permissions so that the PHP script can write data to it. The correct permissions are 757 or 777.
4. Alternatively, you can use the file transfer tool of your host's control panel. There should be an option in your web hosting control panel to set write permissions. If it's not present, you may can contact your web hosting service and request the write permissions for the file.

### ***How do I prevent that user can view or download the user database from the server?***

By default, the user database of the login tools can be accessed by anyone that knows the file name. And although the passwords are encoded the email addresses are not hidden.

So, the first thing you should do is to make sure you give the user database a unique name that cannot easily be guessed. For example: **A6gr8JDaTa.php**

To make the user database completely inaccessible you can create a .htaccess file in the folder on the server with the following content:

```
<Files "usersdb.php">
Order deny,allow
Allow from xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
Deny from all
</Files>
```

where usersdb.php is the name of the database and xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx is your IP address.

See also:

<http://www.javascriptkit.com/howto/htaccess.shtml>

### ***Using a MySQL database to store the user information (for advanced users only!)***

As alternative for the plain text user database you can also choose to store the users in a MySQL database. Each object has a special MySQL Database category, where you can configure the properties of the MySQL database. Before you can use this option you must create the table on the server.

Log in to your MySQL administrator utility. Create the USERS table using this SQL query:

```
CREATE TABLE `USERS` (
  `id` int(10) NOT NULL auto_increment,
  `username` varchar(50) NOT NULL,
  `fullname` varchar(75) NOT NULL,
  `password` varchar(50) NOT NULL,
  `email` varchar(75) NOT NULL,
  `active` tinyint(1) NOT NULL,
  `code` varchar(75),
  `role` varchar(50),
  `avatar` varchar(50),
  PRIMARY KEY (`id`));
```

If you have added custom profile fields to any (or all) of the login objects then you must also create these fields in the database. Custom profile fields must be named extra1, extra2, extra3 etc!

The following SQL query generates a table with 5 extra custom profile fields:

```
CREATE TABLE `USERS` (
  `id` int(10) NOT NULL auto_increment,
  `username` varchar(50) NOT NULL,
  `fullname` varchar(75) NOT NULL,
  `password` varchar(50) NOT NULL,
  `email` varchar(75) NOT NULL,
  `active` tinyint(1) NOT NULL,
  `code` varchar(75),
  `role` varchar(50),
  `avatar` varchar(50),
  `extra1` varchar(100),
  `extra2` varchar(100),
  `extra3` varchar(100),
  `extra4` varchar(100),
  `extra5` varchar(100),
  PRIMARY KEY (`id`)
);;
```

## **Admin**

The Administrator object allows you to add, edit or remove users from the user database online. To enable scrolling for a large list of users, the administrator form will be displayed inside an inline frame.

### **Admin Password**

Specifies the administrator's password.

### **Avatar folder**

Specifies the folder where avatar images for users will be stored.  
Note that this folder should exist on the server and must be writable!

### **Custom Profile Fields**

This option can be used to add additional fields to the signup form.  
New fields can be of type 'text' or 'option'. A text field adds a standard editbox, while the option fields adds a combo box to give the user multiple choices.  
You can also mark a field as 'Required'.

The 'Apply to All' button can be used to apply the custom profile fields to all Login tools within the project, so you do not have to manually synchronize them.

#### **Important Notes:**

All login tool objects in the project should have the same custom profile fields!  
When adding custom profile fields and you use a MySQL database then you must also add these fields to the database!

### **Enable Avatars**

Adds the ability to set an avatar image. The image can be displayed on the page with the "Login Name" object.

### **Enable Error Reporting**

If you enable this option the script will activate detailed PHP error reporting. This may be helpful if you are experiencing problems with the login scripts on the server. If PHP Error Reporting is enabled more details about the error will be displayed.

### **Items per page**

Specifies how many users will be displayed per page. This enables pagination navigation.

### **Session timeout**

The administrator will be logged out automatically if the session is idle (based on the specified timeout).

### **User Roles**

User roles are used to create different types of users. These users will only have access to the pages that have configured this role.

**Database Type**

Specifies the database format that will be used for the login tools.

- **Flat File**  
The default database format is flat text file. This file must be created on the server. See User Database for more details.
- **MySQL**  
As alternative for the plain text user database you can also choose to store the users in a MySQL database. This requires you to create a new table on the MySQL Server. See User Database for more details.

**Database**

Specifies the user database (flat file). This value will be ignored if you are using MySQL!

**Frame Name**

Specifies the name of this inline frame.

**MySQL Database**

Specifies the MySQL database name.

**MySQL Password**

Specifies the MySQL password.

**MySQL Server**

Specifies the MySQL database server.

**MySQL Table**

Specifies the MySQL table name.

**MySQL User Name**

Specifies the MySQL username.

### *Change Password*

The Change Password object allows users to change their password. The user must be logged in to be able to change the password.

**Important Note:**

The page **must** have the File Extension 'php' ! You can change the file extension in the Page Properties.

**Button Image**

Specifies the image to be displayed for the button when the button type property is set to 'Image'

**Button Text**

Specifies the text to be shown for the button when the button type property is set to 'Button' or 'Link'.

**Button Type**

Specifies the type of the button. You can choose from 3 types: Button, Image or Link.

**Confirm Password Error**

Specifies the text to be shown when the password and confirm password do not match.

**Confirm Password Label**

Specifies the text that identifies the confirm password text box.

**Font**

Specifies the font used for text within the object.

**Layout**

- **Fixed**  
All form input fields will have a fixed size. This is the layout as used in previous versions of the software.
- **Responsive**  
In this mode form input fields have 100% width (instead of a fixed size), so the form can have a different size in breakpoints.

**New Password Invalid Error**

Specifies the text to be shown when the new password is invalid.

**New Password Label**

Specifies the text that identifies the new password text box.

**Not Logged In Error**

Specifies the text to be shown when the user is not logged in.

**Old Password Invalid Error**

Specifies the text to be shown when the old password is invalid.

**Password Label**

Specifies the text that identifies the password text box.

**Spacing**

Specifies the spacing between controls.

**Title Text**

Specifies the text shown for the title.

**Database**

Specifies the user database. This value will be ignored if you are using MySQL!

**Destination Page**

Specifies the page that the user is directed to upon successful login.

**MySQL Database**

As alternative for the plain text user database you can also choose to store the users in a MySQL database. This requires you to create a new table on the MySQL Server. See User Database for more details.

**Enable MySQL**

Specifies whether to use a MySQL database

**Database**

Specifies the MySQL database name.

**Password**

Specifies the MySQL password.

**Server**

Specifies the MySQL database server.

**Table**

Specifies the MySQL table name.

**User Name**

Specifies the MySQL username.

## Login

The Login object provides a standard form to login to the protected pages.

### Important Note:

The page **must** have the File Extension 'php' ! You can change the file extension in the Page Properties.

### Button Image

Specifies the image to be displayed for the button when the button type property is set to 'Image'.

### Button Text

Specifies the text to be shown for the button when the button type property is set to 'Button' or 'Link'.

### Button Type

Specifies the type of the button. You can choose from 3 types: Button, Image or Link.

### Password Label

Specifies the text that identifies the password text box.

### Remember Me

Specifies the text to be shown for the remember me checkbox.

### Layout

- **Fixed**  
All form input fields will have a fixed size. This is the layout as used in previous versions of the software.
- **Responsive**  
In this mode form input fields have 100% width (instead of a fixed size), so the form can have a different size in breakpoints.

### Spacing

Specifies the spacing between controls.

### Title Text

Specifies the text shown for the title.

### Username Label

Specifies the text that identifies the user name textbox.

### Database

Specifies the user database. This value will be ignored if you are using MySQL!

### Destination Page

Specifies the page that the user is directed to upon successful login.

### Redirect to previous page

After a successful login, the user will be redirected to the previous page. This is the page that triggered login page (stored in PHP's \$\_SESSION['referrer']).

### Error Page

Specifies the page that the user is directed to upon failed login.

### Display Remember Me

True if the remember me checkbox is displayed.

## ***Logout***

The Logout object gives the user the option to login.

### **Important Note:**

The page **must** have the File Extension 'php' !

You can change the file extension of a page in the Page Properties.

### **Button Image**

Specifies the image to be displayed for the button when the button type property is set to 'Image'

### **Button Text**

Specifies the text to be shown for the button when the button type property is set to 'Button' or 'Link'.

### **Button Type**

Specifies the type of the button. You can choose from 3 types: Button, Image or Link.

### **Logout Page**

Specifies the page that the user is directed to upon log out.



### *Password Recovery*

The Password Recovery object allows users to reset their password.  
An email message will be send with the new (random) password.  
If the user wants to change the password, he can use the Change Password form.

#### **Important Note:**

The page **must** have the File Extension 'php' ! You can change the file extension in the Page Properties.

#### **Button Image**

Specifies the image to be displayed for the button when the button type property is set to 'Image'.

#### **Button Text**

Specifies the text to be shown for the button when the button type property is set to 'Button' or 'Link'.

#### **Button Type**

Specifies the type of the button. You can choose from 3 types: Button, Image or Link.

#### **Layout**

- **Fixed**  
All form input fields will have a fixed size. This is the layout as used in previous versions of the software.
- **Responsive**  
In this mode form input fields have 100% width (instead of a fixed size), so the form can have a different size in breakpoints.

#### **Spacing**

Specifies the spacing between controls.

#### **Title Text**

Specifies the text shown for the title.

#### **Email Label**

Specifies the text that identifies the user name textbox.

#### **Database**

Specifies the user database. This value will be ignored if you are using MySQL!

#### **Success Page**

Specifies the page that the user is directed to after the action has succeeded.

#### **Email From**

Specifies the from email address.

#### **Email Message**

Specifies the email message.

#### **Email Subject**

Specifies the email subject.

### ***Protected Page***

To protect any page from your website, simply drag & drop the 'Protected Page' object to the page. If the user is not logged in he will be redirected to the 'Access Denied Page'.

#### **Important Note:**

The page **must** have the File Extension 'php' ! You can change the file extension in the Page Properties.

#### **Access Denied Page**

Specifies the page that the user is directed to if not logged on.

#### **Allow Users**

Specifies the users who can access the page. You can enter a list of comma-delimited users: Bill, Steve, Gary.

If you leave this property empty, then all registered users can access the page.

#### **User Roles**

Users roles are used to create different types of users. These users will only have access to the pages that have configured this role.

## **Signup**

The Signup object allows users to sign up for a new user account.

The new account will be created immediately after the user has completed the form.

An email message will be send to the specified email address with the login details.

Note that anyone can create an account, so use this object only for public pages!

### **Important Note:**

The page **must** have the File Extension 'php' ! You can change the file extension in the Page Properties.

### **Button Image**

Specifies the image to be displayed for the button when the button type property is set to 'Image'

### **Button Text**

Specifies the text to be shown for the button when the button type property is set to 'Button' or 'Link'.

### **Button Type**

Specifies the type of the button.

### **Captcha Enabled**

Specifies whether CAPTCHA should be enabled.

### **Captcha Label**

Specifies the text that identifies the CAPTCHA field.

### **Confirm Password Error**

Specifies the text to be shown when the password and confirm password entered by the user do not match.

### **Confirm Password Label**

Specifies the text that identifies the confirm password text box.

### **Email Invalid Error**

Specifies the text to be shown when the email address entered by the user is invalid.

### **Email Label**

Specifies the text that identifies the email text box.

### **Font**

Specifies the font used for text within the object.

### **Layout**

- **Fixed**  
All form input fields will have a fixed size. This is the layout as used in previous versions of the software.
- **Responsive**  
In this mode form input fields have 100% width (instead of a fixed size), so the form can have a different size in breakpoints.

### **Fullname Invalid Error**

Specifies the text to be shown when the full name entered by the user is invalid.

### **Fullname Label**

Specifies the text that identifies the full name text box.

**Password Invalid Error**

Specifies the text to be shown when the password entered by the user is invalid.

**Password Label**

Specifies the text that identifies the password text box.

**Spacing**

Specifies the spacing between controls.

**Title Text**

Specifies the text shown for the title.

**Username Already Used Error**

Specifies the text to be shown when the username already exists.

**Username Invalid Error**

Specifies the text to be shown when the username entered by the user is invalid.

**Username Label**

Specifies the text that identifies the user name text box.

**Behavior****Account activation**

Specifies whether to enable account activation by the administrator. If this option is 'Administrator', new accounts will not be activated until the administrator enables them.

If this option is 'Automatic' then the account will be enabled immediately after the user has completed the form. If the 'Email' verification option is selected then the user must activate the account via a link in the confirmation email before it will be activated. This makes sure the specified email is valid.

**Tip:**

If you enable email verification then you probably want to include some instructions in the email message to tell the user to use the activation link in the message to activate the account!

### **Custom Profile Fields**

This option can be used to add additional fields to the signup form.

New fields can be of type 'text' or 'option'. A text field adds a standard editbox, while the option fields adds a combobox to give the user multiple choices. You can also mark a field as 'Required'.

The 'Apply to All' button can be used to apply the custom profile fields to all Login tools within the project, so you do not have to manually synchronize them.

#### **Important Notes:**

All login tool objects in the project should have the same custom profile fields!

When adding custom profile fields and you use a MySQL database then you must also add these fields to the database!

### **Database**

Specifies the user database. This value will be ignored if you are using MySQL!

### **Success Page**

Specifies the page that the user is directed to after the action has succeeded.

### **Verified Page**

Specifies the page that the user is directed to after email verification. This value will only be used if Account activation is set to 'Email'!

### **Enable Avatars**

Adds the ability for the user to set an avatar image. The image can be displayed on the page with the "Login Name" object.

## **Email**

### **Admin Email Address**

Specifies the email address of the administrator. This can be left empty.

A copy of the signup confirmation email will be send to this address.

### **Email From**

Specifies the from email address.

### **Email Message**

Specifies the email message.

### **Email Subject**

Specifies the email subject.

## **Edit Profile**

The Edit Profile object allows a user to edit his/her account settings. The user must be logged on to be able to access the profile.

This object is very similar to the Sign Up object and most properties are the same.

## Content Management System

### Important Note:

The Content Management System tools are a set of advanced PHP forms and scripts. Please take your time to become familiar with tools. First read all available documentation and study the demo template before you start using them in your own project!

WYSIWYG Web Builder has a complete built-in (PHP based) content management system to allow you or your customers to manage content online. The basic idea is that the content of the page will be display inside a fixed area on the page, this is the CMS View. You can think of this as an inline frame or content place holder, although the content will be dynamically merge with the rest of the page when the page is requested from the server. Basically, this means that you can have only one page for the whole website and the rest of the content is managed on the server. Although you can mix dynamic and fixed content! The layout of the page (also called the master border) can be designed with the standard WYSIWYG Web Builder tools. The navigation (CMS Menu) will be automatically generated based on the site structure on the server, so you don't have to fill the menus manually.

### Note:

It's important to understand that this Content Management System is not a replacement for online solutions like Joomla, Drupal or WordPress. The CMS was designed as a supplement, not a replacement for WYSIWYG Web Builder websites. So you will create the layout in the software and the content online.

Also a CMS is **not an online HTML editor**. You do not edit the entire page, only the content area!

### Key features:

- Online administrator panel to add/edit/copy and remove pages.
- The administrator panel supports several popular editors like CKEditor, TinyMCE and CLEditor. It also has a simple built-in editor.
- You can hide pages from the menu structure which currently under construction.
- CMS has several individual 'design blocks' to give you as much flexibly as possible, so you can easily integrate the tools into your existing layouts.
- A CMS View object, which is a place holder for the online content.
- A CMS Menu object, which can be used to navigate between online pages. The menu has many customizable options.
- A CMS search object, which can be used to search online content. The search index will automatically be created/updated by the CMS.
- A CMS label object, this can be used to display the title of the page, the creation date, author, page views etc anywhere on the page.
- CMS integrates with the login tools so you can assign different users to the CMS but also have a global admin.
- The CMS supports external pages, so you can mix online content with standard pages. Or even pages from other websites.
- Includes a simple File Manager which can be used to upload and manage online files (like images).
- Supports plug-ins to extend the functionality of the CMS with (for example a guestbook, comments, password protection, a web shop etc.).

### Requirements:

The login tools require a web server with PHP support and MySQL, so the first step before you start using the CMS tools of WYSIWYG Web Builder is to check whether your web host supports PHP/MySQL!

A fully functional example template is included in the 'Demo' category of the standard Templates.

## CMS Database

The Content Management System requires a database to store the page data and other related information. This system uses MySQL, so your hosting account must have access to a MySQL database. Most paid hosting accounts do have database support included. And otherwise please contact your host to upgrade your existing hosting plan.

After checking if your website supports MySQL you should either create a new database or write down the details of an existing database. Please consult the documentation of your host for more details on how to create a database. This is different for each host so there are no generic instructions we can give you for that. To be able to use the CMS tools you will need the following information:

- Server  
Specifies the MySQL database server.
- Database  
Specifies the MySQL database name.
- UserName  
Specifies the MySQL username.
- Password  
Specifies the MySQL password.

The CMS will automatically create the required tables if they do not exist, so you do not have to create the tables manually. The following tables will be created (note that the table prefix 'CMS\_' is configurable):

### CMS\_PAGES

This table contains the page information like page title, content, created/updated date, view count etc.

### CMS\_SEARCH\_WORDS

This table is part of the search index and contains all unique words.

### CMS\_SEARCH\_WORDMATCH

This table is part of the search index and contains the word to page relationship.

Although these tables will be automatically created the first time you log in to the CMS Admin, you can also create them manually.

```
--
-- Table structure for table `CMS_PAGES`
--
CREATE TABLE `CMS_PAGES` (
  `id` int(10) unsigned NOT NULL auto_increment,
  `category_id` int(11) NOT NULL,
  `name` varchar(255) NOT NULL,
  `content` text NOT NULL,
  `home` tinyint(1) NOT NULL default '0',
  `visible` tinyint(1) NOT NULL,
  `create_date` timestamp NOT NULL default CURRENT_TIMESTAMP on update CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,
  `created_by` varchar(255) NOT NULL,
  `last_update_date` timestamp NOT NULL default '0000-00-00 00:00:00',
  `last_update_by` varchar(255) NOT NULL,
  `views` int(11) NOT NULL,
  `menu_index` smallint(4) NOT NULL,
  `url` varchar(255) NULL,
  `extra_data` varchar(255) NULL,
  `title` VARCHAR(100),
  `description` VARCHAR(255),
  `keywords` VARCHAR(255),
  `seo_friendly_url` VARCHAR(100),
  PRIMARY KEY (`id`));
```

```
--  
-- Table structure for table `CMS_SEARCH_WORDMATCH`  
--  
CREATE TABLE `CMS_SEARCH_WORDMATCH` (  
  `page_id` int(10) unsigned NOT NULL,  
  `word_id` int(10) unsigned NOT NULL,  
  PRIMARY KEY (`page_id`,`word_id`));  
  
--  
-- Table structure for table `CMS_SEARCH_WORDS`  
--  
CREATE TABLE `CMS_SEARCH_WORDS` (  
  `id` int(10) unsigned NOT NULL auto_increment,  
  `word` varchar(50) NOT NULL,  
  PRIMARY KEY (`id`)) ;
```



## CMS Admin

### Important Note:

The Content Management System tools are a set of advanced PHP forms and scripts. Please take your time to become familiar with tools. First read all available documentation and study the demo template before you start using them in your own project!

The CMS Administrator object allows you to add, edit or remove pages online.

You can (optional) install your favorite online HTML editor (like CKEditor, TinyMCE and CLEditor) to make the CMS tools even more powerful!

Name	Created by	Last update	Visible	Home page	Views	Order	Action
Home Page	admin	2011-09-22 06:30:40	Yes	Yes	147	<a href="#">Down</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Copy</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
Another comment	admin	2011-08-24 09:29:01	Yes	<a href="#">No</a>	25	<a href="#">Up</a> <a href="#">Down</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Copy</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
Pretty cool stuff!	admin	2011-08-13 04:39:03	Yes	<a href="#">No</a>	41	<a href="#">Up</a> <a href="#">Down</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Copy</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
Inline frame test	admin	2011-08-13 04:31:42	Yes	<a href="#">No</a>	32	<a href="#">Up</a> <a href="#">Down</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Copy</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
pagina 1	admin	2011-08-12 11:18:18	Yes	<a href="#">No</a>	59	<a href="#">Up</a> <a href="#">Down</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Copy</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
new stuff!	admin	2011-08-13 10:39:10	Yes	<a href="#">No</a>	5	<a href="#">Up</a> <a href="#">Down</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Copy</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>
Lorem ipsum	admin	2011-08-12 11:12:39	Yes	<a href="#">No</a>	52	<a href="#">Up</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>   <a href="#">Copy</a>   <a href="#">Delete</a>

[New Page](#) [File Manager](#) [Logout](#)

## Appearance

### Background Color

Specifies the color of the background.

### Border Color

Specifies color of the border around the object.

### Border Width

Specifies width of the border around the object.

### Font

Specifies the font used to display text in the object.

### Title Color

Specifies the title color.

### Title Text Color

Specifies the title text color.

### Text Color

Color of the text.

## Behavior

### Admin Password

Specifies the administrator's password.

### Allow Users

Specifies the users who can access the admin section. You can enter a list of comma-delimited users: Bill,Steve,Gary. These users should exist in your Login Tools configuration! If you leave this property empty, then all only the administrator can login (using the password specified under AdminPassword).

**Asset Folder**

Specifies the (online) folder where new files will be uploaded to.

If you specify `./files` then a folder with the name 'files' should exist in the current folder on the server and it should have write permissions. The folder can/will not be automatically created so you must create this yourself on the server.

**Frame Name**

To enable scrolling for a large list of pages, the CMS administrator will be displayed inside an inline frame. The 'FrameName' property specifies the name of this inline frame. Normally you do not have to edit this.

You can 'breakout' of the frame by directly linking to the script file like this:

`./cmsadmin.php`

or using the full URL:

`http://www.yourwebsite.com/cmsadmin.php`

In that case the full browser window will be used.

**Disable Page Management for users**

Enable this option to hide "Create new page", "Copy", "Delete", "Set homepage" and "Order" for standard users. The options will still be available for the administrator.

**Enable Error Reporting**

If you enable this option the script will activate detailed PHP error reporting. This may be helpful if you are experiencing problems with the CMS scripts on the server. If PHP Error Reporting is enabled more details about the error will be displayed.

**Session timeout**

The administrator will be logged out automatically if the session is idle (based on the specified timeout).

## *MySQL Database*

Please read CMS Database for more details.

**Database**

Specifies the MySQL database name.

**Password**

Specifies the MySQL password.

**Server**

Specifies the MySQL database server.

**Table Name**

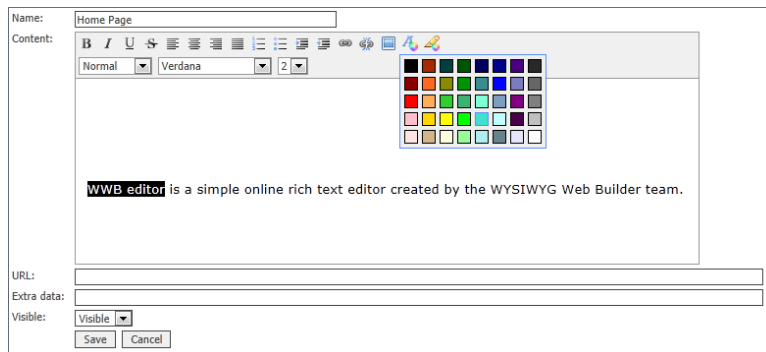
Specifies the MySQL table name prefix. The required tables will be automatically created in the specified database.

**User Name**

Specifies the MySQL username.

## Editor

In this section you can specify which editor will be used for editing the online content. WYSIWYG Web Builder supports several popular editors like CKEditor, TinyMCE and CLEditor. It also has a simple built-in editor.



### Note:

Due to license restrictions we are not allowed to distribute some of these editors with WYSIWYG Web Builder so you will have to manually install them on your computer before you will be able to use them! However once installed on your computer, WWB will take care of publishing and configuring the editors.

### Editor Height

Specifies the height of the editor.

### Editor Type

Specifies the editor type. The CMS Admin object has built-in support for the following editors:

- **TextArea**  
Standard plain text editor. No special requirements.
- **WWB Editor**  
A simple online WYSIWYG text editor created by the WYSIWYG Web Builder team. Supports basic text formatting and has configurable toolbar.
- **CL Editor**  
CLEditor is an open source jQuery plugin which provides a lightweight, full featured, cross browser, extensible, WYSIWYG HTML editor.  
<http://premiumsoftware.net/cleditor>
- **TinyMCE (jQuery version)**  
TinyMCE is a platform independent web based Javascript HTML WYSIWYG editor control released as Open Source under LGPL by Moxiecode Systems AB.  
<http://www.tinymce.com/>
- **CK Editor**  
CKEditor is a text editor to be used inside web pages. It's a WYSIWYG editor, which means that the text being edited on it looks as similar as possible to the results users have when publishing it. It brings to the web common editing features found on desktop editing applications like Microsoft Word and OpenOffice.  
<http://ckeditor.com/>

### Disclaimer:

Although we've added support for third party online editors, we do not and cannot give support on their functionality. Most online editors make use of the built-in HTML edit functionality of the browser, so you may notice different behavior between browsers. Unfortunately we have absolutely no control over that.

The editors must be installed in the My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\cms folder.

Each editor has its own folder:

My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\cms\ckeditor

My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\cms\cleditor

My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\cms\tinymce

My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\cms\wwbeditor

### Editor Settings

Specifies additional editor settings.

Most editors have many configuration options. To keep this solution as generic as possible we added this option so you can fine-tune the editor if you wish.

Consult the documentation of the specific editor for more details.

Here's an example for the WWB Editor which allows you to modify the toolbar.

For the full toolbar you can use the following settings:

```
buttons:
{
  'undo': false,
  'redo': false,
  'bold': true,
  'italic': true,
  'underline': true,
  'strikethrough' : true,
  'justifyleft':true,
  'justifycenter':true,
  'justifyright':true,
  'justifyfull':true,
  'insertorderedlist':true,
  'insertunorderedlist':true,
  'indent':true,
  'outdent': true,
  'createLink': true,
  'unlink' :true,
  'insertimage' : true,
  'inserthorizontalrule': false,
  'cut': false,
  'copy': false,
  'paste': false,
  'forecolor': true,
  'hilitecolor': true,
  'br': true,
  'formatblock': true,
  'fontname': true,
  'fontsize': true
}
```

Or for a basic toolbar you can use:

```
buttons:
{
  'undo': false,
  'redo': false,
  'bold': true,
  'italic': true,
  'underline': true,
  'strikethrough' : true,
  'justifyleft': false,
  'justifyleft': false,
  'justifycenter': false,
  'justifyright': false,
  'justifyfull': false,
  'insertorderedlist': false,
  'insertunorderedlist': false,
  'indent': false,
  'outdent': false,
  'createLink': false,
  'unlink' : false,
  'insertimage' : false,
  'inserthorizontalrule': false,
  'cut': false,
  'copy': false,
  'paste': false,
  'forecolor': true,
  'hilitecolor': true,
  'br': true,
  'formatblock': true,
  'fontname': true,
  'fontsize': true
}
```

Here's another example for tinymce. This code enables the 'advanced theme':

```
theme : "advanced"
```

and this example enables various plugins:

```
theme : "advanced",
plugins :
"pagebreak,style,layer,table,save,advhr,advimage,advlink,emotions,iespell,inlinepopups,insertdatetime,preview,media,searchreplace,print,contextmenu,paste,directionality,fullscreen,noneditable,visualchars,nonbreaking,xhtmlxtras,template"
```

Multiple options must be separated by commas (the last item does not have a comma! at the end):

```
option1 : "string_value",
option2: true,
option3 : numeric_value
```

### **Publish editor files**

Specifies whether to publish the editor files.

If this option is enabled then WWB will publish/upload all files from the editor to your website. Note that some editors use a lot of files so this may take a while.

In general, you enable this option the first time you published your website and after that disable it so the files will not be published the second time.

If you are an advanced user you can also upload the editor manually by using your favorite FTP client.

### *How to add a new page?*

1. Log into the admin section online. Either use the **AdminPassword** or log in by using a username/password from the login tools (in that case you must login using the login form).
2. Add a new page by clicking the 'New page' option.
3. In the **Name** field enter the name of the page. This name will be displayed in the CMS Menu.
4. The **Content** field contains the content of the page. If you have setup one of the editors then you will see a What-You-See-Is-What-You-Get editor. Otherwise you will see the standard text input which allows you to either enter plain text or HTML code.
5. The **External URL** field can be used to specify a link to an external page. This field should empty for standard pages! See 'How to include external pages' for more details.
6. The **Extra data** field can be used to assign extra data to a page and make it part of the layout. See 'How to assign extra data and display it on the page?' for more details.
7. **Visible** specifies whether the page should be displayed in the CMS Menu.
8. Click **Save** to save the new page..

### *How to include external pages in the CMS?*

1. Add a new page by clicking the 'New page' option in the Administrator.
2. Give the new page a name for example 'External page'.
3. Leave the content area empty.
4. Enter the URL of the external page in the URL field. This can either be an external page:  
`http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/` or an internal page: `./internalpage.html`

### *How to assign extra data and display it on the page?*

You can assign extra data to a page and make it part of the layout.

While in page editor mode of the administrator you will notice the 'Extra data' field, here you can write some text like a slogan which applies to the page.

In your page layout you can then use the CMS label object to display this text anywhere in the layout by using the `$cms_extra_data` variable.

### *CMS Plug-ins*

Plug-ins can add new commands to the plug-in menu (like the User Manager and File Manager). Or add new functionality to the page. For instance, the 'Comments' plug-in adds the ability for users to post comments on a page.

Plug-ins for the CMS are stored in the folder

My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\plugins\

Advanced users can modify the standard plug-ins to suit them to their needs or create new plug-ins. We have created a few plug-ins to demonstrate the new functionality and we will improve them in a future release if users find them useful.

Here's a list of plug-ins that are current available. They can be enabled through the 'plugins' property of the CMS Admin object. Enabled plug-ins will be uploaded to the server and placed in a sub folder (plugins) of the current folder.

You can enable/disable plug-ins online with the plug-in manager or by renaming the folder name (insert an underscore in front of the folder name. For example rename filemanager to `_filemanager`). Or simply remove the entire folder from the server.

#### **Important:**

Only publish the plug-ins you really need because all plug-ins will be loaded/processed by all pages even if they are not enabled for the page. So having too much plug-ins on the server may slow down the performance of the CMS.

**User Manager plug-in**

Add/Edit/Remove users online. This makes it possible to manage users without the need to integrate with WWB's login tools. Added users will be able to add or edit their own pages.

**Comments plug-in**

Adds the ability to post comments on a page.

**Discussion plug-in**

The Discussion plug-in enables you to add comments functionality to the page.

Users can comment on the content of the page and other users will be able to post replies to the comment to start a discussion.

**Downloads plug-in**

Automatically creates a list of links from files in a folder.

**FAQ plug-in**

Create a simple Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) page.

**Password plug-in**

Protect the CMS page with a password. This can be configured per page and each page can have its own password.

**File Manager plug-in**

Implements a basic file manager to upload files to the CMS.

**File Manager Plus plug-in**

A 'plus' version of the File Manager. Can be used to upload, rename and remove files and folders. Only for advanced users!

**Form plug-in**

Dynamically create forms online. Supports basic form validation (based on the selected input type) and reCAPTCHA. Submitted data can be sent in email and/or stored in a database and exported to CSV later.

**Guestbook plug-in**

Basic guestbook that can be integrated in the CMS.

**Mailing list plug-in**

Collect and manage email addresses in a mailing list. Users can subscribe to the mailing list by submitting their email address in the standard form. A confirmation email is sent to verify the email address. The admin can send messages to the subscribed users.

**Photo album plug-in**

The Photo Album plug-in is a basic online photo album solution for the CMS. It will display images from a folder on the server.

**Slideshow plug-in**

The Slide Show plug-in adds a slideshow to the CMS page.

**Plug-in Manager**

The plug-in manager can be used to enable/disable CMS plug-ins online.

**Poll plug-in**

A simple poll plug-in.

**Tell-a-friend plug-in**

Adds a basic tell-a-friend form to the CMS page.

**Notes about plug-ins:**

Each plug-in will automatically generate one or more database tables on the MySQL server! Tables will not be removed when you remove the plug-in!

The generated tables contain the plug-in configuration and other data (for example the guestbook plug-in will store messages).

So you should only install the plug-ins you actually need otherwise you will end up with a lot of (unused) database tables.



## CMS Label

The CMS label object must be on the same page as the CMS View object!

This object can be used to display the title of the current page, the creation date, author, page views etc anywhere on the page. It's a standalone object so you can position it individually of the CMS view object, for example as a page header or side bar.

### General

#### Text

Specifies the text to be display in the label. The following variables are available:

- **\$cms\_views**  
The number of times the page has been viewed.
- **\$cms\_name**  
The name of the page.
- **\$cms\_created\_by**  
The name of the creator of the page.
- **\$cms\_create\_date**  
Displays the creation date of the page.
- **\$cms\_last\_update\_date**  
Displays the date the page was last modified.
- **\$cms\_extra\_data**  
Displays the 'extra data' field of the page, which you can assign in the administer tool.

These variables will be replaced by the actual data from the CMS database and are directly related the the currently displayed pages inside the CMS View.

Note that the variables can be mixed with standard text, so for example you can use:

This page was last modified on \$cms\_last\_update\_date by \$cms\_created\_by

#### Alignment

Specifies horizontal alignment of the text.

### Style

In this section you can modify the appearance of the object. For more details about object styling please read Style.

## CMS Menu

The CMS Menu object must be on the same page as the CMS View object!

This object can be used to navigate between pages which are displayed inside the CMS View object. The CMS menu has many styling options. The items in the menu are driven by the CMS database, so you don't have to configure the links manually.

### General

#### Layout mode

The menu can be either vertical or horizontal.

#### Button size

Specifies the whether the button size is fixed or variable.

If fixed is selected, you can specify the width/height of the buttons through the width and height properties. If variable is selected then the size of the button depends on the text size in combination with the padding settings.

#### Spacing

Specifies the spacing between 2 buttons.

#### Use SEO friendly links

If you enable this option the menu will use SEO (Search Engine Optimization) friendly links in the navigation:

`http://www.website.com/cms.php?page=my-seo-friendly-page-name`

instead of

`http://www.website.com/cms.php?page=8`

Note that the link names are based on the page title as specified in the CMS Admin. So you must specify a title in the administrator before this option can be used.

### Style

In this section you can modify the appearance of the menu items. For more details about object styling please read Style.

#### Style Hover

In this section you can modify the appearance of the menu items when the mouse hovers over the object.

## CMS Search

The CMS Search object must be on the same page as the CMS View object!

This object can be used to search online content. WYSIWYG Web Builder's CMS will automatically add search words to the search index every time a page is created or updated.

The search index table keeps track of all unique words within the system and stores references to the pages containing these words for fast search results. The results of the search query will be displayed inside the CMS view object.

### *General*

#### **Hint text**

The hint (or 'cue') text will displayed inside the search field if it doesn't have the focus. When the user moves their focus to the field, the label will be hidden.

### *Results*

Defines the appearance of the result inside the CMS view object.

#### **No results**

Specifies the text that will be displayed if the search query has no results.

#### **Font**

Specifies the font family of the text, such as Comic Sans, Times New Roman, and Courier New.

#### **Font size**

Specifies the size of the text.

#### **Text Color**

Specifies the color of the text.

#### **Background color**

Specifies the background color of the results.

#### **Link color**

Specifies the color of links.

#### **Padding**

Sets the amount of space between the results and the border.

## CMS View

The CMS View object is a place holder for the online content. This is the most important part of the Content Management System because all page content will be displayed inside this area. You will navigation between pages by using the CMS Menu object. The CMS View object will also be used to display the result of a search query of the CMS Search Object. Normally your website will have only one CMS View object and there will be only one page in the Site Manager used for the system (or two if you have a separate page for the CMS Admin).

### MySQL Database

Please read CMS Database for more details.

#### Database

Specifies the MySQL database name.

#### Password

Specifies the MySQL password.

#### Server

Specifies the MySQL database server.

#### Table Name

Specifies the MySQL table name prefix. The required tables will be automatically created in the specified database.

#### User Name

Specifies the MySQL username

### General

#### Mode

Specifies the mode of the CMS view.

- **Variable Content (default)**  
The content of the CMS View will be controlled by the navigation. The visitor of the website decides which page will be displayed (via the CMS Menu). A page can only contain one CMS View that is set to 'Variable'!
- **Fixed Content**  
The content of the view is fixed and is not controlled by the visitor through navigation. The view will always display the same page (as specified by the page id property). This option can be useful if you want to display a fixed header or footer where the content is loaded from the CMS database. You can use multiple 'Fixed content' CMS views per page. For instance, for a header text, footer or other content.  
Since this option requires you to specify a (valid) page ID, you must first create the content of the page in the online CMS Admin. You always may want to set the visible option of the page to 'hidden'. So that it will not be displayed in the menu, but only will be used for the fixed view.

Note: You can view the page id in the admin section. For instance: hover with your mouse over the 'edit' link (or any of the other actions) and note the page id in the status bar of the browser.

### **Overflow**

The overflow property can be used to control the overflow behavior of the view.

- None  
The content of the view is fully visible. No clipping will occur.
- Hidden  
The content is clipped, but the browser does not display a scroll-bar to see the rest of the content.
- Scroll  
The content is clipped, but the browser displays a scroll-bar to see the rest of the content.
- Auto  
If the content is clipped, the browser will display a scroll-bar to see the rest of the content.

### **Use AJAX to load content**

Allow the user to quickly navigate between pages without have to reload the whole page! Only the content will be refreshed. Note that this uses jQuery in the background, so JavaScript must be enabled.

### **Use title and meta tags from database for Search Engine Optimization.**

Enable this option to use the title, description and keywords from the CMS database (specified in CMS Admin) instead of the title/meta tags configured in Page Properties.

This makes it possible to optimize the pages for SEO, because now each page will have its own title and metatags.

#### **Tip:**

A tutorial to get started with the CMS tools is available on the website:

[http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/cms\\_tools.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/cms_tools.html)

## Accordion

The Accordion object is named after the musical instrument, in the way the expansion of one area leads to the contraction of another. Typically, accordions are fixed so that only one area is visible at the same time. This object is based on the Accordion Widget of the jQuery UI library: <http://jquery.com/>.

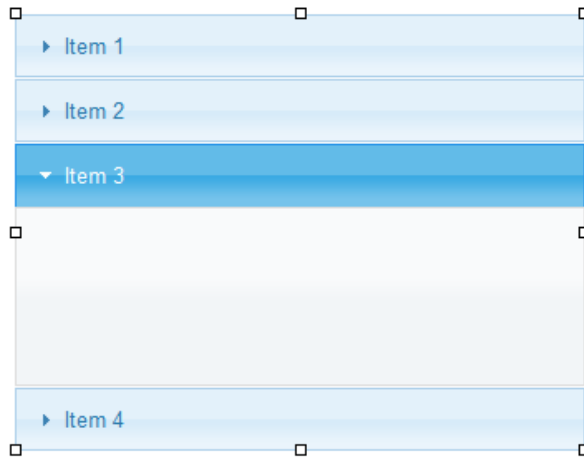
### Adding objects to the Accordion's Panels

You can easily add objects to the accordion panels by dragging them on the component. This works the same way as for layers or forms.

To be able to drag & drop objects to the accordion first make sure it's large enough so the objects can be dragged on it (the accordion object should be larger than the object you're adding!).

A blue border around the panel will indicate that the dragged object will become part of the accordion.

To add items to another panel simply click the header to make it active.



### General

In the General page you can add, edit and remove panels.

#### Note:

Removing a panel will also remove all objects that are part of this panel!

### Style

You can control the appearance of the Accordion widget in Style Properties.

The look and feel of this object is defined by the page theme. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in Theme Manager or by visiting the ThemeRoller website: <http://jqueryui.com/themeroller/>.

The **Font name** and **Font Size** properties can be used to override the default font of the theme.

### Padding

The padding properties control the text padding of the headers.

### Icon Offset

The expand/collapse icon offset can be with Icon Offset.

### Animation

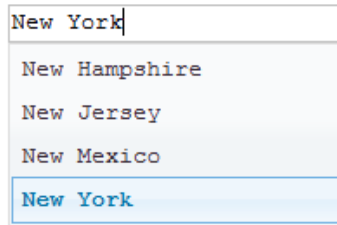
The Animation property enables the slide animation for hiding and showing panels.

### Activate on Mouseover

Activate on Mouseover can be enabled to change the active panel on mouse over instead of the standard mouse click.

## Auto Complete

AutoComplete can replace a standard editbox. It enables users to quickly find and select from a pre-populated list of values as they type. The list can be either local or from a remote location (AJAX). AutoComplete is based on the AutoComplete Widget of the jQuery UI library: <http://jquery.com/>.



### General

#### Data Source

Specifies the source for the auto complete items.

- Local**  
 Uses an local array as the data source. The items can be added, edited or removed by using the 'Add', 'Edit and Remove' buttons.
- Remote**  
 Select this option if you want to get the data from an external data source, like a database. You must also specify the URL in this case. This option is for advanced user only!

#### Delay

The delay in milliseconds the Autocomplete waits after a keystroke to activate itself. A zero-delay makes sense for local data (more responsive), but can produce a lot of load for remote data, while being less responsive.

#### Min Length

The minimum number of characters a user has to type before the Autocomplete activates. Zero is useful for local data with just a few items. It should be increased when there are a lot of items, where a single character would match a few thousand items.

#### Data

If the data source is local, then you must specify the auto complete data in this list. Use the 'Import' button to select from a predefined list of items or import the items from an external file where each item must be on a new line.

#### URL

When a remote data source is used, the Autocomplete object expects that the page returns JSON data. It can be on the same host or on a different one (must provide JSONP).

The request parameter "term" gets added to that URL. More details are available on the jQuery website: <http://jqueryui.com/demos/autocomplete/>

#### ThemeRoller theme

The look and feel of this object is defined by the page theme. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in Theme Manager or by visiting the ThemeRoller website: <http://jqueryui.com/themeroller/>.

The **Font name** and **Font Size** properties can be used to override the default font of the theme.

### Style

Here you can control the appearance of the edit box. See the description of the Edit box properties for more details.

## Themeable Button

This object enhances standard button (normal, submit, reset or anchor/link) to themeable buttons with appropriate mouseover and active styles. The button can be used as a submit button on a form or as a stand-alone button for navigation.



### General

#### Name

Name of the button.

#### Value/Label

Caption of the button.

#### Button Type

- **Submit**  
When activated, a submit button submits a form.
- **Reset**  
When activated, a reset button resets all controls to their initial values.
- **Normal**  
Normal (Push) buttons have no default behavior. Each push button may have client-side scripts associated with the element's event attributes. When an event occurs (e.g., the user presses the button, releases it, etc.), the associated script is triggered.
- **Link Button**  
If this button type is selected the button will act as a navigation button/link. You can specify the link properties in the 'Link' page.
- **Checkbox**  
The button will act as a checkbox, so it can be used as a replacement for the standard checkbox element in forms.
- **Radio Button**  
The button will act as a radio button, so it can be used as a replacement for the standard radio button element in forms. Give multiple buttons the same name to make them part of a group.
- **Split Button**  
Adds a drop down menu to the button. Each sub menu can have its own link.
- **Button Set**  
Adds the ability to define multiple buttons to create a themed navigation menu.

#### Access Key

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character. Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

#### Disabled

The disabled option disables the control for user input.

#### Tab Index

Specifies the tab index of the button (in a form).

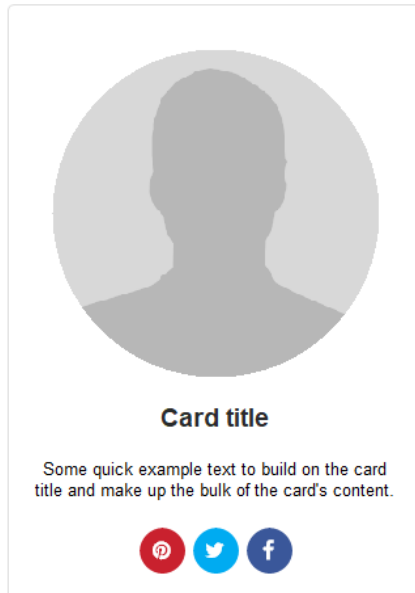
### Style

The look and feel of this object is defined by the page theme. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in Theme Manager or by visiting the ThemeRoller website: <http://jqueryui.com/themeroller/>.



## Cards

A card is a lightweight, flexible content container. It includes options for headers and footers, a wide variety of content, styling, and powerful display options. The Card object was inspired by Bootstrap's v4 Card component.



### Button

Buttons support many styling options like background, border, font, padding.

Buttons can be used as a link or trigger an action via events. If you leave the text field empty and set an icon then it can be used a 'social icon'. If multiple buttons are added sequentially then they will be displayed in one row. To display buttons on a different row, they must be separated with a divider. Set the border-radius to 500 to create a round button/icon.

### Divider

A divider can be used to insert a line.

### Header / Footer

Add an optional header or footer within a card. The header/footer can be configured as heading (h1..)

A header will always be added as the first item.

A footer will always be added as the last item, at the bottom of the card.

### Image

Add an image to the card. By default, the image will be full width, but you can optionally set a width and height. These values are responsive and can be different in breakpoints. An image can either be inline or overlay. When set as overlay it will be rendered behind all other items. You can only use one overlay images per card.

### Text

Add text to the card. Text will always be full width. Use padding to add spacing around the text.

### Popover

Cards can also be used as Popovers, this basically uses the Card as an advanced tooltip/pop-up box that appears when the user clicks or hovers on an element. Popovers can be placed at the top, right, bottom or left of the container object and can be activated via click, hover or focus.

## Card Container

The Card Container is a dedicated container for Cards to simplify laying out a series of cards. Just layout grid and flex box container, the card container is a full-width, floating element. So, it cannot have a absolute position.

The Arrange Tools can be used to move the container up or down the page.

Card Container has the following layout options:

- **card deck**  
automatically aligns the cards horizontally with equal width and height. Even with different content lengths! Basically, card deck is just a simplified version of a Flex Container where the flexbox properties of the Card will be forced to flexgrow: 1, flexshrink: 1, flexbasis: 0%
- **card columns**  
organize the cards into Masonry-like columns. Cards are ordered from top to bottom and left to right.
- **carousel**  
displays the cards in an animated carousel using owl carousel (<https://owlcarousel2.github.io/OwlCarousel2/>). The number of cards per slide and spacing is configurable per breakpoint. It is also possible to set how many cards will be scrolled per page. The card carousel can be controlled via events: media play, media stop, slideshow next, slideshow previous

### Maximum Width

Specifies the maximum width of the Card Container's content in the browser window. This can be useful to prevent items from being stretched to wide. If the browser window is wider than the specified width then the grid content will be centered.

### Column Count

Specifies the number of columns. This value can be different in breakpoints.  
Applies 'card columns' and 'carousel' modes.

### Column Gap

Specifies the spacing between the columns. This value can be different in breakpoints.  
Applies 'card columns' and 'carousel' modes.

### Pause Time

Specifies the pause time for each cycle in milliseconds.

When you set a negative pause time, the carousel will scroll continuously (like a Conveyer Belt). For example: -3000

### Slide By

Specifies how many cards will slide in each cycle. The default '1' will slide card at a time.

### Auto Start

Specifies whether to automatically start the carousel animation. When set to 'false' the carousel can be controlled via events.

### Navigation

Controls the style of navigation dots in carousel mode.

## DatePicker

The DatePicker offers a sophisticated and feature-rich UI component for inputting dates into a form. The object provides a graphical calendar that pops up if you click inside the form field.

This object is based on the DatePicker Widget of the jQuery UI library: <http://jquery.com/>

The appearance of the DatePicker object is customizable through ThemeRoller themes.



### General

The look and feel of this object is defined by the page theme. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in Theme Manager or by visiting the ThemeRoller website: <http://jqueryui.com/themeroller/>.

The **Font name** and **Font Size** properties can be used to override the default font of the theme.

#### Use current date

This will automatically set the initial value to the current date.

#### Date format

The format for parsed and displayed dates. For a full list of the possible formats see the formatDate function:

<http://docs.jquery.com/UI/Datepicker/formatDate>

#### Change month

Specifies whether the user can change the month by selecting from a drop-down list.

#### Change year

Specifies whether the user can change the year by selecting from a drop-down list.

#### Show button panel

Specifies whether to show the button panel.

#### Custom options (for advanced users only)

The DatePicker has many other options. The custom options field allows you to include one or more of these options. Check the jQuery documentation for more details.

### Style

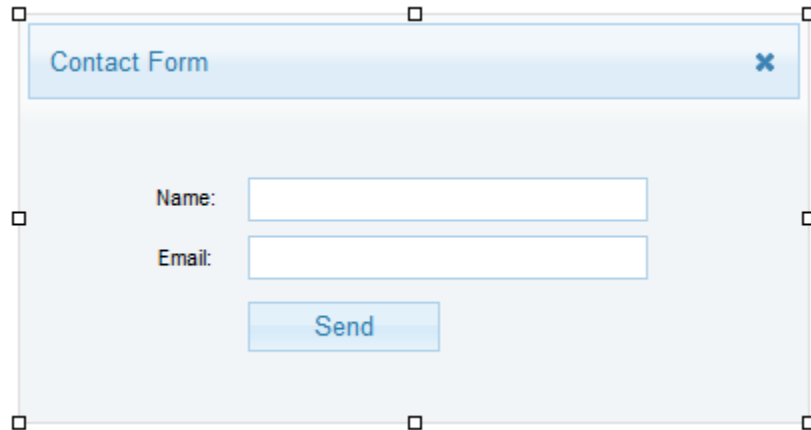
Here you can control the appearance of the edit box. See the description of the Edit box properties for more details.

## Dialog

A dialog is a floating window that contains a title bar and a content area. You can drag & drop objects to the dialog to make them part of the window. The Dialog is based on the Dialog Widget of the jQuery UI library: <http://jquery.com/>

The appearance of the Dialog object is customizable through ThemeRoller themes.

You can easily add objects to the dialog by dragging them on the component. This works the same way as for layers or forms.



### General

#### ThemeRoller theme

The look and feel of this object is defined by the page theme. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in Theme Manager or by visiting the ThemeRoller website: <http://jqueryui.com/themeroller/>.

The **Font name** and **Font Size** properties can be used to override the default font of the theme.

#### Title

Specifies the title of the dialog.

#### Icon Offset

The 'Close' icon offset from the right side of the header can be with Icon Offset.

#### Width

Specifies the width of the dialog.

#### Height

Specifies the height of the dialog.

#### Show animation

Specifies the effect to be used when the dialog is opened.

#### Hide animation

Specifies the effect to be used when the dialog is closed.

**Horizontal alignment**

Specifies where the dialog should be displayed: 'left', 'center', 'right'.

Select 'Absolute position' to use the current x position in the workspace.

**Vertical alignment**

Specifies where the dialog should be displayed: 'top', 'center', 'bottom'.

Select 'Absolute position' to use the current y position in the workspace.

**Modal**

If enabled, the dialog will have modal behavior; other items on the page will be disabled (i.e. cannot be interacted with). Modal dialogs create an overlay below the dialog but above other page elements.

**Resizable**

If enabled, the dialog will be resizable.

**Draggable**

If enabled, the dialog will be draggable by the title bar.

**Close on escape**

Specifies whether the dialog should close when it has focus and the user presses the escape (ESC) key.

**Show dialog automatically**

When this option is enabled the dialog will open automatically when dialog is called. Otherwise it will stay hidden until `.dialog("open")` is called on it.

**Q: How can I show or hide the dialog via JavaScript?**

A: It's very easy to show or hide the dialog from JavaScript.

Add the dialog widget to your page.

Take note of the ID. The default value is 'dialog'.

Add an image, shape or other object with event support to the page.

Open the properties and select the 'Events' tab.

Click 'Add' to insert a new event.

Select 'Event': OnClick and set the 'Action' to JavaScript function.

To show the dialog enter this JavaScript:

```
$('#dialog').dialog('open');
```

where dialog is the ID of the dialog.

To hide the dialog enter this JavaScript:

```
$('#dialog').dialog('close');
```

... or you can simply use the Show and Hide event actions!

**Advanced**


The advanced page contains a few properties to fine tune the appearance of the dialog. For example, you can control the padding of the title.

You can also add one or two buttons to the dialog. To enable a button, give the Button1Text and/or Button2Text a value. Button1Function/Button2Function specifies the (JavaScript) function for the button.

If you do not specify a function the button will act as a close button.


ListView

Create beautiful styled (jQuery UI themable) lists with title, description and image. Two modes are supported: listview and droplist. Also supports dividers to group items.




Lorem Ipsum

Dolor Sit Amet Consectetur Adipiscing Elit




Integer Nec Odio

Praesent Libero Ante Dapibus Diam



Nulla Quis Sem

At Nibh Elementum Imperdiet



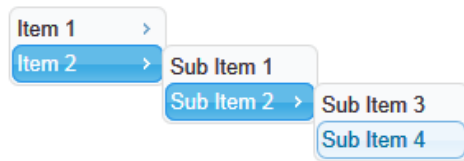
Duis Sagittis Ipsum

Mauris Massa Vestibulum Lacinia Arcu Eget Nulla

## Themeable Menu

Themeable (multi level) menu with mouse and keyboard interactions for navigation.

The Themeable Menu object is based on the Menu Widget of the jQuery UI library: <http://jquery.com/>.



### General

Select **Add** to insert a new item to the menu.

Select **Edit** to modify the properties of an existing item.

To remove an item from the MenuBar select **Remove**.

### Move Up

Move the selected item up amongst its siblings.

### Move Down

Move the selected item down amongst its siblings.

### Move Left

Make the selected item a sibling of its parent.

### Move Right

Make the selected item the child of its preceding sibling.

### Layout

The Menu Bar can be either Vertical or Horizontal.

### Orientation

Identifies the position of submenus in relation to the associated parent menu item.

### Target

Specifies the target window of the links when 'Synchronize with Site Manager' is enabled.

### Style

The look and feel of this object is defined by the page theme. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in **Theme Manager**.

### Menu mode

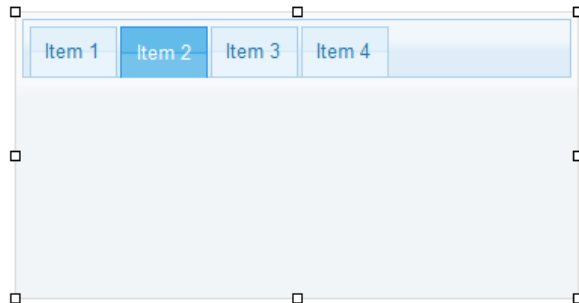
In 'Standard menu' mode the menu will be displayed at the same position as in design mode.

In 'Context menu' mode the menu will behave as a context menu. The menu will be displayed on right click at the current mouse position.

## Tabs

Tabs can be used to break content into multiple sections that can be swapped to save space, much like the accordion. The Tabs object is based on the Tabs Widget of the jQuery UI library: <http://jquery.com/>

You can easily add objects to the tab panels by dragging them on the component. This works the same way as for layers or forms. To add items to another panel simply click on the tab header to make it active.



### General

In the General page you can add, edit and remove tab pages.

### Style

The look and feel of this object is defined by the page theme. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in Theme Manager or by visiting the ThemeRoller website: <http://jqueryui.com/themeroller/>.

The **Font name** and **Font Size** properties can be used to override the default font of the theme.

### Tab Width

Tab Width specifies the width of the tabs. Use '0' for a variable tab width.

### Sortable

If the Sortable property is enabled then the user can sort the tabs dynamically using drag & drop, a cool feature of jQuery;) )

### Activate On Mouseover

Enable this option to change the active tab on mouse over instead of the standard mouse click.

### Use fade transition effect

The Use fade transition effect property enables the fade animation for hiding and showing tab panels.

### Collapsible

Enable Collapsible to allow an already selected tab to become unselected again upon reselection.

### Enable automatic rotation through tabs

This enables automatic rotation through tabs with configurable duration.

### Continue the rotation after a tab has been selected by a user.

Specified whether or not to continue the rotation after a tab has been selected by a user.

### Duration

The amount of time in milliseconds until the next tab in the cycle gets activated.

### Advanced

The advanced page contains a few properties to fine tune the appearance of the dialog. For example, you can control the padding of the title.



## **Toast**

Toasts are lightweight notifications designed to mimic the push notifications that have been popularized by mobile and desktop operating systems. They can be displayed at page load or with delay. Multiple Toasts will automatically stack vertically.

### **Text**

The text can be edited just like standard text. So, the same formatting and edit tools are available, including styles, line spacing, letter spacing, bullets, find/replace, lorem ipsum, responsive fonts and link support.

### **Show Delay**

Specifies the delay (in milliseconds) before the Toast is shown. Set to '-1' to initially hide the Toast, so you can control it via events (show/hide).

### **Hide Delay**

Delay hiding the toast in milliseconds. Set to '0' to disable auto hide.

### **Title**

Specifies the title of the toast.

### **Sub Title**

Specifies the (optional) sub title.

### **Position**

Specifies the placement of the Toast.

This is a global property. This means that it will affect the placement of all Toasts on the current page!

### **Header Style**

Specifies the style of the header.

### **Icon**

The header can also include an icon from one of the available icon libraries.

Online tutorial:

<https://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/toasts.html>

## Progressbar

The progress bar is designed to simply display the current % complete for a process. For example, as part of a customized upload script or to display the status of an Online Survey. The range of the progress bar is from 0 to 100.

**Note:**

The value of progress bar is usually updated through JavaScript. It does not do anything by itself!

### General

**Initial Value**

Specifies the initial value of the progress bar. Typically, this is '0'.

### Style

You can control the appearance of the Tab widget in Style Properties.

**ThemeRoller theme**

The look and feel of this object is defined by the page theme. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in Theme Manager or by visiting the ThemeRoller website: <http://jqueryui.com/themeroller/>.

### Example

Here is an example how to update the value of the progressbar through JavaScript.

1. Add the progressbar widget to your page.
2. Take note of the ID. The default value is 'jQueryProgressbar1'.
3. Add an image, shape or other object with event support to the page.
4. Open the properties and select the 'Events' tab.
5. Click 'Add' to insert a new event.
6. Select 'Event': OnClick and set the 'Action' to JavaScript function.

To update the value (0 - 100) of the progressbar the following code

```
$('#Progressbar1').progressbar('option', 'value', 75);
```

where Progressbar1 is the ID of the progressbar.

## Slider

The slider widget represents a value that is selected by dragging the thumb along the background. It's a simple widget, comprised of two main elements: the slider handle (also called the thumb) and the slider background.

### Note:

The value of progressbar is usually updated through JavaScript. It does not do anything by itself!

### General

#### Orientation

Specifies whether the slider has the min at the left, the max at the right (= horizontal) or the min at the bottom, the max at the top (= vertical).

#### Animation

Specifies whether to slide handle smoothly when user click outside handle on the bar.

#### Initial Value

Specifies the initial value of the slider.

#### Minimum Value

Specifies the minimum value of the slider.

#### Maximum Value

Specifies the maximum value of the slider.

#### Range

Changes the appearance of the slider. A min range goes from the minimum value to the handle. A max range goes from the handle to the maximum value.

#### Height/Width

Specifies the height (if the orientation is horizontal) or width (if the orientation is vertical) of the slider background.

#### Handle Width

Specifies the width of the slider handle.

#### Handle Height

Specifies the height the slider handle.

### Style

You can control the appearance of the Tab widget in Style Properties.

#### ThemeRoller theme

The look and feel of this object is defined by the page theme. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in Theme Manager or by visiting the ThemeRoller website: <http://jqueryui.com/themeroller/>.

## Events

Events can be used to update other parts of the page based on the current state of the slider.

The following events are supported:

### **slidestart**

This event is triggered when the user starts sliding.

### **slide**

This event is triggered on every mouse move during slide.

Use `ui.value` to obtain the value of the current handle.

### **slidechange**

This event is triggered on slide stop, or if the value is changed programmatically (by the `value` method).

### **slidestop**

This event is triggered when the user stops sliding.

### **action**

Specifies the action to be taken when the event is triggered.

- Set value, sets the value of a form element (for example editbox, button or textarea)
- Custom code. Here you can implement your own code that will be inserted inside the callback function.

```
function(event, ui)
{
  // your custom code will be inserted here...
};
```

Use `ui.value` to obtain the value of the handle.

Example:

```
$("#Editbox1").val(ui.value);
```

## Example

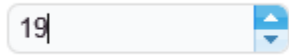
Here is an example how to update the value of an editbox.

1. Add an Editbox to the page.
2. Take note of the ID. The default value is 'Editbox1'.
3. Add the slider widget to your page.
4. Open the properties of the Slider and select the 'Events' tab.
5. Click 'Add' to insert a new event.
6. Select 'Event': slidechange and set the 'Action' to Set Value.
7. In Target select the editbox ('Editbox1').

## Spinner

Enhance a text input for entering numeric values, with up/down buttons and arrow key handling.  
Note that this object is normally used on a form as a replacement for the standard editbox.

The jQuery Spinner object is based on the Spinner Widget of the jQuery UI library: <http://jquery.com/>



### General

#### Name

Enter an identifier for the field.

#### Initial Value

Value that is initially display in the field.

#### Minimum Value

The minimum allowed value.

#### Maximum Value

The maximum allowed value.

#### Steps

The size of the step to take when spinning via buttons.

#### Incremental

Controls the number of steps taken when holding down a spin button.

When set to true, the stepping delta will increase when spun incessantly. When set to false, all steps are equal (as defined by the step option).

#### Disabled

The disabled option disables the control for user input.

Disabled controls do not receive focus.

Disabled controls are skipped in tabbing navigation.

The value of disabled controls will not be submitted with the form.

#### Access Key

This attribute assigns an access key to the object. An access key is a single character.

Pressing the access key gives focus to the element.

#### Tab Index

All elements (except hidden elements) in a form are part of the form's tab order.

When the user presses the Tab key, the browser shifts the input focus from element to element in order the elements appear in the HTML code.

However, sometimes you want the tab order to flow a little differently. In that case, you can number the fields using tabindex attribute.

Usually the first tabindex start on with value '1'. To exclude an element from the tab order, set the value of tabindex to 0. In that case the element is skipped when the user tabs around the form.

#### Title

Specifies the tooltip displayed by the browser.

## Wizard

This implements a wizard like component, which can be used (for example) to create a multi-page form. The wizard can either be modal (popup) or used as a standard element.



The Wizard object is based on the Dialog object and has the same properties. The main difference with the Dialog is that you can add multiple pages (steps). Adding objects works the same as with other containers, simply drag & drop the objects inside the drop area. Click the 'Next' or 'Previous' button to go to another step.

**Note:**

If the Wizard is used as a form, then the 'Finish' button will act as a submit button, otherwise it will simply close the Wizard.

## Tooltips

Customizable, themeable tooltips, replacing native tooltips. The tooltip supports text formatting and can be assigned to any WWB object.

The Tooltip object is based on the Tooltip Widget of the jQuery UI library: <http://jquery.com>



### General

#### Object ID

Specifies the ID of the associated object. The tool tip will be displayed when the user hovers over the specified object.

#### Animation

Specifies the animation that is used to show/hide the tooltip: None, Fade or Slide.

#### Track the mouse

Specifies whether the tooltip should track (follow) the mouse.

#### Content

Specifies the context (text) of the tooltip. The text can be formatted by using the style tools.

#### Position

Identifies the position of the tooltip in relation to the associated parent object.

### Style

The look and feel of this object is defined by the page theme. You can set the theme for the whole in Page Properties->Style->Theme. Themes can be created/edited with the built-in **Theme Manager**.

## jQuery Mobile

jQuery Mobile is a framework for creating mobile web applications. jQuery Mobile works on all popular smartphones and tablets. WYSIWYG Web Builder uses jQuery Mobile as the basis for (responsive) mobile web pages. When you create a mobile page, you will have a dedicated set of tools for mobile web design. And although most of the objects have the same names, most of them have been optimized for mobile web design and therefore will behave slightly different than in a standard layout.

One of the main differences is the styling of objects. Unlike in a standard page, in jQuery mobile all objects are styled by themes and swatches.

### Theme

The jQuery Mobile theme provides the CSS framework necessary for providing a consistent and touch-friendly look and feel for your widgets across platforms.

It supports many CSS3 properties, such as rounded corners, shadows, and gradients. It also provides a lightweight icon set, which can be used in objects like buttons, menus etc.

You can select the theme for the page in the Page Properties.

### Swatches

A swatch is one of several color schemes provided by your theme. A theme can support up to 26 swatches, each identified with a single-letter (A, B, C, D etc.).

The built-in jQuery Mobile Theme Manager allows you to create any number of swatches for a custom theme.

### jQuery Mobile objects

The following objects are only available for mobile web pages.

- Collapsible
- Flip Switch
- Layout Grid
- Listview
- Nested Menu
- Panel
- Popup Menu
- Responsive Table
- Slider
- Tabs

### Standard objects optimized for jQuery Mobile

The following standard objects have been optimized for jQuery Mobile. Their appearance is also affected by the jQuery Mobile theme.

- Button
- Checkbox (supports multiple items)
- Combobox
- Editbox
- Go Menu
- Login
- Logout
- Navigation Bar
- News Feed Ticker
- Radio Button (supports multiple items)
- Site Search
- Text Area
- Text Menu



### Common jQuery Mobile properties

The following properties are available in most jQuery Mobile objects.

#### Corners

Applies the theme border-radius if set to true.

#### Full Width

Specifies whether the object should use the full width of the page. If this option is set to false then the object will have a 'fixed' width, which is usually the total of the text, padding and margin of the object.

#### Inset

By setting this option to false the element will get a full width appearance without corners.

#### Mini

Sets the size of the element to a more compact, mini version.

#### Swatch

By default, the appearance of a jQuery Mobile object is determined by the page theme (as set in the page properties). But each theme can have up to 26 variations (swatches).

In the Swatch property you can select one of those variations. Note that you can change the style of themes and swatches in the Mobile Theme Manager.

#### Use Field Container

Specifies whether to wrap the object in a field container to help visually group it in a longer form. The container aligns the label and form controls correctly and adds a thin border to act as a field separator. The layout of the label and control is automatically defined based on the device's width. If the device width is small then the label is placed at the top of the form control. If not then the label is placed at the left in a 2-column layout.

#### Icons

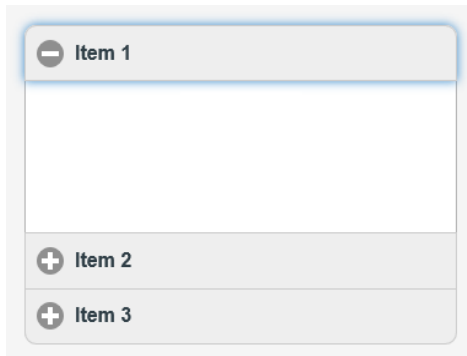
jQuery Mobile provides a number of icons that can be used by objects that support them like Buttons, Listviews, Collapsible etc.



## jQuery Mobile Collapsible

The Collapsible object is based on the Collapsible widget from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/collapsible/>



Collapsible creates a collapsible blocks of content. The Collapsible object can have multiple panels which are containers for other objects. These panels can be expanded or collapsed by clicking on the header icon.

### Icon Collapsed

Sets the icon for the header of the collapsible container when in a collapsed state.

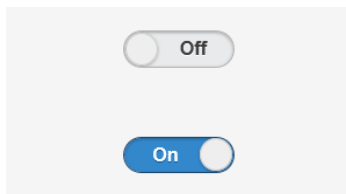
### Icon Expanded

Sets the icon for the header of the collapsible container when in an expanded state.

## jQuery Mobile Flip Switch

The Flip Switch object is based on the Flip Switch widget from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/flipswitch/>



The flip switch is an alternative look to the checkbox. It can be toggled by a click or a swipe.

## jQuery Mobile Slider

The Slider object is based on the Slider widget from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/slider/>

Slider is an alternative look to the editbox for numeric values. Specify min and max attribute values to set the slider's range. If you want to constrain input to specific increments, then set the step attribute.



## jQuery Mobile Layout Grid

The Layout Grid object is based on Responsive Grid from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/responsive-grid/>



You can use a layout grid to place objects next to each other in your web page. The layout grid creates column cells with equal width. For example, if the layout grid has two columns then they both will be 50% of the page width. The grid will always use the full width of the page and can be have up to 5 columns, although it's not recommended to use too many columns for smaller screens.

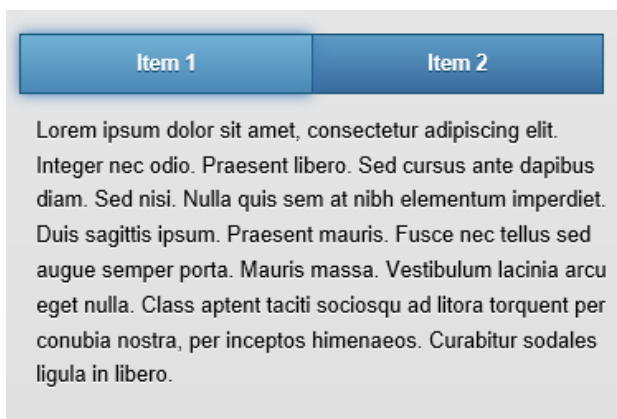
To add an object to the layout grid simply drag & drop it on a cell. A cell can have multiple objects which will be alignment according to the specified alignment (left, center, right).

The layout grid is responsive. This means that on smaller screens the layout will swap to stacked layout.

## jQuery Mobile Tabs

The Tabs object is based on the Tabs widget from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/tabs/>



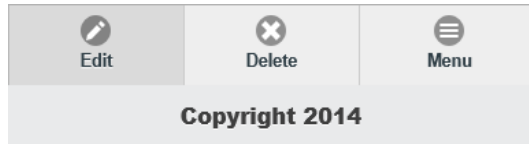
Tabs is a single content area with multiple panels, each associated with a header in a list.

You can easily add objects to the tab's panels by dragging them on the component. This works the same way as for layers or forms. To add items to another panel click the header/tab to make it active.

## jQuery Mobile Footer

The Footer object is based on the Toolbar widget from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/toolbar/> A footer is usually the last element inside each mobile page and it typically contains a combination of text and (navigation) buttons.



### Fixed Position

Causes the footer to float above the content via CSS position.

### Full Screen

Sets whether the footer should be hidden entirely when the page is tapped.

### Header tag

Specifies the header tag (H1...H6) that will be used for the footer.

### Title

Specifies the title of the footer.

### Navigation bar

Here you can (optionally) configure navigation buttons that will be part of the footer.

Each button can have text, an icon and a link. 'Icon position' positions the icon in the button. Possible values: left, right, top, bottom, none.

## jQuery Mobile Header

The header is a toolbar at the top of the page that usually contains the page title text and optional buttons positioned to the left and/or right of the title for navigation or actions.

Headers can optionally be positioned as fixed so they remain at the top of the screen at all times instead of scrolling with the page.



The title text is normally an H1 heading element but it's possible to use any heading level (H1-H6) to allow for semantic flexibility.

### Fixed Position

Causes the footer to float above the content via CSS position.

### Full Screen

Sets whether the toolbar should be hidden entirely when the page is tapped.

### Header tag

Specifies the header tag (H1...H6) that will be used for the footer.

### Title

Specifies the title of the header.

### Navigation bar

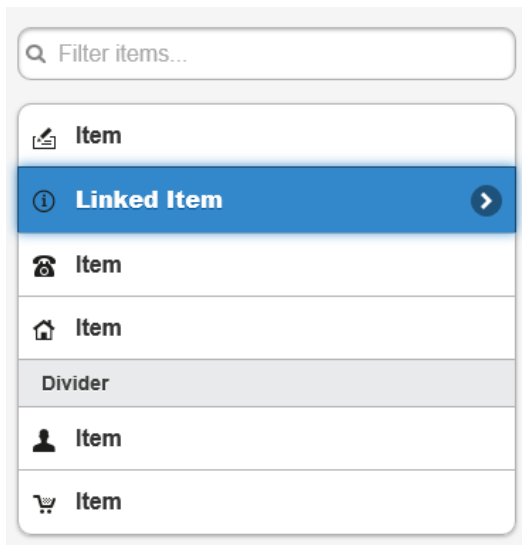
Here you can (optionally) configure navigation buttons that will be part of the footer.

Each button can have text, an icon and a link. 'Icon position' positions the icon in the button. Possible values: left, right, top, bottom, none.

## jQuery Mobile Listview

The Listview object is based on the Listview widget from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/listview/>



A listview is a themed list of items which can have images, links and even a search filter.

### Items

Manage the items in the list. Linked items will have a right arrow indicator. It's also possible to insert dividers between the items to create groups.

### Thumbnail Size

Set the size of the thumbnail images. All images in the list must have the same size.

### Place Holder

Specifies a short hint to help the user to fill out the input field. The text will disappear as soon as the user enters some text.

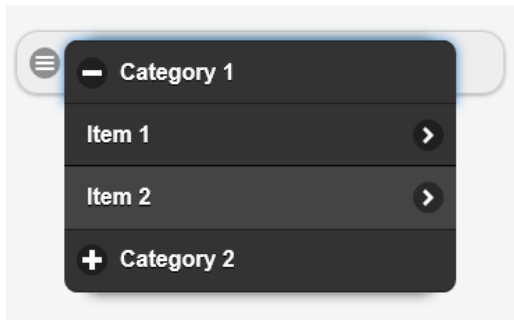
### Search Filter

Add a search filter bar to the listview.

## jQuery Mobile Nested Menu

The Nested Menu object is based on the Popup widget from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/popup/>



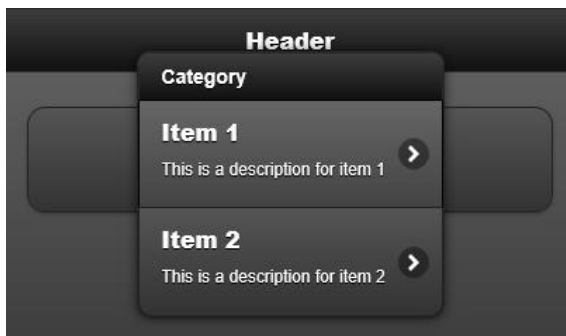
Initially the nested menu displays a single button on the page. When the user clicks the button a popup menu will appear. This is a combination of the Collapsible and Listview objects.

The menu items can be categorized and each category can be collapsed/expanded.

## jQuery Mobile Popup Menu

The Popup Menu object is based on the Popup widget from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/popup/>

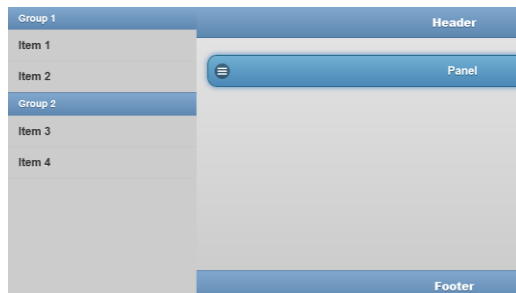


Initially the popup menu displays a single button on the page. When the user clicks the button a popup menu will appear. The menu can also include dividers to create groups.

## jQuery Mobile Panel

The Panel object is based on the Panel widget from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/panel/>



A Panel is initially invisible, but can slide from the right or left side of the page by clicking the menu button. The content of the panel can either be a listview/menu or another page!

### Close Button Text

Specifies the text to be shown on the button.

### Content

Specifies whether to use a listview/menu or page for the content.

If you select 'listview' then the panel will act as a menu. If you select 'page' then you can select another page. In that case all object from that page will be embedded in the current page.

### Display Mode

Specifies the relationship of the panel to the page contents.

- **reveal**  
Push the page over.
- **push**  
Re-flow the content to fit the panel content as a column.
- **overlay**  
Sit over the content.

### Position

Specifies whether the panel menu will be displayed at the left or right side of the page.

### Dismissible

Specifies whether the panel can be closed by clicking outside onto the page.

### Fixed Position

Sets whether the panel has fixed positioning so the contents are in view even if the page is scrolled down. This also allows the page to scroll while the panel stays fixed.

### Swipe Close

Specifies whether the panel can be closed by swiping left or right over the panel.



## jQuery Mobile Responsive Table

The Responsive Table object is based on the Table widget from the jQuery Mobile framework:

<http://api.jquerymobile.com/table/>

One of the biggest challenges in responsive web design (RWD) is presenting tabular data. Large tables with lots of columns don't fit on smaller screens and there isn't a simple way to re-format the table content with CSS and media queries for an acceptable presentation. To address this, the jQuery Mobile framework offers two different options for presenting tables responsively. Each has benefits and tradeoffs, the right choice will depend on the data being presented.

**Reflow mode** - Re-formats the table columns at narrow widths so each row of data is presented as a formatted block of label/data pairs. This is ideal for tables with product or contact information with more complex or lengthy data formatting that doesn't need comparison across rows of data. In reflow mode you can set the breakpoint for when the table will switch to stacked layout. The default value (-1) will convert from tabular presentation to the stacked presentation at 560px (35em).

Rank	Movie Title	Year	Rating
1	Citizen Kane	1941	100%
2	Casablanca	1942	97%
3	The Godfather	1972	97%
4	Gone with the Wind	1939	96%
5	Lawrence of Arabia	1962	94%

Rank	1
Movie Title	Citizen Kane
Year	1941
Rating	100%
Rank	2
Movie Title	Casablanca
Year	1942
Rating	97%
Rank	3
Movie Title	The Godfather
Year	1972
Rating	97%
Rank	4
Movie Title	Gone with the Wind
Year	1939
Rating	96%
Rank	5
Movie Title	Lawrence of Arabia
Year	1962
Rating	94%

**Column toggle mode** - Selectively hides columns at narrower widths as a sensible default but also offers a menu to let users manually control which columns they want to see. This mode is better for financial data tables that have compact values and need to maintain comparisons across columns and rows of data. It can also be used for building things like product comparison tables.

The table works by hiding and showing columns based on two inputs: available screen width or by the user checking and unchecking which columns to display in a column picker popup. Add data-priority attributes to each of the table headers of columns you want to responsively display and assign a priority (1 = highest, 6 = lowest).

The first thing you will need to do is define the table structure. For each column you can set the column name, priority and alignment. The priority (1 = highest, 6 = lowest) is used only in Column toggle mode. Columns will be displayed based on the available screen width and priority.

After you have defined the structure, you can add data. You can either manually insert the items or import data from a comma separated file.

Columns...

Rank	Movie Title	Year	Rating
1	Citizen Kane	1941	100%
2	Casablanca	1942	97%
3	The Godfather	1972	97%
4	Gone with the Wind	1939	96%
5	Lawrence of Arabia	1962	94%

Rank

✓ Movie Title

✓ Year

✓ Rating

Citizen Kane		
Casablanca		
The Godfather		
Gone with the Wind	1939	96%
Lawrence of Arabia	1962	94%

## ***Publish your website***

You can publish your web pages using the build-in Publish tool.  
Select File->Publish to launch the publish dialog.

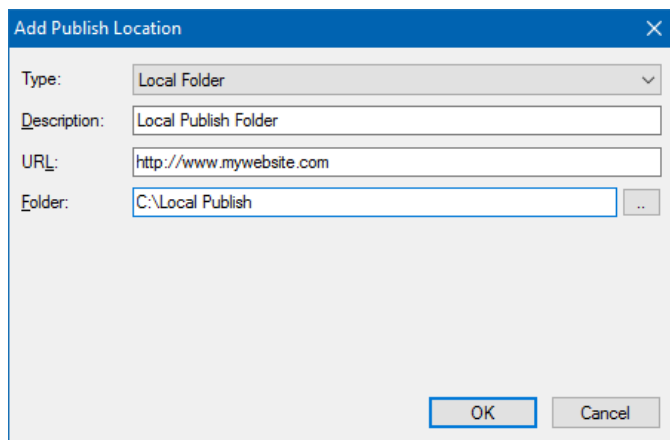
There are two ways to publish your pages:

1. Publish to a local folder.
2. Publish to a remote FTP server.

### ***Publish to a local folder***

Click **Add** to add a new location to the list.

Enter a name for the location and select **Local** as type.

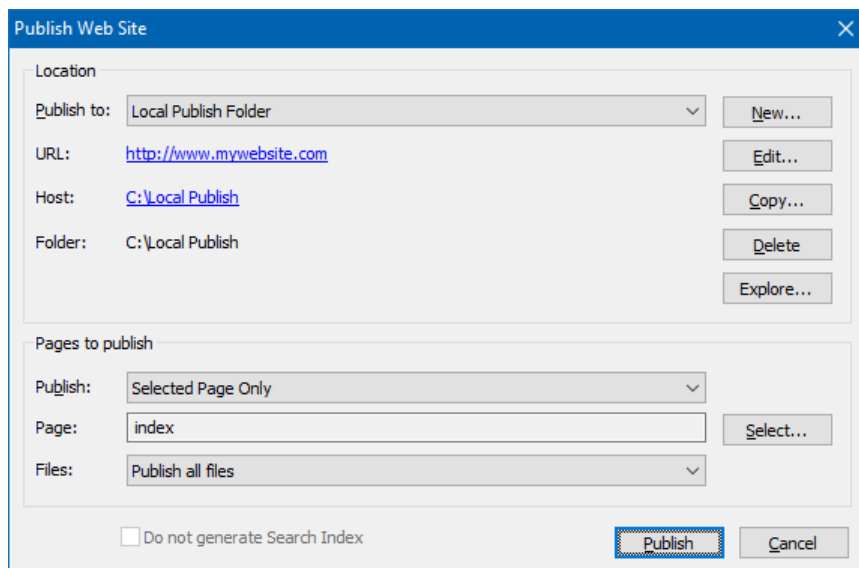


The 'Add Publish Location' dialog box has a blue title bar with a close button. It contains four input fields: 'Type' (a dropdown menu set to 'Local Folder'), 'Description' (a text box with 'Local Publish Folder'), 'URL' (a text box with 'http://www.mywebsite.com'), and 'Folder' (a text box with 'C:\Local Publish' and a browse button). At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Enter the folder where you want to publish the active document.

Click OK to save the data and then click Publish to save the files to the specified folder.

If you do not want to copy images or other components along with the HTML file, select the **Only publish HTML files** option. Otherwise, all images, ActiveX controls, java applets etc. will be copied the same folder.



The 'Publish Web Site' dialog box has a blue title bar with a close button. It is divided into two sections. The 'Location' section has 'Publish to:' (a dropdown menu set to 'Local Publish Folder'), 'URL:' (a text box with 'http://www.mywebsite.com'), 'Host:' (a text box with 'C:\Local Publish'), and 'Folder:' (a text box with 'C:\Local Publish'). To the right of these fields are buttons: 'New...', 'Edit...', 'Copy...', 'Delete', and 'Explore...'. The 'Pages to publish' section has 'Publish:' (a dropdown menu set to 'Selected Page Only'), 'Page:' (a text box with 'index'), and 'Files:' (a dropdown menu set to 'Publish all files'). To the right of these fields is a 'Select...' button. At the bottom, there is a checkbox labeled 'Do not generate Search Index' and 'Publish' and 'Cancel' buttons.

**Publish to a remote FTP server.**

Click **Add** to add a new location to the list.

Enter a name for the location a select **Remote/FTP Server** as type and fill in the following fields:

**Host**

The Host Address field contains the location of the FTP server.

You can either specify a URL or IP address.

**Port**

The default Port of a FTP connection is 21, but if necessary you can configure something else.

**PASV mode**

PASV mode is useful for certain types of firewalls that do not allow FTP servers to initiate data connections back to the connected client.

**Username**

This is where you enter the username of the FTP account that allows you to logon to the FTP Server (also see anonymous setting).

**Password**

Enter the password of the FTP account.

**Remote Folder**

Specifies the folder on the FTP server where the files are uploaded. The default is your root directory. Common remote folders locations are:

/www

/public\_html

**Important note:** Unfortunately, this value is different for each webhost, so consult your webhost's documentation for more details.

**Test Connection**

This command can help you determine if the specified hostname, username and password are correct. It also verifies if your firewall allows the connection to the server.

The '**Explore**' button in publish settings give you access to your published files. Clicking this button will launch the Built-in FTP Client to manage your online files.

The built-in FTP client also introduces an easy way to find the remote publish folder. Simply login to your account, browse to the folder and click 'Make Home'. WYSIWYG Web Builder will now use that folder as the root of your website!

### **Pages to Publish**

Select which page or pages you want to publish.

**Entire Web Site**, publishes all pages of the web site (except the pages which have enabled 'Don't Publish this Page' in Page Properties)

**Select Page Only**, publishes the select page, click Select to specify the page to be published.

**Select Page and Sub Pages**, publishes the select page and all of its sub pages (if any).

### **Files**

Specifies which files will be published.

- **Publish all files**  
All files of the selected page(s) will be published
- **Publish HTML files only**  
Select this option if you do not want to upload images or other components along with the HTML file.
- **Publish files of modified objects only**  
Select this option if you only want to publish files of objects that were modified since the last time you published your web site. What exactly gets published depends on the changes you've made. For example, if you've only changed the position of an object, then only the HTML file was changed, but if you've changed the size of a shape, then the shape image needs to be regenerated and therefore the HTML and the image file will be published.  
Note that this option does not compare local files and files on the server, because that would take too long. Instead it checks whether an object was modified since the last publish. If you changed one or more properties of an object then all files for that object will be published. For small changes this will reduce the number of publish/uploaded files.

### **Backup**

Specifies whether to make a backup of the project on the server.

- **None**  
No backup
- **Make a backup of the project file (.wbs only)**  
This will publish/upload the project file to the server. Images and other files will not be included!
- **Make a complete backup of the project file in zip format.**  
This will publish/upload the project, images and other file to the server in one zip file.  
Note: images and other files will only be included if they are stored in the project folder. There for, the option "Let WYSIWYG Web Builder manage images and other files used by a project" should be enabled.

### *More information about publishing*

To make your web pages available for other users you have to publish them to a web server. There are lots of hosting companies available, for example:

<http://www.1and1.com>

<http://www.godaddy.com/>

Make sure you choose a web host, which supports FTP, which makes it much easier to publish your pages from Web Builder. Once you have registered to a web host, you will receive a server address, username and password. Enter this information into Web Builder by selecting: File->Publish. Click Add and select Type Remote. Sometimes you also need to specify a remote folder like 'public\_html'. if you have a firewall/router select '**Use passive mode for transfers**'. Click OK to save. Now you can publish each page simply by selecting Publish. If you want to view the results of the file transfer, you can view the log file via: Tools->Options->Publish->View Log.

### *How to publish on host that offer free web hosting that do not support FTP?*

Instead of publishing your web pages directly via FTP, you can also publish your pages to a local folder.

- Click Add and select Type Local.
- Enter a Name and specify a location using the browse (..) button.
- Click OK to save.
- Now if you press the Publish button, the files will be generated to the local folder.
- Next select all the files in the local publish folder and upload them using the File Manager of your web host.

### *Publish to a Secure FTP server*

To publish to a Secure FTP server (SFTP or FTPS) you will need to install the Secure FTP extension which is separately available: <http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/secureftp.html>

### *What to do in case of publishing errors?*

Please see the publish FAQ, for solutions to common publishing problems:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/forum/viewtopic.php?f=10&t=36493>

## Links

(Hyper)links are text or images that can be clicked to bring the user to another web file such as a web page, images or any other file. They are the essence of the World Wide Web as they link pages within sites and web sites to other web sites.



**Highlight** the text or image that will be the link and select Insert->Link from the menu bar or pressing CTRL+K. This will display the Insert Hyperlink window.

### Link to a page on another web site

Set the **Link To** option to **External Web Address**. Enter the full URL (Internet Address) of the destination page in the URL box. External URLs MUST begin with "http://" or they will not work.

For example, to link to the Pablo Software Solutions home page, type "http://www.pablosoftwaresolutions.com/" instead of "www.pablosoftwaresolutions.com".

### Link to a page on your own web site

Set the **Link To** option to **Page in this project**.

Click 'Select' to choose a page. This will list all pages which are part of the current project. Select one of the pages and a relative link will automatically be created (eg [./products.html](#)).

- You must publish all pages you have linked to in order to be able to test relative links.
- Internal links do not work in Preview mode, unless you have set the **Preview Scope** to Entire Web Site (Tools->Options->Preview)

### Link to an email address

Select **Email Address** from the Link To dropdown list.

The URL box will automatically be updated with the **mailto:** prefix. Now enter the destination email address. For example:

mailto:webmaster@yourdomain.com

or

mailto:webmaster@yourdomain.com?subject=Website Feedback

### Link to a file

Set the **Link To** option to File. Browse for the file you wish to create a link for. WYSIWYG Web Builder will automatically upload the local file to your website, when you publish your page.

**Note:** When linking to large files, it may take a while a while before the file is transferred to your website!

### Smart Links

Smart links can be used to link to the next, previous, parent or child of the current page. If you change the structure of your website, these links will automatically update to represent the current state.

The following smart link options are available:

- **Parent Page;** Link to the parent of the current page.
- **Child Page;** Link to the first child of the current page.
- **Next Page;** Link to the sibling to the right of this page.
- **Previous Page;** Link to the sibling to the left of this page.
- **Back;** Go back to the previous page in the browser's history.
- **Close the current browser window;** Close the current browser window, this feature is not supported by all browsers!
- **Print the current page;** Clicking the link will print the current page.
- **Reload Page;** Clicking the link will reload/refresh the current page.

### Other link types

- **FaceTime**  
Launch the FaceTime app and initiate a call to the specified user. Example:  
facetime:14085551234 or facetime:user@example.com
- **Phone Number**  
Call the specified number. Example: tel:+1200229933
- **SMS**  
Send an SMS. Example: sms:+3290322111
- **Skype**  
Launch the Skype app and initiate a call to the specified user. Example: skype:skype\_user

### Target Window or Frame

**Open in the same browser window,** this option will set the target of the link to `_self`

**Open in a new browser window,** this option will set the target of the link to `_blank`

**Open in another window or frame,** this option lets you specify a custom target.

Examples:

**\_parent**

open the link in the parent frame

**\_top**

loads the linked page in the topmost frame

**iframe1**

specify the name of an inline frame, to open the linked page in an inline frame.

**Open in a popup window,** this option will open the linked page in a (JavaScript) popup window.

Click 'Settings' to specify the properties of the popup window:

**Left,** Specifies the left position, in pixels. This value is relative to the upper-left corner of the screen. The value must be greater than or equal to 0.

**Top,** Specifies the top position, in pixels. This value is relative to the upper-left corner of the screen. The value must be greater than or equal to 0.

**Height,** Sets the height of the window in pixels. The minimum value is 150 for Internet Explorer!

**Width,** Sets the width of the window in pixels. The minimum value is 250 for Internet Explorer!

**Status Bar,** Enable the status bar at the bottom of the window.

**Tool Bar,** Enable the standard browser toolbar, with buttons such as Back and Forward.

**Location Bar,** Enable the Location entry field where you enter the URL.

**Menu Bar,** Enable the menu bar of the window.

**Resizable,** Allow/Disallow the user to resize the window.

**Scrollbars,** Enable the scrollbars if the document is bigger than the window

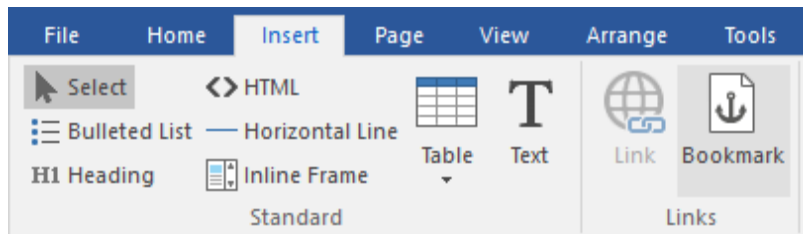


**Bookmarks (Jump to another part of the page)**

Text and images can be set as bookmarks (also called "anchors") that can be linked to within a page. For example, if a page has several new items, the news titles for each item can be set as bookmarks and a row of links can be added to the top of the page that will each skip down to those bookmarked sections. This method of using bookmarks allows visitors to your site to quickly access information by not having to scroll down the page to view the information they want.

**Step 1**

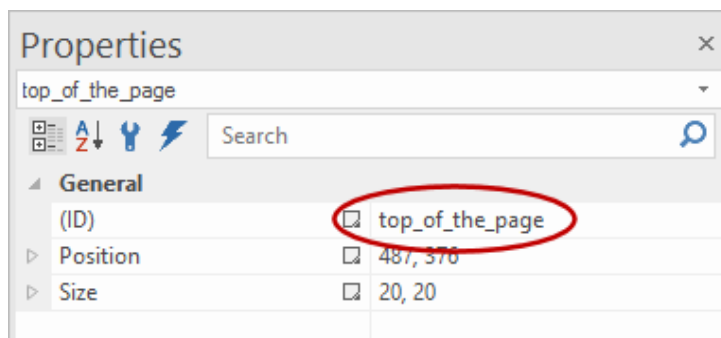
You can create a Bookmark by using the Bookmark tool from the Insert menu

**Step 2**

Move the bookmark icon to the position where you want the page to jump to if the user clicks the link.

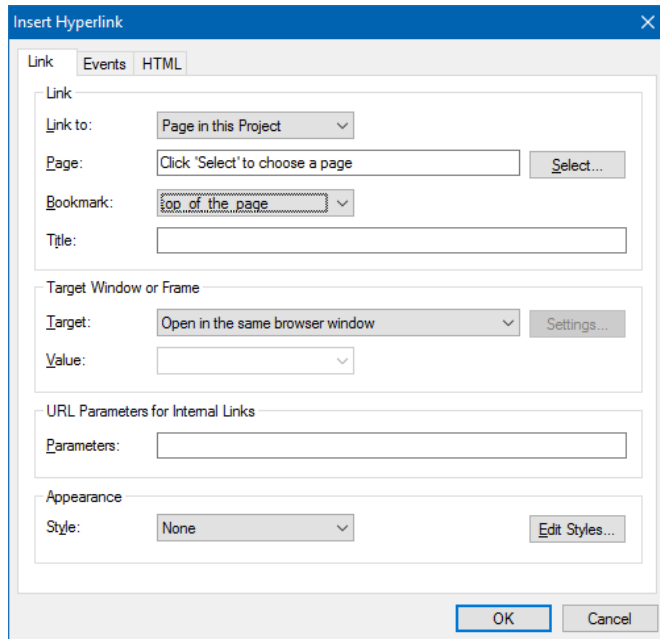
**Step 3**

Make sure you give the bookmark a unique ID.



**Step 4**

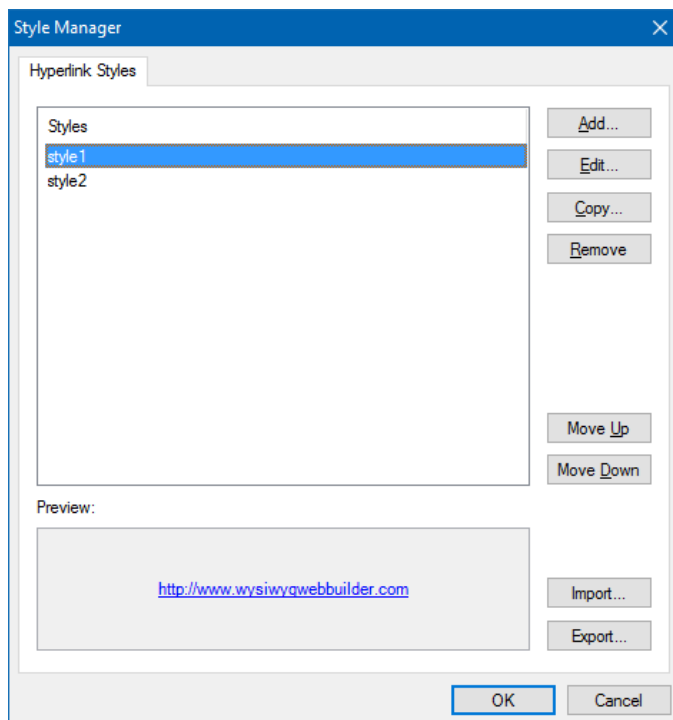
Once you have placed the bookmark on your page, it can be selected from the Bookmark dropdown.

**Appearance**

All hyperlinks in your webpage by default use the default HTML link colors (link: blue, visited: purple, active: red). By defining Hyperlink Styles (CCS) you can adjust the colors and formatting of an hyperlink. Once you have defined a style you can attach it to the hyperlink by selecting it from the **Style** dropdown list. Click the **Edit Styles** button to add or modify the hyperlink style sheet.

**Hyperlink Style Sheet**

By default, all text hyperlinks on a page use the default HTML link colors (link: blue, visited: purple, active: red). However, by using hyper link styles it's possible to use different colors and other effects.



Click **Add** to add a new hyperlink style. Each hyperlink style allows you to customize the colors for all four hyperlink states:

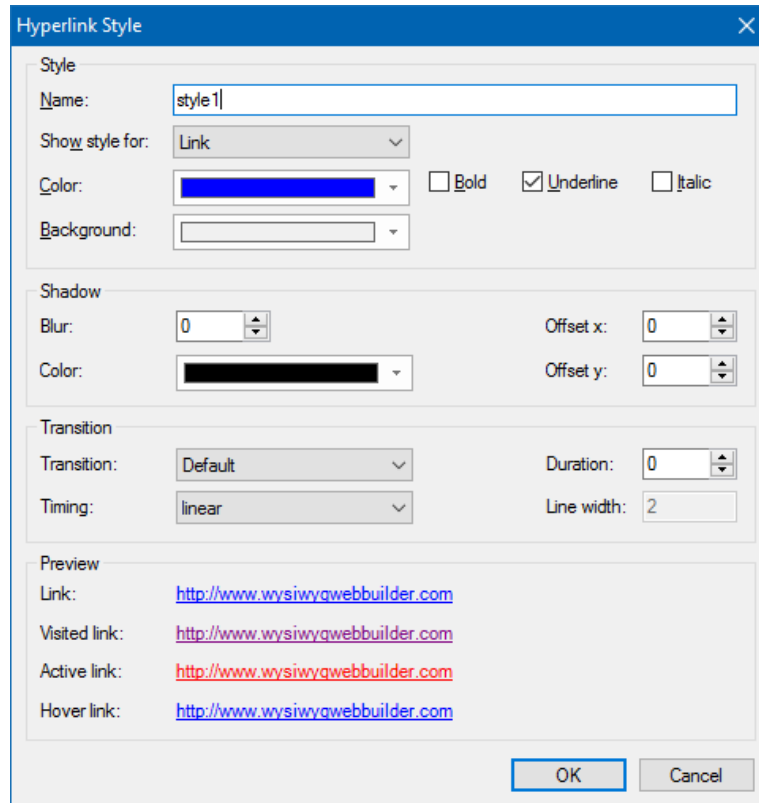
**Linked** (default: blue, underlined)

**Visited** (default: purple, underlined)

**Active** (default: red, underlined)

**Hover** (default: blue, underlined)

Besides the colors, you can also change the bold, underline and italic formatting.



Each style must be saved with a unique name.

In the Link Properties window, you can attach this name to a link.

Click **Edit** to modify an existing style and **Remove** to delete it from the list.

Example: Removing the underlining from a link.

1. Create a new style and clear the underline checkbox for all four states.
2. Name the style 'no\_underline'
3. Click OK to save.
4. Select a link and change the **Style** from the dropdown list to 'no\_underline'
5. Publish or preview the page to view the effect.

**Note:** The link style becomes active when you publish or preview your page. Web Builder will always show links in blue.

### Transition

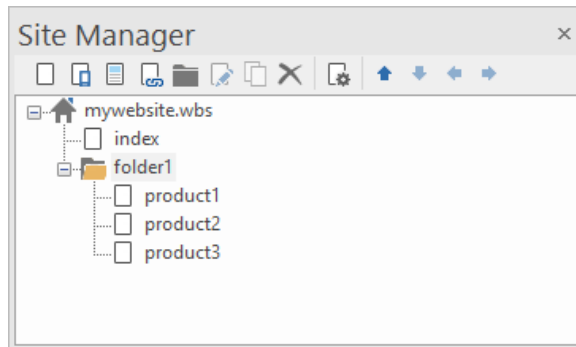
Specifies transition duration to go from one state to another. This makes it possible to animate the link state change. Read more about transitions here: [CSS3 Animations and Transitions](#).

## Site Manager

The Site Manager can be used to manage the structure of your web site.

When your web site has more than one page they **must** all be part of the same Web Builder project file.

The Site Manager can be used to add, edit, remove pages and organize your web site. There is also a button to open the properties of the selected page. The New Folder command give you the possibility to organize your pages in folders.



In the picture above, you see an example of a web site structure. The filename of this example web site is called 'mywebsite.wbs', this name is always displayed at the root of web site tree. The root can have one or more pages and each page can also have sub pages.

Web sites always have a **home page**, which is often called **index**, so for this reason Web builder automatically adds this page to each new project. The names of the items (pages) in the site tree are the actual file names of the target HTML files, so if you named a page 'index' it will publish as **index.html**.

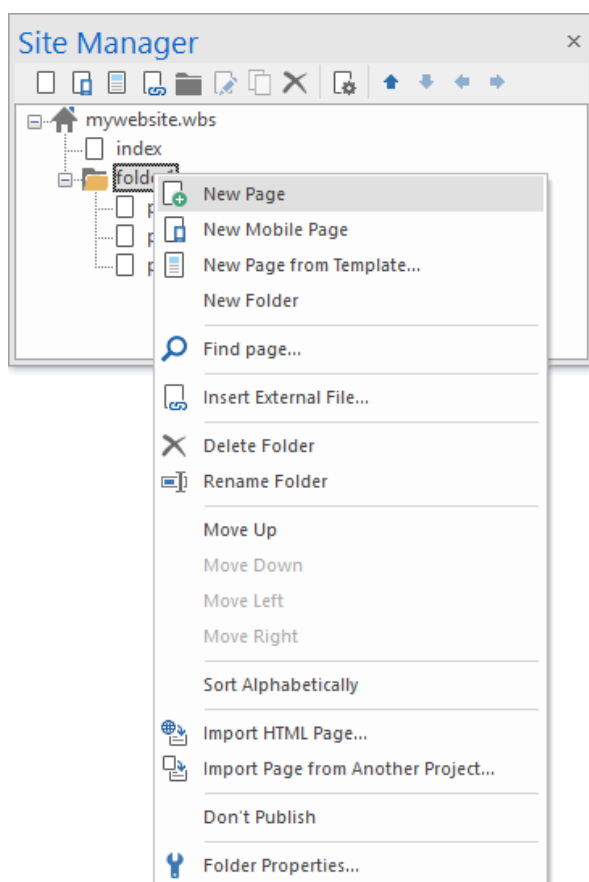
### Adding a new page

1. Select the position where you want to insert the page, for example select the root (the top level item) to insert the page to the first level.
2. Click the first button on the toolbar (New Page)
3. Web Builder adds the new page to your project and will automatically open it, so you can start building the page.

To insert a new page as child of an existing page or folder, first select the parent and click 'New Page'

#### Tip:

You can also use the context menu (right mouse click) to add new pages to the web site or you can select Page->New Page from the Web Builder menu.



### ***Adding a new folder***

1. Select the position where you want to insert the folder, for example select the root (the top level item) to insert the page to the first level.
2. Click the second button on the toolbar (New Folder)
3. Web Builder adds the new folder to your project.

### ***Open an existing page***

1. Select the item (page name) you want to edit
2. Click the third button (from the left) on the toolbar (Edit Page).

### ***Inserting an external file***

This option can be useful if you want to make an external file part of the project, so you can easily link it or make it part of the sitemap.

And although this option was designed to include HTML files, it can basically be used for any type of file.

Note however that it will only be a link to the file. You will not be able to edit the file directly in WYSIWYG Web Builder.

### ***Cloning an existing page***

To make an exact copy of an existing page, select the item (page name) you want to clone and click the fourth button (from the left) on the toolbar to insert a copy of that page.

### ***Remove a page/folder***

Select the item (page or folder name) you want to remove and click the remove button on the toolbar or press the Delete key on the keyboard. You cannot remove the last page in your web site.

### ***Rename a page/folder***

Select the item (page or folder name) and press F2 to enter the new name.

You can also use the context menu (right mouse click) to select and rename a page/folder.

When you have linked to the page, you are renaming (from any page within the web site), Web Builder automatically updates all the links for you, so you don't have to redo all the internal links.

### ***Notes about page names***

While building your web site, Web Builder saves the project file with the .wbs extension. This is a project file used by Web Builder to simplify the building process. One project file can contain multiple web pages. Once your pages are ready you must export or publish them as HTML.

The name of the output HTML file is taken from the name you have specified in the Site Manager.

So if you named the page index then the output file will be called index.html. If the page needs another extension like .php, you can configure this in the Page Properties.

Here are a some guidelines how to name your web pages:

6. Do not add .html or .htm extension to the page name. Web Builder will automatically add the .html extension (or .php, .asp) when it publishes (or exports) the HTML code.
7. Always name your homepage: "index", this is the most common name for a homepage.
8. Always use lowercase filenames, most web servers are case sensitive and might fail to find your page if you have called it "Index" or "INDEX"
9. Do not use space or other special characters in the name, keep them simple like:  
"page1"  
or  
"my\_products"
10. Use underscores to connect words.

### ***Edit Page Properties***

To edit the page properties without having to open the page:

1. Select the item (page name)
2. Click the Properties button on the toolbar or right click for the context menu and select Page Properties.

### *Arrange Items*

You can arrange items by using drag and drop, select the item and drag it to the position where you want to move it to. Dropping an item on another item will automatically make it a child of this item. To prevent this, you can hold down the CTRL key, this will move the item below the drop item.

Another way to arrange items is using the context menu:

1. Select an item
2. Right click to display the menu.
3. Select Arrange and one of the available items: Move Up, Move Down, Move Left or Move Right.

### *Import HTML Page*

Although Web Builder is NOT an HTML editor, you can import existing HTML pages.

Select **Page->Import->Import HTML Page** from the menu to display the Import HTML page window.

You can either select an HTML page from your local drive or specify a URL of an online website.

Click **OK** to start importing the page. Web Builder will automatically copy all images to your local drive.

Important notes about importing HTML:

- WYSIWYG Web Builder is not an HTML editor, but an HTML generator! Web Builder imports the HTML by rendering the contents of an existing page and then attempts to convert the layout to Web Builder's internal object format.
- The import feature currently only imports text, images, form elements and body attributes (link colors, background images, meta tags). Tables, scripts, style sheets and multimedia components are not imported. But in most cases, this is good enough to get you started.
- Web Builder does not parse style sheets, so in some cases the text may look different than the original page.
- Web Builder currently doesn't support framesets. If you want to import a web page that is using frames you'll have to import all individual pages separately.
- It is very difficult to support all different types of HTML. Even the popular browsers will interpret HTML differently, so don't expect miracles. If a page fails to be imported it probably contains code that Web Builder doesn't understand and you still have to start from scratch.

Importing web pages created with WYSIWYG Web Builder will give the best results!

### *Import a page from another project*

This option makes it possible to import page from another WYSIWYG Web Builder project.

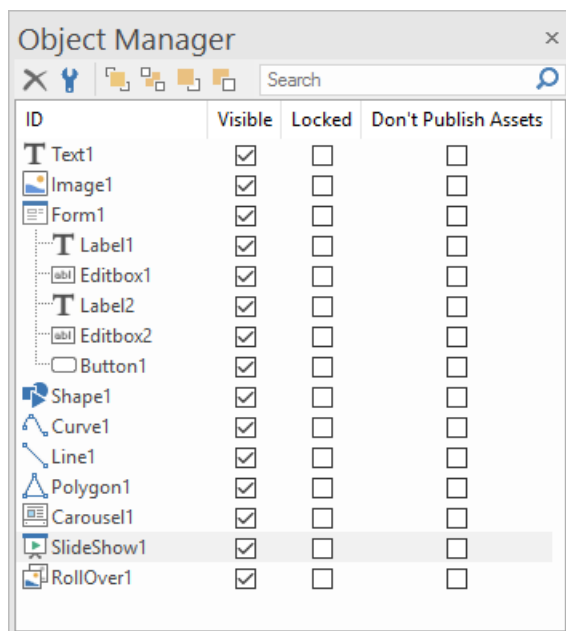
### *Position and size of the Site Manager*

You can place the Site Manager anywhere you like (docked or floating):

1. 'Grab' the title bar of the site manager with your mouse to move the window to another location.
2. To make the Site Manager auto hide, click the pushpin in the top-right corner. When you move the mouse away from the window it will auto hide, only display a small tab where the windows hides. Move the mouse to that tab to make the window visible again.

## Object Manager

The Object Manager gives an overview of all objects in the current page; you can make object invisible, lock/unlock objects, change the z-order or remove a specific object. Double click an object in the list to select it in the workspace.



The Object Manager also provides some advanced features through the context menu (right click on an object in the list):

### Rename Object

Allows you to modify the ID property of the object. Note that you can also modify the ID in the Property Inspector.

### Hide in other breakpoints

Hide the selected object in other breakpoints (but not in the current view) .

### Unhide in all breakpoints

Unhide the selected object in all breakpoints (including the current view) .

### Reset position

This option can be useful in breakpoints when you have 'lost' an object because it's outside the viewport. 'Reset Position' moves the object to the upper left corner of its container.

### Allocated Filenames

Many objects dynamical generate images. For example, shapes, navigation bars, but also images with effects (like shadows).

WYSIWYG Web Builder will automatically generate unique filenames for these images, to make sure there are no conflicts.

The automatically generated names are determined by the settings in the Publish options.

To view or edit the automatically generated filenames for an object you can select Allocated Filenames from the context menu.

Not all objects do support this option. It's only useful for object that dynamically generate images!



### ***More about the z-order of objects***

WYSIWYG Web Builder uses CSS positioning to create pixel perfect layouts in HTML. CSS operates in three dimensions - height, width and depth. In Web Builder each object (element) of your web page is placed on a separate layer, which makes it possible to overlap these objects something which cannot be done using standard HTML/dynamic page layout). For that purpose, you can assign each element a number (z-index). Elements with a higher z-index overlap an element with a lower z-index. The z-order is the order in which objects will be displayed by the browser.

WB automatically generates the z-index for each object you add to your page. So the first element will have z-index '0', the next object '1' etc. To change the z-index of objects you can use the arrange tools (Layout->Arrange) or the Object Manager. The following arrange tools are available:

#### **Move To Front**

Move object to front of the page

#### **Move To Back**

Move object to back of the page

#### **Move Forward**

Move object to next position in z-order

#### **Move Back**

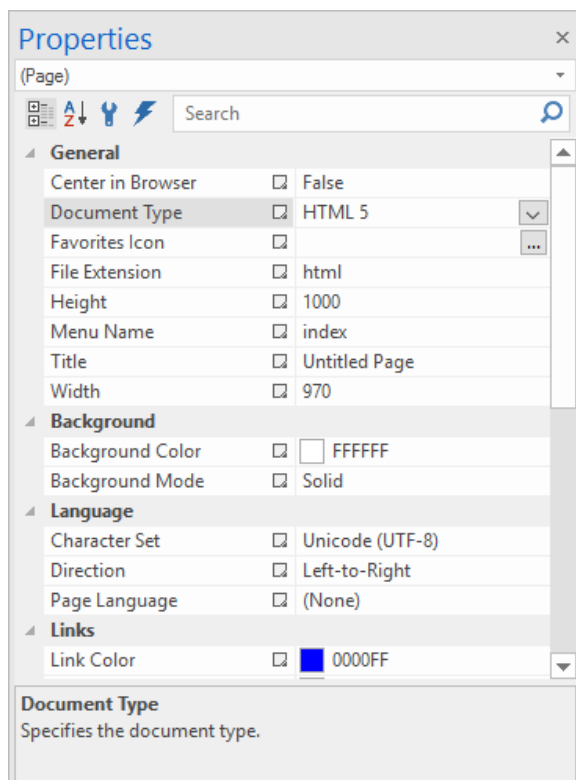
Move object to previous position in z-order

Let's say you want to display the objects in a particular order.

1. Select all objects one by one in the order you want them to be displayed.
2. After you have selected an object, click Layout->Arrange->Move to Front

## Properties Inspector

Use the Properties Inspector window to view and change the properties of selected objects. You can also use the Properties Inspector window to modify page properties. The changes will be visible immediately in the workspace.



To display the Properties Inspector window, click Properties Inspector on the View menu. The Properties window typically displays in the bottom right corner of WYSIWYG Web Builder, under the Site Manager, but you can move and resize the window.

### Object name (Drop-down box)

Lists the currently selected object or 'Page' if no object is selected. Only objects from the active page are visible. When you select multiple objects, only properties of the first selected object appear.

### Categorized (Toolbar Button)

Lists all properties and property values for the selected object, by category. You can collapse a category to reduce the number of visible properties. When you expand or collapse a category, you see a plus (+) or minus (-) to the left of the category name. Categories are listed alphabetically.

### Alphabetic (Toolbar Button)

Alphabetically sorts all properties for selected objects.

### Property Page (Toolbar Button)

Displays the Property Pages dialog box for the selected item. Property Pages displays a subset, the same or a superset of the properties available in the Properties window.

### Properties/Values

Displays the properties and their values of the select object.

### Description pane

Shows the property type and a short description of the property.

## ***Style Manager***

The Style Manager (Menu->Format->Styles) is a central place to add, edit or remove style definitions for the entire website. Updating a specific style will affect all objects using that style. For example you can update all fonts of your website in one operation.

There are six standard heading styles (H1, H2, H3, H4, H5, H6), which normally are used for text headers only. Other styles can be used for all other objects that support them, like form elements and tables.

When you add a new style all attributes of the style are empty (= default). You do not have to specify values for all attributes. It's also possible to define custom style attributes. You may have noticed that we did this for the header styles (CustomStyle is display: inline;), to make sure it is displayed correct in all browsers.

### **Notes:**

Not all style attributes apply to all objects! For example margins and padding are current ignored by most Web Builder objects. These attributes were only added to fix browser incompatibility issues for header styles.

Header styles (H1, H2 ...) can only be applied to text.

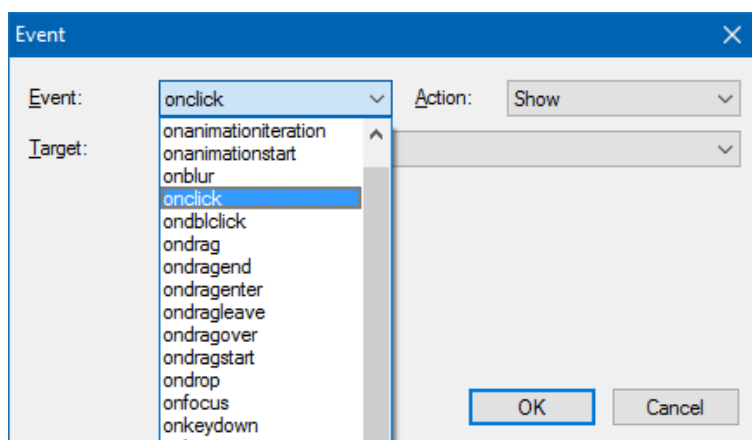
## ***Gradient Style Manager***

In the Gradient Style Manager you can add, edit and remove global (multi color) gradients effects. These effects can be used by shapes, cliparts, textart and the drawing tools.

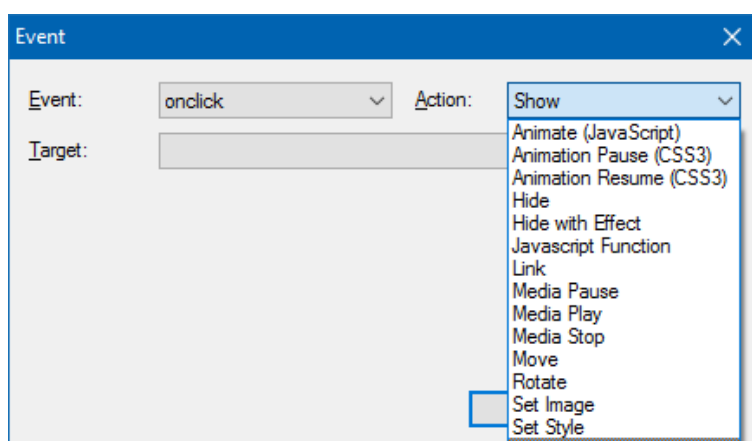
The definitions of the gradient styles are stored in a XML file 'gradients.dat' in the program folder. If you have defined custom styles and want to use the same styles on another computer, then you should copy this file.

## Events

In WYSIWYG Web Builder images, shapes and form controls have an Events Property Page, to easily add actions to object events, like OnClick, OnMouseOver etc.



Predefined actions include: Show, Hide, Move, Set Image, Play, Pause, Stop and JavaScript Function. Multiple events can be assigned to a single object.



In the help, you will find an overview of all available events.

These actions can be assigned to the event above:

<b>Show</b>	Show the object as specified in the Target field
<b>Hide</b>	Hide the object as specified in the Target field
<b>Move</b>	Move the object as specified in the Target field to position Left, Top.
<b>Set Image</b>	Set the image of object 'Target' as specified in Filename
<b>JavaScript Function</b>	Execute a custom JavaScript function (eg. <code>alert('enter your message');</code> )

These actions can be used in combination with the Windows Media Player object

<b>Play</b>	Start the WMP file.
<b>Pause</b>	Pause the WMP file.
<b>Stop</b>	Stop the WMP file.

The following actions can be used in combination with the Slide Show object

Make sure you select a valid slideshow object as the target and set the interval to 0!

<b>SlideShow Next</b>	Display the next image of a slide show.
<b>SlideShow Previous</b>	Display the previous image of a slide show

**Show with Effects**

Show the object as specified in the Target field while using one of the cool effects like fading, sliding, blinds, explode, puff drop etc....

Give your website amazing 'web 2.0' effects, with only a few mouse clicks!

**Hide with Effects**

Hide the object as specified in the Target field.

**SetStyle**

The SetStyle action can be used to dynamically set a new style for an object. The style must have been created in the Style Manager.

**Toggle**

Toggle the visible state (show/hide) of an object. Triggering the event again will restore the previous state. Supports animations/easing.

**Toggle Style**

Toggle between the current style and another style while animating the style changes. Triggering the event again will restore the previous style.

The style must have been created in the Style Manager. Note that the object must also have a current (predefined) style.

**CSS3 Animate**

This will trigger a CSS3 animation from the Animation Manager.

**Rotate**

Rotates an object by specifying the angle (in a range between 0 - 359). Works only in modern browsers because it uses CSS3 transforms.

**Timer Start/Stop**

Activates or deactivate the specified Timer object. The target must be a Timer object!

**Animation Pause (CSS3)**

Pauses a running CSS3 animation.

**Animation Resume (CSS3)**

Resumes a paused CSS3 animation. It's not possible to resume an animation that has ended (when the iteration count has reached the end).

**Animate**

Perform a custom animation of a set of CSS properties.

The following properties can be animated:

Left, this will animate the object to the specified horizontal position (in pixels).

Top, this will animate the object to the specified vertical position (in pixels).

Width, this will animate the object to the specified width (in pixels).

Height, this will animate the object to the specified height (in pixels).

Opacity, this will animate opacity of the specified object (in a range between 0.0 - 1.0)

## ***CSS3 Animations and Transitions***

WYSIWYG Web Builder has built-in support for CSS3 animations and transitions. Animations and transitions are supported by all modern browsers (Firefox/Safari/Opera/Chrome/IE10), **but NOT by Internet Explorer 9 or older!**

### ***Animation***

A CSS3 animation is an effect that lets an element gradually change from one style to another without using JavaScript or Flash. Animation effects can be applied to a wide variety of CSS properties, including background-color, width, height, opacity, transforms (rotate, skew, scale, translate) and many more. The Animation Manager can be used to define animations. These animations can be assigned to an object in the CSS3 Animation section of the object's properties.

Currently animations are supported by the following objects:

- Image
- Text
- Shape
- Clip Art
- Text Art
- Curves
- Polygon
- Line
- Banner
- Marquee
- Button
- Combobox
- Editbox
- Text Area

Note however that not all animations are useful for all objects. For instance, animating the background color of an image or shape will not do anything because there is no background in that case!

You can also associate an animation to a style (in the Style Manager). This makes it possible to dynamically assign an animation to an object (through events -> set style).

### ***Animation Properties***

#### **Animation**

Specifies the animation (as created in the Animation Manager) to use for the object.

#### **Duration**

Specifies the duration of the animation in milliseconds.

#### **Delay**

Delay causes the very first run of the animation to wait for the specified amount of time (in milliseconds) before beginning to execute. Note that the delay will not occur during animation repeats. It will only be used for the first iteration of the animation.

#### **Iteration count**

You can configure how many times you would like the animation to play, or you can even make it repeat infinitely by using -1.

#### **Direction**

Set this to normal to play the animation from start to finish. Or use alternate to play it forward and then backwards.

### Timing

The animation-timing-function specifies the speed curve of the animation.

The speed curve defines the time an animation uses to change from one set of CSS styles to another.

The speed curve is used to make the changes smoothly.

The animation-timing-function uses a mathematical function, called the Cubic Bézier curve, to make the speed curve.

- **linear**  
The animation has the same speed from start to end
- **ease**  
The animation has a slow start, then fast, before it ends slowly
- **ease-in**  
The animation has a slow start.
- **ease-out**  
The animation has a slow end
- **ease-in-out**  
The animation has both a slow start and a slow end

### Transition

A CSS3 transition is an animation that moves a property between two states. Transitions are an implicit animation, which means they are triggered by a state change like 'hover' or 'focus', unlike an animation which run continuously.

You can add multiple transitions to an object. This makes it possible to animate multiple properties at the same time.

### Trigger

Specifies which state change will trigger the transition. Commonly used triggers are 'hover' and 'focus'.

### Scroll transitions

Set the trigger to 'scroll' to implement a scroll transitions. The anchor (in combination with the offset) specifies when the animation should start and finish in relation the defined target element.

Scroll transitions should at least have two 'key frames'.

For more information please visit the online tutorial:

[http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/scroll\\_transitions.html](http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/scroll_transitions.html)

### Duration

Specifies the duration of the transition in milliseconds.

### Delay

Specifies when the transition will start.

### Timing

The timing-function specifies the speed curve of the animation. See 'animation properties' for more details.

### Property

Specifies the name of the CSS property to which the transition is applied.

### Value

Specifies the new value of the CSS property.

### **Animation Manager**

The Animation Manager can be used to define animations (with key frames). We have included a few example animations to help you get started.

#### **Important:**

Not all animations are useful for all objects. For instance, animating the background color of an image or shape will not do anything because there is no background in that case. Also, animating left/top/width/height/margin/etc. will not work for most objects because these values are usually fixed. If you want to animate the size or position of an object it's better to use transforms. See the examples for more details.

The first step in creating animations is to define 'key frames'. A key frame is a point that defines the start and end of a transition. The simplest animation will have two key frames - one at the start (0%) and one at the end (100%) - whereas more complex animations will have more key frames in between.

In the key frame, you set the position (in percentages) along the duration of the animation. You must specify at least two key frames (0% and 100%), but you can have many as you like.

Each key frame defines a property (and value) that is applied to the element at the specified stage of the animation.

Example:

First key frame: 0% -> background color #000000

Last key frame: 100% -> background color #FFFFFF

This will smoothly animate the background color of an object from black to white.

Note that the timing is defined in the animation properties of the object, not in the animation itself. This way you can reuse an animation in different objects with different timing settings.

#### **Note**

You can animate multiple CSS properties at the same time by using multiple key frames with same position. See the include examples for more details.

### **Animation Timeline**

The Animation Timeline option is available in the Page menu. The Animation Timeline displays all animations on the page, you can also add, edit and remove animations. It's also possible to drag & drop/move animations on the timeline, so you can easily control the timing of the animations

Related online tutorials:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/animation.html>

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/transitions.html>

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/transform.html>



## **Mobile Web Design**

WYSIWYG Web Builder has a built-in designer for mobile web pages. This makes it easy to create a mobile version of your pages without the need to external software. Mobile pages have a different toolset and creating a mobile website is slightly different than a regular website.

Mobile pages are based on jQuery Mobile (<http://jquerymobile.com/>), which is a framework for creating mobile web applications. jQuery Mobile works on all popular smartphones and tablets. jQuery Mobile has been designed to work within a responsive context. All the widgets are built to be 100% flexible in width to fit easily inside a responsive layout.

To make a web page 'responsive' it needs to be constructed in a different way. Unlike in standard WYSIWYG Web Builder layouts where you can drag & drop objects anywhere and where objects have a fixed size and position, mobile objects need to adjust to the width of the screen. In most cases this means that the object will use the full width of the page. But it's also possible to set 'full width' to false in which case the objects will be 'inline', so they have a fixed width. By default, all objects are placed next to each other (they are floating in the document), but there is also a layout grid available to arrange objects in rows and columns.

Another difference is the styling of objects. Unlike in a standard page, all jQuery mobile objects are styled by themes and swatches.

### **Creating a mobile web page**

In the Ribbon or Site manager click 'New Mobile Page'.

Note that the workspace will initially be smaller and the toolbox will get different tools (although many will look familiar). You can still drag & drop objects from the toolbox to the page, but you cannot control the exact position of the object because it will be added to the 'flow' of the page.

That means that the first object will be in the upper left corner of the page and the next object will be right after it. If the object is set the full width then the next object will be below the object.

You can control the alignment (left, center, right) of the objects in the page properties. Containers like Collapsible, Layout Grid and Tabs have their own alignment option.

To get an good idea what a mobile page will look like, drag & drop a Header, Footer and a Listview to the page. You will notice that the header will automatically be added at the top of the page and the footer at the bottom. The Listview (and all other objects) will be added between the header and the footer. More advanced layouts can be created with the Layout Grid.

The theme of the page and objects can be set in the Page Properties. Most objects also have an option to change the theme swatch to give it a different style than the rest of the page.

Now preview the result in the browser and notice that all objects fill up the entire width of the browser! If you have linked to another jQuery Mobile pages then you can also see the page transitions.

#### **Note**

WYSIWYG Web Builder also supports Responsive Web Design, where you can design different layouts within the same page.

## ***Responsive Web Design***

With the increase in popularity of browsing on mobile phones and tablets it is becoming essential to create web sites that are optimized to the needs of these users. Previously you had to create different versions of the website and use scripts to redirect the visitor to the mobile version of the page. WYSIWYG Web Builder introduces 'Responsive Web Design' which allows you to create a single HTML page containing different variants of the layout, each optimized for specific device widths. Your website will dynamically respond to the screen size of the visitor and display the layout most appropriate to their device. These different variants are called 'breakpoints' and uses CSS3's media queries.

A breakpoint is separate 'view' of the page in WYSIWYG Web Builder. A page can have multiple breakpoints, each one optimized for a specific screen width. For example, you can have the standard desktop layout, one for tablets (1024 px) and another one for mobile phones (320 px). Common breakpoints are:

- 320 px, Mobile portrait , 480 px, Mobile landscape
- 768 px, Tablet portrait 1024 px, Tablet landscape/Netbook
- 1280 px and greater, Desktop

Of course you can define your own widths and have as many breakpoints as you like (max 25), although usually you will have no more than 3. To add or edit breakpoints click the 'Manage Breakpoints' option in the Page menu. To switch between breakpoints click the 'Breakpoints' drop down menu and select the desired breakpoint. To go back to the default layout, select "Default".

The different variants share the same content (text, images etc) and you can change the position and size of the object for each breakpoint. You can also add unique content for specific screen widths, which makes it possible for example to hide objects on smaller screen.

The following objects are not responsive; this means that they cannot have a different size in breakpoints. See also 'Important notes about Responsive Web Design'.

- Banner
- Curve
- Curved Text
- Line
- Navigation Bar
- OLE
- Polygon
- Shape
- Table
- Text Art
- Wrapping Text

If you need different sizes in breakpoints then you will need to create a copy of the object.

**Important notes about Responsive Web Design**

Objects can have a different size, position and visibility state per breakpoint. However all other properties will be exactly the same! For example if you change the color of an object then it will be changed in all breakpoints (because the object is shared between all views).

Although objects can have different sizes in breakpoints, there are a few exceptions. For example shapes and other drawing tools will have the same size in all breakpoints. The reason for this is because only one image will be published and if you change the size of that image in one breakpoint then it would look distorted in another breakpoint. But you can use multiple shapes, one for each breakpoint and hide the ones you do not use in other breakpoints.

If you share text between multiple breakpoints then set the 'output format' in the compatibility option to 'Default', because the other options optimize the text for a specific width. If you really need to use one of the compatibility options then consider using a separate text object for each breakpoint, so it can be optimized for that specific width.

Objects can only be part of one Layer (and Form, Carousel, Tabs, Accordion, Dialog). So if you move an object to a layer in one breakpoint then it will automatically be part of the same layer in other breakpoints!

If you add a new object to a breakpoint then it will initially be hidden on all other breakpoints. You can use the Object Manager to unhide it if you also want it on other breakpoints.

If you delete an object from a breakpoint then it will be removed from all other views as well. If you want to hide the object then you can use the Object Manager.

You can test breakpoints in your desktop browser. Resize the browser window to activate breakpoints.

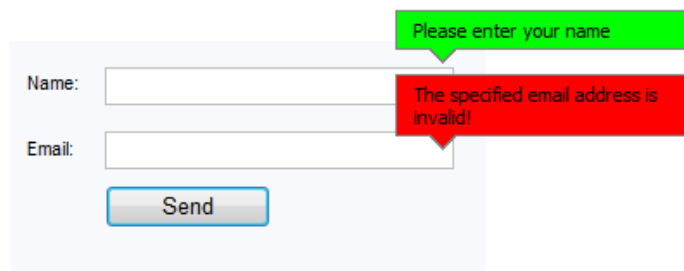
Some browsers also have dedicated tools for testing responsive web sites. For example, FireFox has a Responsive Design View which is great to test breakpoints. Consult the documentation of the browser for more details.

Browsers that do not support CSS3 media queries, will display the default layout.

## Form Validation

WYSIWYG Web Builder has some very powerful validation tools to validate the user input for the EditBox, Combobox, Radio Button, Checkbox, CAPTCHA and TextArea before it's submitted in a Form. Besides JavaScript based validation, there is also native HTML5 validation support built-in!

- **Default**  
Displays a standard JavaScript message.
- **Info bubble (real-time)**  
Select this option to enable real-time validation. The input field will be validated as soon as it loses the focus without the need for the user to press the submit button first. Real-time validation uses info balloons instead of the standard message box, this give your forms a professional look and feel. To configure the style of the balloons click the 'Settings' button. You can configure the colors, font, bubble type, position and animation effect.

A screenshot of a web form with two input fields: 'Name:' and 'Email:'. Below the 'Email:' field is a 'Send' button. Two error messages are displayed as info bubbles. A green bubble points to the 'Name' field with the text 'Please enter your name'. A red bubble points to the 'Email' field with the text 'The specified email address is invalid!'.

- **HTML5**  
Select this option to use native HTML5 form validation. Note that this feature is not available in all browsers yet.

Related tutorial:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/validation.html>

## CAPTCHA validation

### Error message

This message will be displayed if the user did not enter a value in the CAPTCHA field.

### Enable Real-Time Validation through AJAX

If you enable this option then the value of the CAPTCHA field will be validated on the server as soon as the field loses the focus, without the need to submit the form.

## Checkbox validation

### Error message

This message will be displayed when the user enters the wrong data.

### Selection required

Enable this option if the checkbox must be checked before the user can submit the form.

*Editbox and TextArea validation***Date Type**

- **No Constraints**  
All input is accepted
- **Text**  
The input field is a text field. Use Text Format to specify which characters are allowed
- **Number**  
The input field is a number field. Use Numeric Format to specify which numbers are allowed.
- **Email Address**  
The input field is an email address field.
- **All Major Creditcards**
- **Creditcard - American Express**
- **Creditcard – Dinersclub**
- **Creditcard – Discover**
- **Creditcard – Mastercard**
- **Creditcard – Visa**  
These options verify common credit card formats.
- **Date – ddmmyyyy**
- **Date - mmddyyyy**
- **Date – yyyymmdd**  
These options verify common date formats.
- **IP Address**  
The input field is an IP address.
- **URL**  
The input field is an URL.
- **AJAX**  
This option is for advanced users(!) who wish to validate a value on the server, for example in a database. Use the URL field to specify the validation script on the server. For example:  
<http://www.yourwebsite.com/validate.php>

The validate.php script in its simplest form could look something like this:

```
<?php
$username = $_POST['data'];

// TODO: lookup username in database...
if ($username == 'user')
{
    echo "true";
}
else
{
    echo "false";
}
?>
```

- **Custom**  
Select the Custom option to specify your own regular (JavaScript) expression.

**Error message**

This message will be displayed when the user enters the wrong data..

### Text Format

Select the types of characters to allow in the field Letters, Digits, Whitespace (spaces, tabs, carriage returns, and line feeds), or Other (different characters, such as commas and hyphens).

### Numeric Format

Specify to use a comma or period for Decimal points.

### Data Length

Required; require the user to type an entry in a edit box or text area field.

Minimum; specifies the minimum number of characters to allow in the text box.

Maximum; specifies the maximum number of characters to allow in the text box.

### Data Value

This option can be used to specify a value limitation. In the Field must be list, select a constraint: Don't care, Less than, Greater than, Less than or equal to, Greater than or equal to, Equal to or Not equal to. In the Value box, type the value for the constraint. To specify a second constraint, select **And must be**, click a condition, and then type a value.

### Match

This option allows you to specify another form field of which the contents will be checked against the current field to see if they're the same. This can be useful for validating email or password fields.

The screenshot shows a form with two text input fields. The first field is labeled 'Field 1:' and contains the text 'value'. The second field is labeled 'Field 2:' and contains the text 'valeu'. Below the fields is a 'Send' button. Two red error messages are displayed above the fields, both stating 'Values must be identical'. The first message points to the 'Field 1' input, and the second message points to the 'Field 2' input.

### Combobox validation

#### Error message

This message will be displayed when the user enters the wrong data..

#### Selection required

Require users to make a selection from the combobox.

#### Disallow first choice

If you use the first option to display instructions, such as "Select an option," you can make the that first option unavailable by enabling this option.

### FileUpload validation

#### Error message

This message will be displayed when the user enters the wrong data..

#### Data required

If this option is enabled then the user must specify a filename.

#### Valid extensions

Specifies which extension will be accepted by the form.

## ***Form Conditions and Calculations***

Form conditions make it possible to show/hide/enable/disable other objects based on the value or selection of a form input field. For example, you can disable the form's submit button until the user checks a box.

It is also possible to do calculations in form fields. Calculations are available in the 'Conditions' section of input fields. They can be used to calculate a value based on values or selections of other input fields. For example, to calculate the total price of an item in a web shop based on the selected options. Conditions/calculations options are available for Editbox, TextArea, Combobox, Checkbox and Radio Button. You can add multiple conditions to an object, they will be processed all.

### **Target**

The Target property specifies the object where the action will be applied to. For example, the object that will be hidden or disabled.

### **Conditions**

The following conditions are available:

- **change**  
The action will be processed when the value of the object has been changed.
- **equal to**  
The action will be processed when the input is equal to the specified value.
- **equal to (choice)**  
The action is specific for the combo box and will be processed when the input is equal to the specified value. Unlike 'equal to', this will create a unique condition for the specified value.
- **is empty**  
The action will be processed when the input is empty.
- **is not empty**  
The action will be processed when the input is not empty.
- **not equal to**  
The action will be processed when the input is not equal to the specified value.
- **not equal to (choice)**  
The action is specific for the combo box and will be processed when the input is not equal to the specified value. Unlike 'not equal to', this will create a unique condition for the specified value.
- **less than**  
The action will be processed when the input is less to the specified value. This can be used in combination with 'greater than' to create a range.
- **greater than**  
The action will be processed when the input is greater to the specified value. This can be used in combination with 'less than' to create a range.
- **else**  
This can be used in combination with 'equal to', 'not equal to', 'greater than' and 'less than'.

### Actions

The following actions are available:

- **show**  
Show the target object.
- **hide**  
Hide the target object.
- **enable**  
Enable the target object. Note that this is only useful for form input fields like an editbox, textarea or combobox.
- **disable**  
Disable the target object. Note that this is only useful for form input fields like an editbox, textarea or combobox.
- **calculate**  
Perform a calculation. For example, if you want to calculate the price of the product selected on a radio button multiplied to a quantity field. Or calculate the sum of two or more form fields. Calculations use the standard Javascript syntax:  
1 + 1  
10 - (3\*2)  
Math.max(10, 20) + Math.abs('-1')

To insert the value of another input field, place the ID of that object between square brackets:  
[Editbox1] \* [RadioButton1]

Note that WWB will automatically convert this to \$('#Editbox1').val() in the publish page.  
Fields can be inserted with the <Insert Field> option.

- **javascript**  
Execute a custom javascript function. Usually this is a reference to a function that has been defined somewhere else in the page.

Related online tutorial:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/conditions.html>



## ***Flexbox Properties***

Each object has its own flexbox options. They can be set via Menu->Arrange->Flexbox.  
Flexbox options are only used when the object is inside a Flex Container.

### **Flex grow**

The flex-grow property specifies how much the object will grow relative to the rest of the flexible items inside the same flex container.

If all objects have flex-grow set to 1 then the remaining space in the container will be distributed equally to all objects. If one of the objects has a value of 2 then the remaining space will take up twice as much space as the other objects (if possible).

### **Flex shrink**

The flex-shrink property specifies how the object will shrink relative to the rest of the flexible items inside the same flex container.

### **Flex basis**

The flex-basis property specifies the initial size of an object before the remaining space is distributed. The length can be in percentages or pixels. If set to 'auto', the extra space is distributed based on the flex-grow value.

### **Align self**

The align-self property of flex items overrides the flex container's align-items property for that object.

- **flex-start**  
Items are positioned at the top of the container.
- **flex-end**  
Items are positioned at the bottom of the container.
- **center**  
Items are positioned at the center of the container (vertically).
- **stretch**  
Items are stretched to fit the container.
- **auto**  
Use the default alignment of the flex container.

Related tutorial:

<http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/flexbox.html>

## ***Customizing WYSIWYG Web Builder***

This section describes how to add customize WYSIWYG Web Builder so you can add your own image buttons, themes etc.

WYSIWYG Web Builder saves all user specific configuration information in the folder:

**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\**

This makes it easy to backup all your files and settings by copying all the files and folders in

**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder.**

For example, if you modify the gradient styles through the Style manager the changes will be saved to

**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\gradients.dat**

Publish settings will be saved in the file **My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\publish.dat**

### ***ClipArt***

You can download thousands of free dingbats fonts to use as ClipArt from the Internet. Search for 'free dingbat fonts' to find all large collection of new shapes.

After you've downloaded one or more files you can copy them to the 'clipart' folder in the Web Builder system folder: **My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\clipart\**

See also the ClipArt description.

### ***Extensions***

Extensions (also called add-ons or plugins) are components which enhance the functionality of WYSIWYG Web Builder. Extensions can be accessed through the Toolbox or via the Insert menu just like the standard objects.

There are already more than 200 extensions available for WYSIWYG Web Builder! Check out the website for more details: <http://www.wysiwygwebbuilder.com/extensions.html>

Although you can use the Extension Manager to install new extensions it's also possible to copy the files manually to the **My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\extensions\** folder.

### ***Photo Gallery Frames***

Frames can be applied to Photo Galleries and standard images.

Custom frames styles can be added to the folder:

**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\gallery\**

See also: Photo Gallery

### ***Templates***

Templates you create will be saved to: **My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\templates**

This means that if have downloaded templates from the website or another source these should be place in this folder. See also the Template description.

### ***Navigation Bar***

To add your own button images for usage in the navigation bar place them in the

**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\navbar** folder.

### ***Tab Menu***

The themes for the tabmenu are stored in the folder:

**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\tabmenu\**

See also the Tab Menu description.

### *Theme Roller*

Many of the jQuery widgets can be styled by using ThemeRoller themes.

New themes must be installed in the 'themeroller' folder of WYSIWYG Web Builder:

**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\themeroller\**

You can easily create custom themes by visiting the ThemeRoller website: <http://www.themeroller.com>

#### Step 1

Go to the ThemeRoller website: <http://www.themeroller.com>

#### Step 2

Select one of the predefined themes or create your own theme.

#### Step 3

Download the theme to your computer.

Make sure you select 'All components' and version 1.8.x for jQuery 1.4+.

In 'Advanced Theme Settings' you can specify the name of your theme. Let's call it 'MyFirstTheme'.

The downloaded file is in zip format and will be called something like: jquery-ui-1.8.2.custom.zip

#### Step 4

Unzip the files to a temporary folder on your harddisk.

There are a lot of files in the zip that you don't need.

You will find your custom theme in: development-bundle\themes\MyFirstTheme  
(where MyFirstTheme is the name of your theme).

You will need to copy this complete folder to the Web Builder themeroller folder:

**My Documents\WYSIWYG Web Builder\system\themeroller\MyFirstTheme**

The new theme will now be available the next time you open the properties of the jQuery objects.

## ***Creating Newsletters***

Although an HTML Newsletter seems just another HTML page, this unfortunately is not completely true. Unlike modern browsers, email clients only support a limited subset of HTML. Most email clients do not support CSS and there for you will need to follow a few guidelines to make sure your Newsletters can be displayed in all major email clients.

The most important step is to set the layout mode of the page to 'Table Layout'. You can do that in the Page Properties (Menu->Page->Page Properties->Advanced->Layout Mode). Now WYSIWYG Web Builder will use (invisible) tables to position objects on the page. This has one huge disadvantage: you cannot overlap objects! So, your layout cannot have objects on top of each other.

To work around this limitation, you can use the 'Merge' option, to merge multiple objects into a single image.

Here's a list of the most important limitations of HTML email:

- You cannot put objects on top of each other. Overlapping is not supported. Merge objects to bypass this limitation.
- External CSS Style sheets are not supported. (Disable in Menu->Tools->Options->HTML).
- JavaScript (this includes navigation, events, jQuery based objects) is not supported.
- Forms will usually be displayed, but they will not be functional!
- Flash and other media files are not supported.
- Background images are not supported.
- Internal links will not work, always use absolute links  
(for example: <http://www.yourwebsite.com/pagename.html>)

**Tip:**

Always test your emails before you send them out! Once an email has been sent out, it's impossible to take it back.

## Index

### A

Accordion, 238  
 Action, 97  
 Active Link Color, 40  
 ActiveX, 117  
 Add to Cart button, 205  
 Adding an image to a web page, 14  
 Adding text to the page, 13  
 Advanced Button, 103  
 Alternate text, 85  
 Anchored, 127  
 Anchors, 82  
 Animation, 286  
 Animation Manager, 288  
 Appearance, 274  
 Apply effects to an image, 15  
 Author, 41  
 Auto Complete, 239

### B

Backup, 71  
 Backup folder, 71  
 Banner, 170  
 Bookmark, 82  
 Bookmarks, 273  
 Breadcrumb, 153  
 Brightness, 87  
 Bulleted List, 83  
 Button, 114  
 Buy Now Button, 204

### C

CAPTCHA, 104  
 Card-Container, 242  
 Cards, 241  
 Carousel, 183  
 Categories, 41  
 Cell HTML, 53  
 Cell Padding, 52  
 Cell Properties, 53  
 Cell Spacing, 52  
 Center in browser, 35

### Ch

Character Set, 36  
 Checkbox, 106

### C

ClipArt, 172  
 Clone Page, 27  
 Close, 21  
 Close Web Site, 21

CMS Admin, 225  
 CMS Database, 223  
 CMS Label, 233  
 CMS Menu, 234  
 CMS plug-ins, 230  
 CMS Search, 235  
 CMS View, 236  
 Collapsible, 258  
 Combobox, 107  
 Content Management System, 222  
 Content Place Holder, 140  
 Contrast, 87  
 Convert to Form, 208  
 Copy, 24  
 Crop, 87  
 CSS animation and transitions, 286  
 CSS Menu, 154  
 Curve, 173  
 Curved Text, 174  
 Customize, 61  
 Cut, 24

### D

DatePicker, 243  
 Default Font, 40  
 Delete, 24  
 Delete Column, 51  
 Delete Row, 51  
 Description, 41  
 Dialog, 244  
 Docking, 127  
 Document Type, 35  
 Don't Publish Assets, 25  
 Donations, 207  
 Don't Publish this page, 35  
 Don't synchronize this page in Navigation Objects, 35

### E

Edit Menu, 25  
 Editbox, 109  
 Effects, 87, 89  
 Embedded OLE Object, 142  
 Embedded Page, 138  
 Encoding type, 97  
 Error Reports, 74  
 Events, 284  
 Exit, 23  
 Export to HTML, 22  
 Extensions, 72

### F

File extension, 34  
 File Menu, 21  
 File Publisher, 118  
 File Upload, 111  
 Find, 25

Flash, 119  
Flash Variables, 120  
Flex Container, 133  
Flex Grid, 135  
Flexbox Properties, 297  
Flip, 87  
Flipswitch, 112  
Floating, 127  
Font Color, 48  
Font Size, 48  
Font Style, 48  
Font Type, 48  
Footer, 260  
Form, 96  
Form Area, 96  
Form Conditions and Calculations, 295  
Form Validation, 292  
Form Wizard, 93  
Format Menu, 48  
Formatting Tools, 9  
FTP, 68, 268  
Full Screen Mode, 26

## G

General Styles, 49  
Generator, 41  
Getting Started, 7  
Global Replace, 77  
Go Menu, 155  
Google Fonts, 78  
Gradient Style Manager, 283  
Gradient Styles, 49  
Grid Spacing, 56  
Guide Borders, 56  
Guide settings, 56

## H

Handles, 14  
Header, 261  
Heading, 84  
Hidden Fields, 102  
Horizontal Line, 84  
HTML, 122  
HTML 4.01 Transitional, 35  
Hue/Saturation, 87  
Hyperlink Style Sheet, 274  
Hyperlink Styles, 49  
Hyperlinks, 16

## I

Image, 85  
Image Button, 113  
Image Map, 185  
Import HTML, 29  
Inline Frame, 125  
Insert Menu, 47  
Insert Rows or Columns, 51  
Insert Table, 51

## J

Java, 124  
jQuery Flip Switch, 258  
jQuery Layout Grid, 259  
jQuery Listview, 262  
jQuery Mobile, 256  
jQuery Nested Menu, 263  
jQuery Panel, 264  
jQuery Popup Menu, 263  
jQuery Responsive Table, 265  
jQuery Slider, 258  
jQuery Tabs, 259

## K

Keywords, 41

## L

Language, 70  
Layer, 126  
Layer Menu, 156  
Layout Grid, 130  
Line, 175  
Link, 47  
Link Color, 40  
Links, 271  
ListView, 246  
Lock, 55  
Lock All, 55  
Lock page size, 56  
Logging, 68  
Login tools – Admin, 211  
Login tools – Change Password, 213  
Login tools – Edit Profile, 221  
Login tools – Login, 215  
Login tools – Logout, 216  
Login tools – Protected Page, 218  
Login tools – Signup, 219  
Login tools –Password Recovery, 217  
Look Up in Dictionary, 49

## M

Make Default, 36  
Marquee, 90  
Master Frame, 140  
Media Player, 151  
Mega Menu, 157  
Menu Bar, 159  
Menu Name, 34  
Merge Cells, 51  
Meta Tags, 41  
Mobile Theme Manager, 76  
Mobile Web Design, 289  
Modal, 127

## N

Navigation bar, 160  
New Page, 27  
New Web Site, 21

New Web Site From Template, 21  
News Feed Ticker, 196  
Notes, 143

## O

Object Manager, 280  
Object Outlines, 26  
Open Graph Meta Tags, 41  
Open Web Site, 21  
Options, 62  
Overlay Menu, 162

## P

Page Footer, 144  
Page Header, 145  
Page Height, 34  
Page HTML, 29  
Page Language, 36  
Page Properties, 31  
Page Width, 34  
Pagination, 163  
Panel, 127  
Panel Menu, 164  
Paste, 24  
Paste in Place, 24  
PayPal Donations, 207  
PayPal eCommerce Tools, 203  
PayPal Shopping Cart, 205  
Photo Gallery, 188  
PHP Login Tools, 208  
Polygon, 177  
Preview, 17  
Preview Folder, 68  
Preview in Browser, 23  
Preview Scope, 68  
Progressbar, 250  
Properties Inspector, 12, 282  
Publish, 18  
Publish Options, 68  
Publish to a local folder, 19  
Publish your website, 267

## Q

Quicktime, 148

## R

Radio button, 115  
Ready to use Java Scripts, 191  
Real Player, 149  
Redo, 25  
Reflection, 85  
Remove formatting, 49  
Remove link, 49  
Remove Page, 27  
Rename Page, 28  
Replace, 25  
Resample, 87  
Responsive Menu, 166  
Responsive Web Design, 290

Responsive Web Design Options, 63  
Restore Original Size, 25  
Rollover image, 192  
Rollover Layer, 129  
Rollover Text, 193  
Rotate, 15, 87  
Rotation, 86  
RSS Feed, 194  
Rulers, 26

## S

Save, 22  
Scribble, 178  
Search in Google, 49  
Search Index, 73  
Select, 47  
Select All, 24  
Shape, 179  
Shopping Cart, 205  
Show Grid, 56  
Sign Up for a PayPal Account, 203  
Site Manager, 11, 276  
Site Map, 60  
Site Search, 199  
SiteTree, 167  
Slide Show, 198  
Slider, 251  
Snap to grid, 26  
Spinner, 253  
Split Cell, 51  
Stencils, 87  
Sticky, 127  
Structured Data, 201  
Style Manager, 283  
Subscriptions and Recurring Payments, 206  
Symbol, 47

## T

Tab Menu, 168  
Table HTML, 52  
Table Menu, 51  
Tables, 51  
Tabs, 10, 248  
Target screen size, 34  
Templates, 21  
Text, 91  
Text Menu, 169  
TextArea, 116  
Theme Manager, 75  
Themeable Button, 240  
Themeable Menu, 247  
Timer, 202  
Title, 34  
Toast, 249  
Toolbox, 10, 79  
Tools Menu, 58  
Tooltips, 255  
Transition, 287  
Transitions, 46  
Twitter Cards, 42

	<b>U</b>		Wizard, 254
			Workspace, 10
Undo, 25			Wrapping Text, 146
Unlock, 55			
Unlock All, 55		<b>X</b>	
Unsplash, 187			
User database, 209			XHTML 1.0 Transitional, 35
	<b>V</b>		
Verify Links, 59		<b>Y</b>	
View Cart button, 205			You Tube, 152
View Menu, 26			
Visited Link Color, 40		<b>Z</b>	
	<b>W</b>		
			z-index, 281
			Zoom, 26
			z-order, 281
Web safe fonts, 50			